



X925

User's Guide

November 2012

www.lexmark.com

Machine type(s):

7541

Model(s):

032, 036, 096

Contents

Safety information.....	15
Learning about the printer.....	17
Finding information about the printer.....	17
Selecting a location for the printer.....	18
Printer configurations.....	19
Basic functions of the scanner.....	21
Understanding the ADF and scanner glass.....	22
Understanding the printer control panel.....	23
Understanding the home screen.....	25
Understanding the home screen.....	25
Using the touch-screen buttons.....	26
Setting up and using the home screen applications.....	30
Finding the IP address of the printer.....	30
Accessing the Embedded Web Server.....	30
Exporting and importing a configuration using the Embedded Web Server.....	31
Activating the home screen applications.....	32
Setting up Forms and Favorites	32
Setting up Scan to Network	32
Setting up My MFP	33
Understanding WS-Scan	33
Setting up Remote Operator Panel.....	33
Additional printer setup.....	35
Installing internal options.....	35
Available internal options	35
Accessing the system board.....	36
Installing a memory card	37
Installing a flash memory or firmware card.....	39
Installing an Internal Solutions Port.....	40
Installing a printer hard disk	44
Removing a printer hard disk.....	45
Installing optional trays.....	46
Order of installation.....	46
Installing a printer stand and optional tray	47
Installing 550-sheet trays.....	53

Attaching cables.....	60
Verifying printer setup.....	61
Printing a menu settings page	61
Printing a network setup page.....	61
Setting up the printer software.....	61
Installing the printer software	61
Updating available options in the printer driver	62
Setting up wireless printing.....	63
Preparing to set up the printer on a wireless network	63
Installing the printer on a wireless network (Windows).....	64
Installing the printer on a wireless network (Macintosh).....	66
Installing the printer on an Ethernet network.....	68
Changing port settings after installing a new network Internal Solutions Port.....	71
Setting up serial printing.....	72
Minimizing your printer's environmental impact.....	75
Saving paper and toner.....	75
Using recycled paper	75
Conserving supplies	75
Saving energy.....	76
Using Eco-Mode.....	76
Reducing printer noise.....	76
Adjusting Sleep Mode	77
Using Hibernate Mode	78
Adjusting the brightness of the display	78
Setting the standard exit bin light.....	79
Recycling.....	79
Recycling Lexmark products	79
Recycling Lexmark packaging.....	80
Returning Lexmark cartridges for reuse or recycling	80
Loading paper and specialty media.....	81
Setting the paper size and type.....	81
Configuring Universal paper settings.....	81
Loading the standard or optional 550-sheet tray.....	82
Loading the multipurpose feeder.....	86
Linking and unlinking trays.....	88
Linking trays.....	88
Unlinking trays	88
Creating a custom name for a paper type	89
Assigning a custom paper type name	89

Configuring a custom name.....	89
Paper and specialty media guidelines.....	90
Paper guidelines.....	90
Paper characteristics.....	90
Unacceptable paper.....	91
Selecting paper	91
Selecting preprinted forms and letterhead	91
Using recycled paper and other office papers.....	91
Storing paper	92
Supported paper sizes, types, and weights.....	93
Supported paper sizes	93
Supported paper types and weights.....	95
Printing.....	96
Printing a document.....	96
Printing a document	96
Printing in black and white	96
Adjusting toner darkness	96
Printing from a mobile device.....	97
Printing from a flash drive.....	97
Printing from a flash drive	97
Supported flash drives and file types.....	98
Printing on specialty media.....	99
Tips on using letterhead	99
Tips on using transparencies	99
Tips on using envelopes.....	100
Tips on using labels.....	100
Tips on using card stock.....	101
Printing confidential and other held jobs.....	101
Storing print jobs in the printer	101
Printing confidential and other held jobs	102
Printing information pages.....	102
Printing a font sample list	102
Printing a directory list.....	103
Using Max Speed and Max Yield.....	103
Canceling a print job.....	103
Canceling a print job from the printer control panel.....	103
Canceling a print job from the computer	104
Copying.....	105
Making copies.....	105

Making a quick copy	105
Copying using the ADF	105
Copying using the scanner glass	106
Copying film photos	106
Copying on specialty media.....	106
Copying on transparencies	106
Copying on letterhead	106
Customizing copy settings.....	107
Copying to a different size	107
Making copies using paper from a selected tray	107
Copying different paper sizes	108
Copying on both sides of the paper (duplexing).....	108
Reducing or enlarging copies.....	109
Adjusting copy quality	109
Collating copies.....	110
Placing separator sheets between copies.....	110
Copying multiple pages onto a single sheet	111
Creating a custom copy job (job build)	111
Placing information on copies.....	112
Placing the date and time at the top of each page.....	112
Placing an overlay message on each page	112
Canceling a copy job.....	112
Canceling a copy job while the document is in the ADF	112
Canceling a copy job while copying pages using the scanner glass	112
Canceling a copy job while pages are being printed.....	113
Understanding the copy screens and options.....	113
Copy from	113
Copy to	113
Copies	113
Scale.....	113
Darkness	114
Sides (Duplex)	114
Collate	114
Content	114
Color	114
Advanced Options.....	115
Save As Shortcut	115
E-mailing.....	116
Getting ready to e-mail.....	116
Setting up the e-mail function	116
Configuring e-mail settings	116
Creating an e-mail shortcut.....	117

Creating an e-mail shortcut using the Embedded Web Server.....	117
Creating an e-mail shortcut using the touch screen	117
E-mailing a document.....	118
Sending an e-mail using the touch screen	118
Sending an e-mail using a shortcut number	118
Sending an e-mail using the address book	118
Customizing e-mail settings.....	119
Adding e-mail subject and message information	119
Changing the output file type	119
Canceling an e-mail.....	120
Understanding e-mail options.....	120
Recipients	120
Subject	120
Message.....	120
File Name	120
Original Size	120
Resolution	121
Color	121
Content	121
Darkness	121
Send As	121
Page Setup	122
Scan Preview	122
Advanced Options.....	122
Faxing.....	123
Getting the printer ready to fax.....	123
Initial fax setup	123
Choosing a fax connection	124
Connecting to an analog telephone line	124
Connecting to a DSL service	125
Connecting to a PBX or ISDN system	125
Connecting to a distinctive ring service	126
Connecting to an adapter for your country or region	126
Setting the outgoing fax or station name and number	127
Setting the date and time	127
Configuring the printer to observe daylight saving time	128
Creating shortcuts.....	128
Creating a fax destination shortcut using the Embedded Web Server.....	128
Creating a fax destination shortcut using the touch screen	129
Sending a fax.....	129
Sending a fax using the touch screen	129
Sending a fax using the computer	129

Sending a fax using shortcuts	130
Sending a fax using the address book.....	130
Customizing fax settings.....	131
Changing the fax resolution.....	131
Making a fax lighter or darker	131
Sending a fax at a scheduled time	131
Viewing a fax log.....	132
Blocking junk faxes.....	132
Cancelling an outgoing fax.....	132
Cancelling a fax while the original documents are still scanning.....	132
Cancelling a fax after the original documents have been scanned to memory.....	133
Understanding fax options.....	133
Content	133
Resolution	133
Darkness	134
Color	134
Page Setup	134
Scan Preview	134
Delayed Send	134
Advanced Options.....	134
Holding and forwarding faxes.....	135
Holding faxes	135
Forwarding a fax	135

Scanning to an FTP address..... **137**

Creating shortcuts.....	137
Creating an FTP shortcut using the Embedded Web Server	137
Creating an FTP shortcut using the touch screen	138
Scanning to an FTP address.....	138
Scanning to an FTP address using the touch screen	138
Scanning to an FTP address using a shortcut number	138
Scanning to an FTP address using the address book	139
Understanding FTP options.....	139
FTP	139
File Name	139
Original Size	139
Send As	139
Color	140
Resolution.....	140
Darkness	140
Page Setup	140
Content	140
Scan Preview	141

Advanced Options.....	141
-----------------------	-----

Scanning to a computer or flash drive.....142

Scanning to a computer.....	142
Scanning to a flash drive.....	143
Understanding the Scan Center features.....	143
Using the ScanBack Utility.....	143
Understanding scan profile options.....	144
Original Size	144
Resolution	144
Color	144
Content	144
Darkness	145
Page Setup	145
Scan Preview.....	145
Advanced Options.....	145

Understanding printer menus.....146

Menus list.....	146
Supplies menu.....	147
Paper menu.....	149
Default Source menu	149
Paper Size/Type menu	150
Configure MP menu.....	153
Substitute Size menu	153
Paper Weight menu.....	153
Paper Loading menu.....	155
Custom Types menu	157
Custom Names menu	157
Custom Scan Sizes menu	157
Universal Setup menu.....	158
Reports menu.....	158
Reports menu	158
Network/Ports menu.....	160
Active NIC menu	160
Standard Network or Network [x] menus.....	160
Network Reports menu	162
Network Card menu.....	162
TCP/IP menu	162
IPv6 menu	163
Wireless menu	164
AppleTalk menu	165

Standard USB menu	165
Parallel [x] menu	167
Serial [x] menu	169
SMTP Setup menu	171
Security menu.....	172
Editing Security Setups menu	172
Miscellaneous Security Settings menu	173
Confidential Print menu.....	174
Disk Wiping menu.....	175
Security Audit Log menu.....	176
Set Date and Time menu	177
Settings menu.....	178
General Settings menu	178
Copy Settings menu	187
Fax Settings menu.....	191
E-mail Settings menu	200
FTP Settings menu	206
Flash Drive menu	210
Print Settings.....	215
Help menu.....	228
Securing the memory before moving the printer.....	230
Statement of Volatility.....	230
Erasing volatile memory.....	230
Erasing non-volatile memory.....	231
Erasing printer hard disk memory.....	231
Configuring printer hard disk encryption.....	232
Maintaining the printer.....	233
Cleaning the exterior of the printer.....	233
Cleaning the scanner glass.....	233
Cleaning the ADF parts.....	234
Cleaning the printhead lenses.....	235
Storing supplies.....	238
Checking the status of supplies.....	239
Checking the status of supplies from the printer control panel	239
Checking the status of supplies from a network computer	239
Ordering supplies.....	239
Ordering toner cartridges	239
Ordering imaging units	240
Ordering a fuser or a transfer module	240

Ordering a waste toner bottle	240
Ordering ADF replacement parts.....	241
Replacing Supplies.....	241
Replacing an imaging unit.....	241
Replacing a toner cartridge.....	244
Replacing the waste toner bottle	246
Moving the printer.....	247
Before moving the printer	247
Moving the printer to another location.....	248
Shipping the printer	248
Administrative support.....	249
Finding advanced networking and administrator information.....	249
Using the Embedded Web Server.....	249
Checking the virtual display.....	249
Checking the status of the printer.....	249
Setting up e-mail alerts.....	250
Viewing reports.....	250
Restoring factory default settings.....	251
Clearing jams.....	252
Avoiding jams.....	252
Understanding jam numbers and locations.....	252
200 paper jam.....	254
201 paper jam.....	255
203 paper jam.....	256
230 paper jam.....	257
231–239 paper jams.....	257
24x paper jam.....	258
250 paper jam.....	261
280–289 paper jams.....	261
290–292 paper jams.....	262
451 paper jam.....	262
Troubleshooting.....	263
Solving basic printer problems.....	263
Understanding printer messages.....	263
Adjusting color	263
An error has occurred with the USB drive. Please remove and reinsert drive.	263

Change [paper source] to [custom type name]	263
Change [paper source] to [custom type name] load [orientation]	264
Change [paper source] to [custom string]	264
Change [paper source] to [custom string] load [orientation]	264
Change [paper source] to [paper size] [paper type]	264
Change [paper source] to [paper size] [paper type] load [orientation]	264
Close [tray] door	264
Close front or side door	265
Disk corrupted	265
Disk near full. Securely clearing disk space.....	265
Disk problem.....	265
Error reading USB drive. Remove USB.....	265
Insert Tray [x].....	265
Install Tray [x]	265
Load [src] with [custom type name]	266
Load [src] with [custom string]	266
Load [src] with [size]	266
Load [src] with [type] [size].....	266
Load Manual Feeder with [custom type name].....	266
Load Manual Feeder with [custom string]	267
Load Manual Feeder with [paper size]	267
Load Manual Feeder with [paper type] [paper size].....	267
Paper changes needed.....	267
Remove paper from standard output bin.....	267
Replace separator pad	267
Restore held jobs?	267
Some held jobs were not restored	268
Supply needed to complete job.....	268
Tray [x] paper size unsupported	268
Unsupported disk.....	268
1565 Emulation error, load emulation option	268
30.xx Missing [color] cartridge and/or [color] imaging unit	268
31.xx Missing or defective [color] cartridge	268
32.xx [color] cartridge part number unsupported by device.....	268
34 Incorrect paper size, open [src]	269
35 Insufficient memory to support Resource Save feature	269
36 Printer service required	269
37 Insufficient memory to collate job.....	269
37 Insufficient memory for Flash Memory Defragment operation	269
37 Insufficient memory, some Held Jobs were deleted.....	269
37 Insufficient memory, some held jobs will not be restored	270
38 Memory full	270
39 Complex page, some data may not have printed	270
51 Defective flash detected	270
52 Not enough free space in flash memory for resources.....	270

53 Unformatted flash detected	270
54 Serial option [x] error.....	270
54 Standard network software error.....	271
54 Network [x] software error.....	271
55 Unsupported option in slot [x].....	271
56 Parallel port [x] disabled.....	271
56 Serial port [x] disabled	271
56 Standard parallel port disabled.....	272
56 Standard USB port disabled	272
56 USB port [x] disabled	272
57 Configuration change, some held jobs were not restored	272
58 Input config error.....	272
58 Too many disks installed	272
58 Too many flash options installed	273
58 Too many trays attached	273
61 Remove defective disk.....	273
62 Disk full	273
80.xx Fuser near life warning	273
80.xx Fuser life warning	274
80.xx Replace fuser	274
80.xx Fuser missing	274
82.xx Replace waste toner bottle	274
82.xx Waste toner bottle nearly full	274
83.xx Transfer module life warning	274
83.xx Transfer module missing	274
83.xx Replace transfer module	274
84 Defective [color] imaging unit.....	275
84.xx [color] imaging unit nearly low.....	275
84.xx [color] imaging unit low.....	275
84.xx Replace [color] imaging unit and [color] cartridge	275
84 Unsupported [color] imaging unit.....	275
88.xx [color] cartridge nearly low	275
88.xx [color] cartridge low	275
88.2x Replace [color] cartridge	276
Solving printing problems.....	276
Multiple-language PDF files do not print.....	276
Printer control panel display is blank or displays only diamonds.....	276
Error message about reading USB drive appears	276
Print jobs do not print.....	276
Confidential and other held jobs do not print	277
Print job takes longer than expected.....	278
Job prints from the wrong tray or on the wrong paper.....	278
Incorrect characters print	278
Tray linking does not work.....	278
Large jobs do not collate.....	279

Unexpected page breaks occur.....	279
Solving copy problems.....	279
Copier does not respond	279
Scanner unit does not close.....	280
Poor copy quality.....	280
Partial document or photo copies	281
Solving scanner problems.....	282
Checking an unresponsive scanner.....	282
Scan was not successful.....	282
Scanning takes too long or freezes the computer	282
Poor scanned image quality.....	283
Partial document or photo scans.....	283
Cannot scan from a computer	284
Solving fax problems.....	284
Fax and e-mail functions are not set up	284
Caller ID is not shown	284
Cannot send or receive a fax	285
Can send but not receive faxes.....	286
Can receive but not send faxes.....	287
Received fax has poor print quality	287
Solving home screen applications problems.....	288
An application error has occurred	288
Solving option problems.....	289
Option does not operate correctly or quits after it is installed	289
Paper tray problems	289
Cannot detect flash memory card	290
Cannot detect printer hard disk.....	290
Internal Solutions Port does not operate correctly	290
Internal print server does not operate correctly	290
Memory card	291
USB/parallel interface card does not operate correctly	291
Solving paper feed problems.....	291
Paper frequently jams.....	291
Paper jam message remains after jam is cleared	291
Jammed pages are not reprinted.....	292
Solving print quality problems.....	292
Characters have jagged or uneven edges	292
Clipped images.....	292
Fine horizontal lines appear on color pages	293
Gray background.....	293
Incorrect margins.....	293
Light colored line, white line, or incorrectly colored line appears on prints	294
Paper curl.....	295

Print irregularities	295
Print is too dark	296
Print is too light.....	297
Printer is printing blank pages	298
Repeating defects appear on a page	298
Shadow images appear on prints	299
Skewed print.....	300
Solid color pages.....	300
Streaked horizontal lines appear on prints.....	301
Streaked vertical lines appear on prints	301
Toner fog or background shading appears on the page	302
Toner rubs off	302
Toner specks	302
Transparency print quality is poor.....	303
Uneven print density	303
Solving color quality problems.....	303
FAQ about color printing	303
Embedded Web Server does not open.....	306
Check the network connection.....	306
Check the address entered in the Web browser	307
Temporarily disable Web proxy servers	307
Contacting customer support.....	307
Notices.....	308
Product information.....	308
Edition notice.....	308
Power consumption.....	311
Index.....	326

Safety information

Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

Do not place or use this product near water or wet locations.

This product uses a printing process that heats the print media, and the heat may cause the media to release emissions. You must understand the section in your operating instructions that discusses the guidelines for selecting print media to avoid the possibility of harmful emissions.

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The lithium battery in this product is not intended to be replaced. There is a danger of explosion if a lithium battery is incorrectly replaced. Do not recharge, disassemble, or incinerate a lithium battery. Discard used lithium batteries according to the manufacturer's instructions and local regulations.

 **CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely.

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** Before moving the printer, follow these guidelines to avoid personal injury or printer damage:

- Turn the printer off using the power switch, and then unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
- Disconnect all cords and cables from the printer before moving it.
- Lift the printer off the optional drawer, and set it aside instead of trying to lift the drawer and printer at the same time.

Note: Use the handholds located on both sides of the printer to lift it off the optional drawer.

Use only the power cord provided with this product or the manufacturer's authorized replacement.

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** To reduce risk of fire, use only the telecommunications (RJ-11) cord provided with this product or a UL Listed 26 AWG or larger replacement when connecting this product to the public switched telephone network.

 **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

 **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** Make sure that all external connections (such as Ethernet and telephone system connections) are properly installed in their marked plug-in ports.

This product is designed, tested, and approved to meet strict global safety standards with the use of specific manufacturer's components. The safety features of some parts may not always be obvious. The manufacturer is not responsible for the use of other replacement parts.

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** Do not cut, twist, bind, crush, or place heavy objects on the power cord. Do not subject the power cord to abrasion or stress. Do not pinch the power cord between objects such as furniture and walls. If any of these things happen, a risk of fire or electrical shock results. Inspect the power cord regularly for signs of such problems. Remove the power cord from the electrical outlet before inspecting it.

Refer service or repairs, other than those described in the user documentation, to a professional service person.

 **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** To avoid the risk of electric shock when cleaning the exterior of the printer, unplug the power cord from the wall outlet and disconnect all cables from the printer before proceeding.

 **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** Do not use the fax feature during a lightning storm. Do not set up this product or make any electrical or cabling connections, such as the fax feature, power cord, or telephone, during a lightning storm.

 **CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD:** Floor-mounted configurations require additional furniture for stability. You must use either a printer stand or printer base if you are using a high-capacity input tray, a duplex unit and an input option, or more than one input option. If you purchased a multifunction printer (MFP) that scans, copies, and faxes, you may need additional furniture. For more information, see www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters.

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** To reduce the risk of equipment instability, load each paper drawer or tray separately. Keep all other drawers or trays closed until needed.

SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS.

Learning about the printer

Finding information about the printer

What are you looking for?	Find it here
Initial setup instructions: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Connecting the printer• Installing the printer software	Setup documentation—The setup documentation came with the printer and is also available at http://support.lexmark.com .
Additional setup and instructions for using the printer: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Selecting and storing paper and specialty media• Loading paper• Configuring printer settings• Viewing and printing documents and photos• Setting up and using the printer software• Configuring the printer on a network• Caring for and maintaining the printer• Troubleshooting and solving problems	<i>User's Guide</i> and <i>Quick Reference Guide</i> —The guides may be available on the <i>Software and Documentation</i> CD. For more information, visit http://support.lexmark.com .
Instructions for: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Connecting the printer to an Ethernet network• Troubleshooting printer connection problems	<i>Networking Guide</i> —Open the <i>Software and Documentation</i> CD, and then look for <i>Printer and Software Documentation</i> under the <i>Pubs</i> folder. From the list of publications, click the Networking Guide link.
Help using the printer software	Windows or Mac Help—Open a printer software program or application, and then click Help . Click  to view context-sensitive information. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Help is automatically installed with the printer software.• The printer software is located in the printer program folder or on the desktop, depending on your operating system.

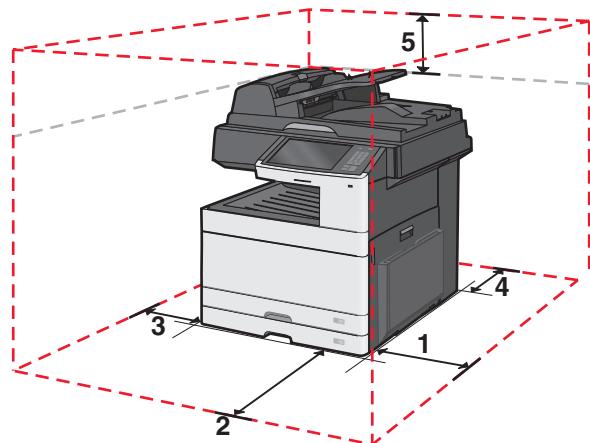
What are you looking for?	Find it here
<p>The latest supplemental information, updates, and customer support:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Documentation• Driver downloads• Live chat support• E-mail support• Voice support	<p>Lexmark Support Web site— http://support.lexmark.com</p> <p>Note: Select your country or region, and then select your product to view the appropriate support site.</p> <p>Support telephone numbers and hours of operation for your country or region can be found on the Support Web site or on the printed warranty that came with your printer.</p> <p>Record the following information (located on the store receipt and at the back of the printer), and have it ready when you contact customer support so that they may serve you faster:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Machine Type number• Serial number• Date purchased• Store where purchased
Warranty information	<p>Warranty information varies by country or region:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• In the U.S.—See the Statement of Limited Warranty included with this printer, or at http://support.lexmark.com.• In other countries and regions—See the printed warranty that came with your printer.

Selecting a location for the printer

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely.

When selecting a location for the printer, leave enough room to open trays, covers, and doors. If you plan to install any options, then leave enough room for them too. It is important to:

- Make sure airflow in the room meets the latest revision of the ASHRAE 62 standard or the CEN Technical Committee 156 standard.
- Provide a flat, sturdy, and stable surface.
- Keep the printer:
 - Away from the direct airflow of air conditioners, heaters, or ventilators
 - Free from direct sunlight, humidity extremes, or temperature fluctuations
 - Clean, dry, and free of dust
- Allow the following recommended amount of space around the printer for proper ventilation:



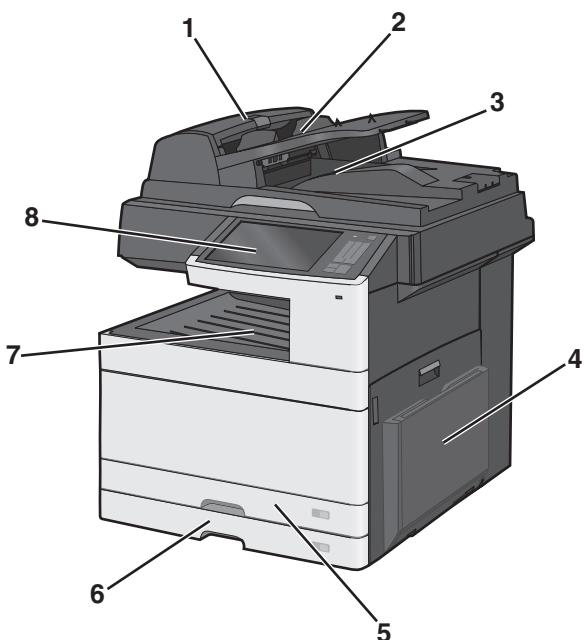
1	348 mm (13.7 in.)
2	609.6 mm (24 in.)
3	100 mm (3.94 in.)
4	100 mm (3.94 in.)
5	285 mm (11.22 in.)

Printer configurations

Basic model

Notes:

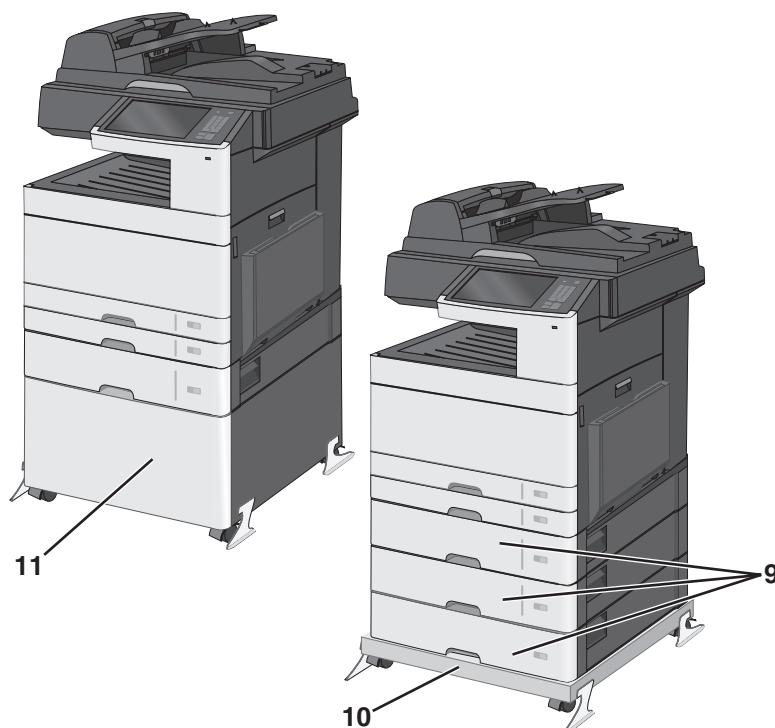
- The printer stand is a cabinet that can be converted into a caster base.
- If used with a printer stand, then the printer supports only one optional 550-sheet tray.
- If used with a caster base, then the printer supports a maximum of three optional 550-sheet trays.



1	Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)
2	ADF input tray
3	ADF exit bin
4	Multipurpose feeder
5	Standard 150-sheet tray (Tray 1)
6	Standard 250-sheet tray (Tray 2)
7	Standard exit bin
8	Printer control panel

Configured model

 **CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD:** Floor-mounted configurations require additional furniture for stability. You must use either a printer stand or printer base if you are using a high-capacity input tray, a duplex unit and an input option, or more than one input option. If you purchased a multifunction printer (MFP) that scans, copies, and faxes, you may need additional furniture. For more information, see www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters.



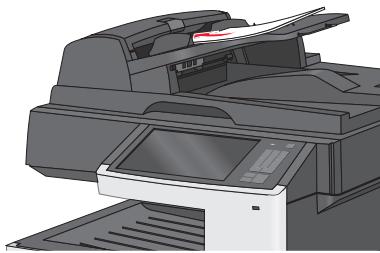
9	Optional 550-sheet trays
10	Caster base (converted from a printer stand)
11	Printer stand

Basic functions of the scanner

The scanner provides copy, fax, and scan-to-network capability for large workgroups. You can:

- Make quick copies, or change the settings on the printer control panel to perform specific copy jobs.
- Send a fax using the printer control panel.
- Send a fax to multiple fax destinations at the same time.
- Scan documents and send them to your computer, an e-mail address, a flash drive, or an FTP destination.
- Scan documents and send them to another printer (PDF by way of FTP).

Understanding the ADF and scanner glass

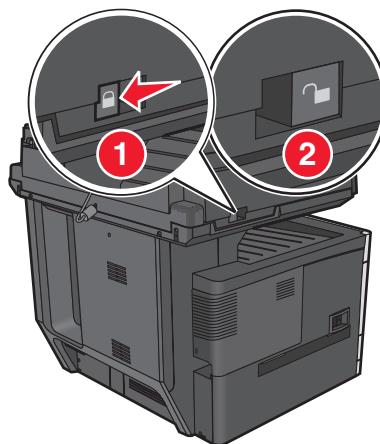
Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)	Scanner glass
 <p>Use the ADF for multiple-page documents, including duplex pages.</p>	 <p>Use the scanner glass for single pages or book pages, small items (such as postcards or photos), transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings).</p>

Using the ADF

- Load documents into the ADF faceup, as indicated by the ADF paper icon.
- Load up to 100 sheets of plain paper in the ADF input tray.
- Scan sizes from 76.2 x 139.7 mm (3.0 x 5.5 in.) to 296.9 x 431.8 mm (11.69 x 17 in.).
- Scan documents with mixed page sizes (Letter and Legal).
- Scan media weights from 64 to 120 g/m² (16 to 32 lb).
- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

Using the scanner glass

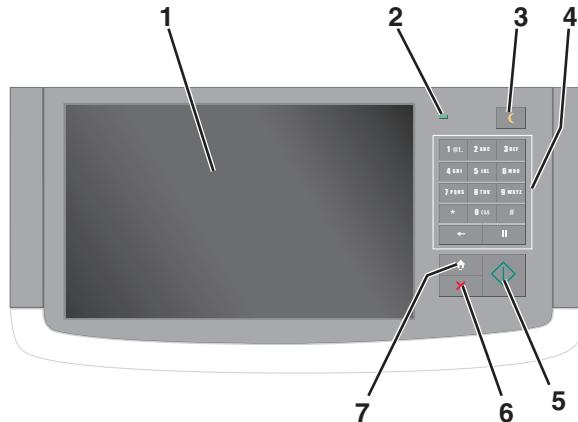
- Unlock the scanner glass by sliding the button to the left.



- Place documents facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.

- Scan or copy documents up to 296.9 x 431.8 mm (11.69 x 17 in.).
- Copy books up to 25.4 mm (1 in.) thick.

Understanding the printer control panel



Item	Description	
1	Display	Shows the status of the printer, and allows printer setup and operation
2	Indicator light	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off—The printer is off. • Blinking green—The printer is warming up, processing data, or printing. • Solid green—The printer is on, but idle. • Blinking red—The printer requires operator intervention is needed.
3	Sleep	<p>Enables Sleep Mode or Hibernate Mode</p> <p>The following are the statuses of the indicator light and the Sleep button:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Entering or waking from Sleep Mode—The indicator light is illuminated solid green, Sleep button is unilluminated. • Operating in Sleep Mode—The indicator light is illuminated solid green, Sleep button is illuminated solid amber. • Entering or waking from Hibernate Mode—The indicator light is illuminated solid green, Sleep button is illuminated blinking amber. • Operating in Hibernate Mode—The indicator light is unilluminated, Sleep button is blinking amber for 1/10 of a second, then go completely unilluminated for 1.9 seconds in pulsing pattern. <p>The following actions wake the printer from Sleep Mode:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Touching the screen or any hard button presses. • Opening an input tray, cover, or door. • Sending a print job from the computer. • Performing a Power On Reset (POR) with the main power switch.
4	Keypad	Lets you enter numbers, letter, or symbols
5	Submit	Lets you submit changes made in the printer settings
6	Stop/Cancel	Stops all printer activity
	<p>Note: A list of option is displayed once Stopped appears on the display.</p>	

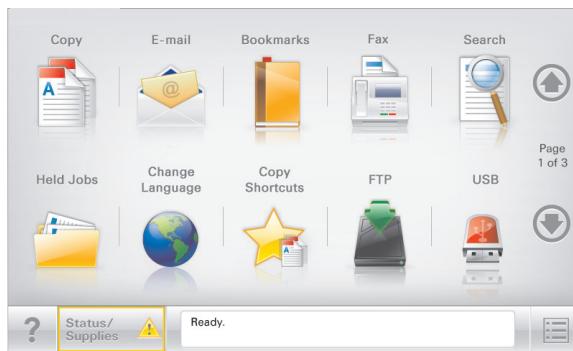
Item	Description	
7	Home	Lets you navigate back to the home screen

Understanding the home screen

Understanding the home screen

When the printer is turned on, the display shows a basic screen, referred to as the home screen. Touch the home screen buttons and icons to initiate an action such as copying, faxing, or scanning; to open the menu screen; or to respond to messages.

Note: Your home screen, icons, and buttons may vary depending on your home screen customization settings, administrative setup, and active embedded solutions.



Touch	To
Copy	Access the Copy menus and make copies.
E-mail	Access the E-mail menus and send e-mails.
Fax	Access the Fax menus and send fax.
	Access the printer menus. Note: These menus are available only when the printer is in the Ready state.
FTP	Access the File Transfer Protocol (FTP) menus and scan documents directly to an FTP server.
Status message bar	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Show the current printer status such as Ready or Busy. Show printer conditions such as Toner Low or Cartridge Low. Show intervention messages so the printer can continue processing.
Status/Supplies	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Display a warning or error message whenever the printer requires intervention to continue processing. Access the messages screen for more information on the message, and how to clear it.
USB or USB Thumbdrive	View, select, print, scan, or e-mail photos and documents from a flash drive. Note: This button appears only when you return to the home screen while a memory card or flash drive is connected to the printer.
Bookmarks	Create, organize, and save a set of bookmarks (URL) into a tree view of folders and file links. Note: The tree view supports only bookmarks created from this function, and not from any other application.
Held Jobs	Display all current held jobs.

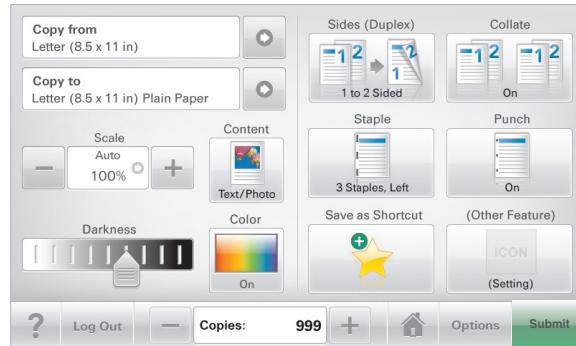
Other buttons that may appear on the home screen:

Touch	To
Search held jobs	<p>Search on any of the following items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • User name for held or confidential print jobs • Job names for held jobs, excluding confidential print jobs • Profile names • Bookmark container or print job names • USB container or print job names for supported file types
Release Held Fax	<p>Access the list of held faxes.</p> <p>Note: This button appears only when there are held faxes with a scheduled hold time previously set.</p>
Lock Device	<p>Open a password entry screen. Enter the correct password to lock the printer control panel.</p> <p>Note: This button appears only when the printer is unlocked and password has been set.</p>
Unlock Device	<p>Open a password entry screen. Enter the correct password to unlock the printer control panel.</p> <p>Note: This button appears only when the printer is locked. The printer control panel buttons and shortcuts cannot be used while this appears.</p>
Cancel Jobs	<p>Open the Cancel Jobs screen. The Cancel Jobs screen shows three headings: Print, Fax, and Network.</p> <p>The following options are available under the Print, Fax, and Network headings:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Print job • Copy job • Fax profile • FTP • E-mail send <p>Each heading has a list of jobs shown in a column under it which can show only three jobs per screen. If more than three jobs exist in a column, then an arrow appears enabling you to scroll through the jobs.</p>
Change Language	Launch the Change Language pop-up window that allows you to change the primary language of the printer.

Using the touch-screen buttons

Note: Your home screen, icons, and buttons may vary depending on your home screen customization settings and administrative setup.

Sample touch screen



Touch	To
Submit	Submit changes made in the printer settings.
Sample Copy	Print a sample copy.
Right arrow	Scroll to the right.
Left arrow	Scroll to the left.
Home	Return to the home screen.
Right increase	Select a higher value.
Left decrease	Select a lower value.
Exit	Exit from the current screen.

Touch	To
Tips 	Open a context-sensitive Help dialog on the touch screen.

Other touch-screen buttons

Touch	To
Accept 	Save a setting.
Cancel 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cancel an action or a selection. Exit a screen and lets you return to the previous screen without saving changes.
Reset 	Reset values on the screen.
Radio button 	Select or clear an item.

Features

Feature	Description
Menu trail line: <u>Menus</u> > <u>Settings</u> > <u>Copy Settings</u> > Number of Copies	<p>A menu trail line is located at the top of each menu screen. This feature shows the path taken to arrive at the current menu.</p> <p>Touch any of the underlined words to return to that menu.</p> <p>Number of Copies is not underlined since this is the current screen. If you touch an underlined word on the Number of Copies screen before the Number of Copies is set and saved, then the selection is not saved, and it does not become the default setting.</p>
Attendance message alert 	If an attendance message affects a function, then this icon appears and the red indicator light blinks.

Feature	Description
Warning	If an error condition occurs, then this icon appears. 

Setting up and using the home screen applications

Notes:

- Your home screen, icons, and buttons may vary depending on your home screen customization settings, administrative setup, and active embedded applications. Some applications are supported only on select printer models.
- There may be additional solutions and applications available for purchase.

Finding the IP address of the printer

Note: Make sure your printer is connected to a network or to a print server.

You can find the printer IP address:

- From the top left corner of the printer home screen.
- From the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu.
- By printing a network setup page or menu settings page, and then finding the TCP/IP section.

Note: An IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.

Accessing the Embedded Web Server

The Embedded Web Server is the printer Web page that lets you view and remotely configure printer settings even when you are not physically near the printer.

1 Obtain the printer IP address:

- From the printer control panel home screen
- From the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu
- By printing a network setup page or menu settings page, and then finding the TCP/IP section

Note: An IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.

2 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

3 Press **Enter**.

Note: If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

Showing or hiding icons on the home screen

- 1 From the Embedded Web Server, click **Settings > General Settings > Home screen customization**.
A list of basic printer functions appears.
- 2 Select the check boxes to specify which icons appear on the printer home screen.
Cleared check box items are hidden.
- 3 Click **Submit**.

Exporting and importing a configuration using the Embedded Web Server

You can export configuration settings into a text file that can then be imported and used to apply the settings to one or more additional printers.

Exporting a configuration

- 1 From the Embedded Web Server, click **Settings** or **Configuration**.
- 2 Click **Device Solutions > Solutions (eSF)**, or click **Embedded Solutions**.
- 3 From Installed Solutions, click the name of the application you want to configure.
- 4 Click **Configure > Export**.
- 5 Follow the instructions on the computer screen to save the configuration file, and then enter a unique file name or use the default name.

Note: If a **JVM Out of Memory** error occurs, then repeat the export until the configuration file is saved.

Importing a configuration

- 1 From the Embedded Web Server, click **Settings** or **Configuration**.
- 2 Click **Device Solutions > Solutions (eSF)**, or click **Embedded Solutions**.
- 3 From Installed Solutions, click the name of the application you want to configure.
- 4 Click **Configure > Import**.
- 5 Browse to the saved configuration file, and then load or preview it.

Note: If a timeout occurs and a blank screen appears, then refresh the browser, and then click **Apply**.

Activating the home screen applications

Your printer comes with preinstalled home screen applications. To use these applications, activate and set up these applications using the Embedded Web Server. For more information about accessing the Embedded Web Server, see “Accessing the Embedded Web Server” on page 30.

For detailed information about configuring and using the home screen applications, visit the Lexmark Web site at <http://support.lexmark.com>.

Setting up Forms and Favorites

Icon	Description
	<p>The application helps you simplify and streamline work processes by letting you quickly find and print frequently used online forms directly from the home screen.</p> <p>Note: The printer must have permission to access the network folder, FTP site, or Web site where the bookmark is stored. From the computer where the bookmark is stored, use sharing, security, and firewall settings to allow the printer at least a <i>read</i> access. For help, see the documentation that came with your operating system.</p>

1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Note: View the printer IP address on the printer control panel home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.

2 Click **Settings > Device Solutions > Solutions (eSF) > Forms and Favorites**.

3 Define the bookmarks, and then customize the settings.

4 Click **Apply**.

To use the application, touch **Forms and Favorites** on the printer home screen, and then navigate through form categories, or search for forms based on a form number, name, or description.

Setting up Scan to Network

Icon	Description
	<p>The application lets you capture a digital image of a hard-copy document and route it to a shared network folder. You can define up to 30 unique folder destinations.</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The printer must have permission to write to the destinations. From the computer where the destination is specified, use sharing, security, and firewall settings to allow the printer at least a <i>write</i> access. For help, see the documentation that came with your operating system. The Scan to Network icon appears only when one or more destinations are defined.

1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Note: View the printer IP address on the printer control panel home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.

2 Click **Settings > Device Solutions > Solutions (eSF) > Scan to Network**.

3 Specify the destinations, and then customize the settings.

4 Click **Apply**.

To use the application, touch **Scan to Network** on the printer home screen, and then follow the instructions on the printer display.

Setting up My MFP

Icon	Description
	<p>The application lets you customize your touch-screen settings and store those preferences in a flash drive. Each time you want to copy, fax, or scan, insert the flash drive into the USB port of the printer. All your personal preferences are automatically uploaded, including job settings, home screen preferences, and address book.</p> <p>Note: The icon appears only when a flash drive with My MFP settings is inserted into the USB port of the printer.</p>

To set up My MFP, insert a flash drive into the USB port of the printer, and then follow the instructions on the printer display to run the setup wizard.

To use My MFP, insert the flash drive into the USB port of the printer when you want to copy, fax, or scan.

Understanding WS-Scan

A WS-Scan icon and its description

Icon	Description
	<p>The Web Services-Scan application lets you scan documents at the network printer, and then send the scanned image to your computer. WS-Scan is a Microsoft application that is similar to Scan to Network, but has the capability of sending the scanned image to a Windows-based application. To learn more about WS-Scan, see the Microsoft documentation.</p> <p>Note: The icon appears on the printer home screen only when there is a computer registered with the network printer. The computer must have either Windows 8, Windows 7, or Windows Vista operating system installed.</p>

Setting up Remote Operator Panel

This application shows the printer control panel on your computer screen and lets you interact with the printer control panel, even when you are not physically near the network printer. From your computer screen, you can view the printer status, release held print jobs, create bookmarks, and do other print-related tasks you might normally do while standing at the network printer.

1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Note: View the printer IP address on the printer control panel home screen. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.

2 Click **Settings > Device Solutions > Solutions (eSF) > Remote Operator Panel**.

3 Select the **Enabled** check box, and then customize the settings.

4 Click **Apply**.

To use the application, from the Embedded Web Server, click **Applications > Remote Operator Panel > Launch VNC Applet**.

Additional printer setup

Installing internal options

 **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

You can customize your printer connectivity and memory capacity by adding optional cards.

Available internal options

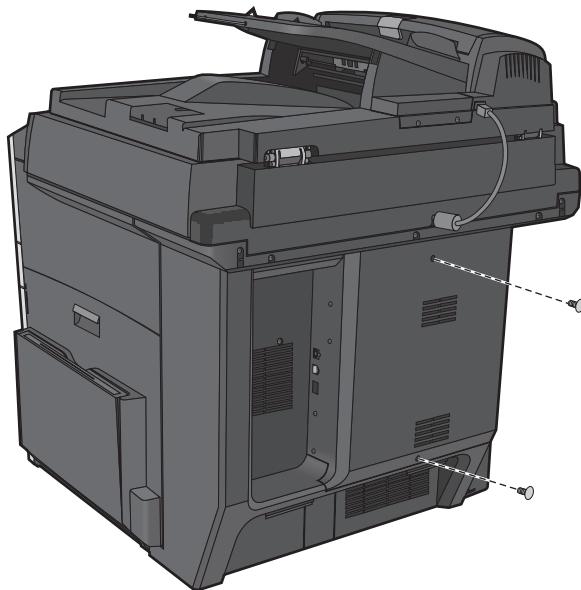
- Memory cards
 - Printer memory
 - Flash memory
 - Fonts
- Firmware cards
 - Bar Code
 - PrintCrypton™
- Printer hard disk

Accessing the system board

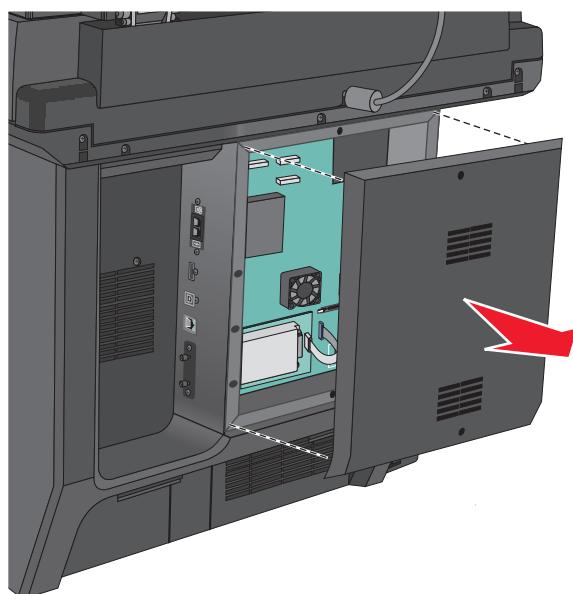
⚠ CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

Note: This task requires a flathead screwdriver.

- 1 Turn the screws clockwise to loosen them.

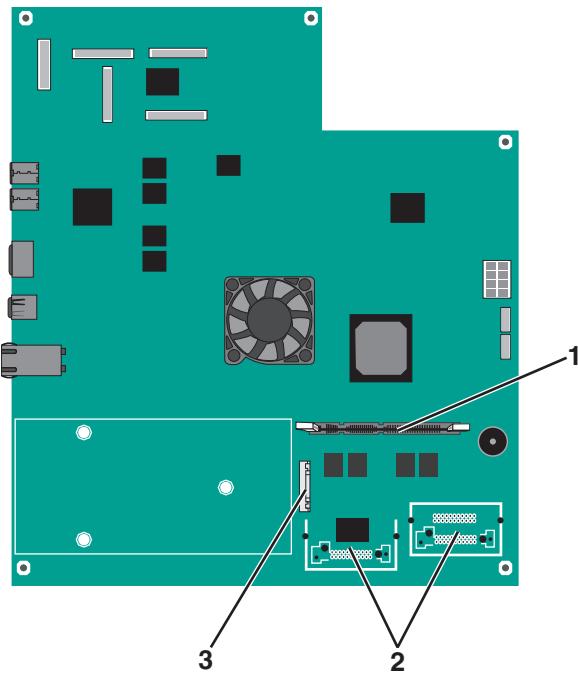


- 2 Pull the cover forward to remove it.



- 3 Use the following illustration to locate the appropriate connectors.

Warning—Potential Damage: System board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any system board electronic components or connectors.



1	Memory card connector
2	Firmware and flash memory card connectors
3	ISP connector

4 Reattach the cover.

Installing a memory card

CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

Warning—Potential Damage: System board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any system board electronic components or connectors.

An optional memory card can be purchased separately and attached to the system board.

1 Access the system board.

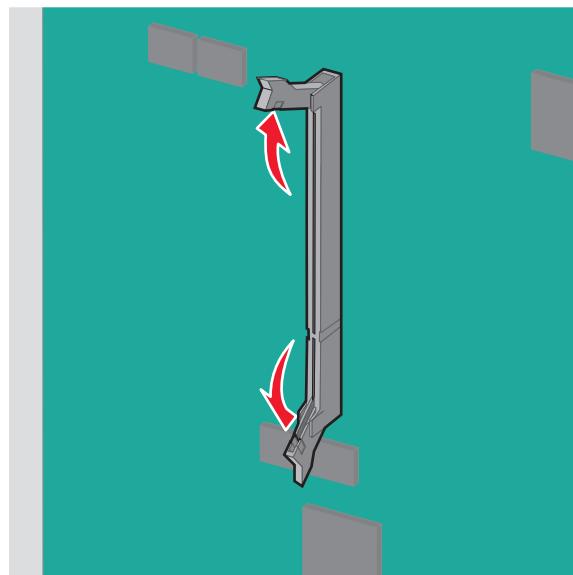
For more information, see “Accessing the system board” on page 36.

Note: This task requires a flathead screwdriver.

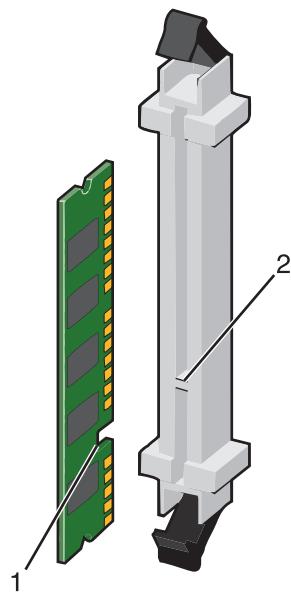
2 Unpack the memory card.

Note: Avoid touching the connection points along the edge of the card.

- 3 On the system board, open the memory card connector latches.

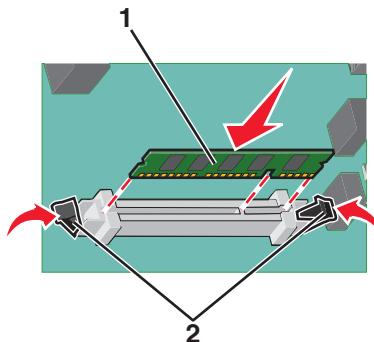


- 4 Align the notches on the memory card to the ridges on the connector.



1	Notch
2	Ridge

- 5 Push the memory card straight into the connector until it *clicks* into place.



- 6 Reattach the system board cover.

Installing a flash memory or firmware card

The system board has two connections for an optional flash memory or firmware card. Only one of each may be installed, but the connectors are interchangeable.

CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

Warning—Potential Damage: System board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any system board electronic components or connectors.

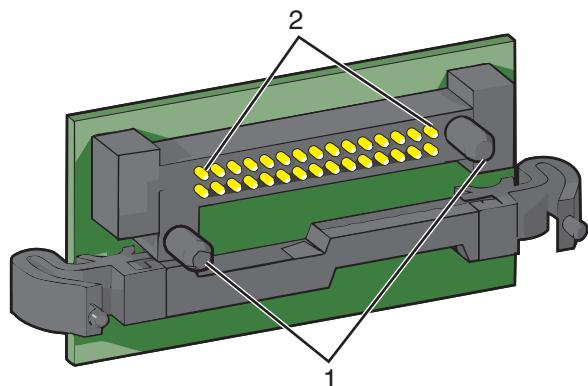
- 1 Access the system board.

Note: This task requires a flathead screwdriver.

- 2 Unpack the card.

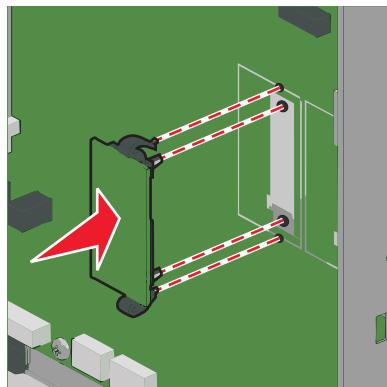
Note: Avoid touching the connection points along the edge of the card.

- 3 Holding the card by its sides, align the plastic pins on the card with the holes on the system board.



1	Plastic pins
2	Metal pins

4 Push the card firmly into place.



Notes:

- The entire length of the connector on the card must touch and be flush against the system board.
- Be careful not to damage the connectors.

5 Reattach the system board cover.

Installing an Internal Solutions Port

The system board supports one optional Lexmark™ Internal Solutions Port (ISP).

Note: This task requires a flathead screwdriver.

⚠ CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

Warning—Potential Damage: System board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any system board electronic components or connectors.

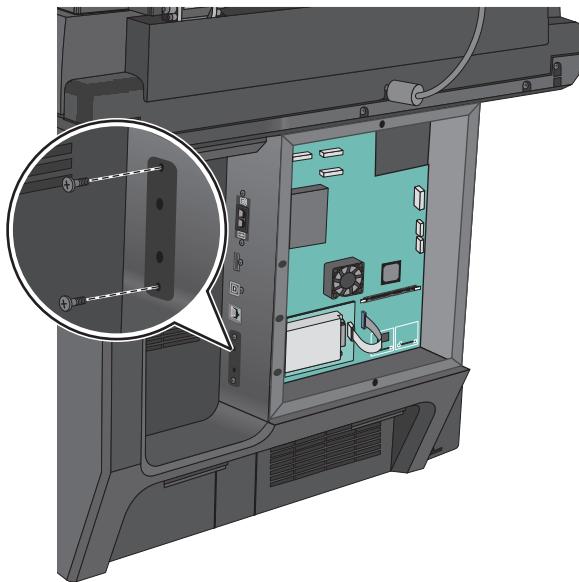
1 Access the system board.

For more information, see “Accessing the system board” on page 36.

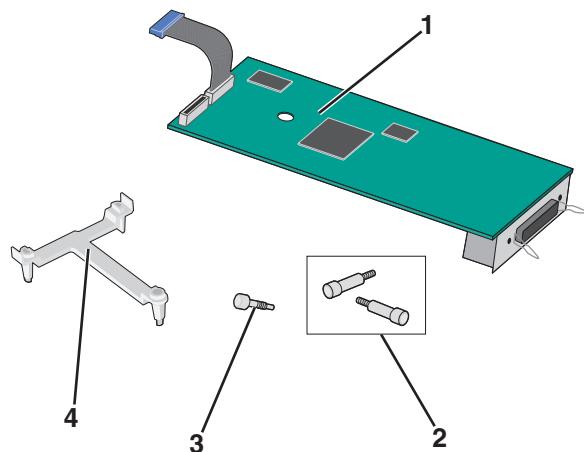
2 Remove the printer hard disk.

For more information, see “Removing a printer hard disk” on page 45

3 Remove the two screws.

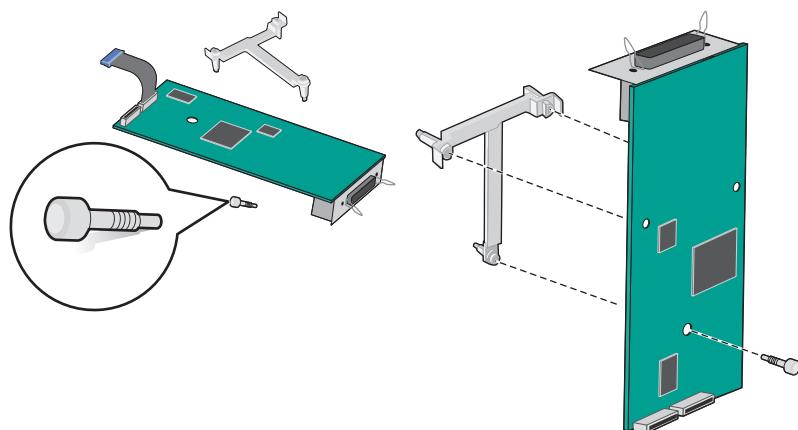


4 Unpack the ISP kit.

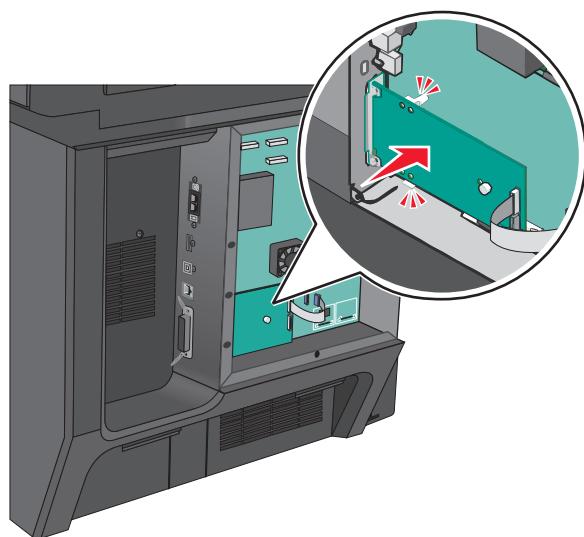


1	ISP solution
2	Screws for the ISP solution
3	Screws for the plastic bracket
4	Plastic bracket

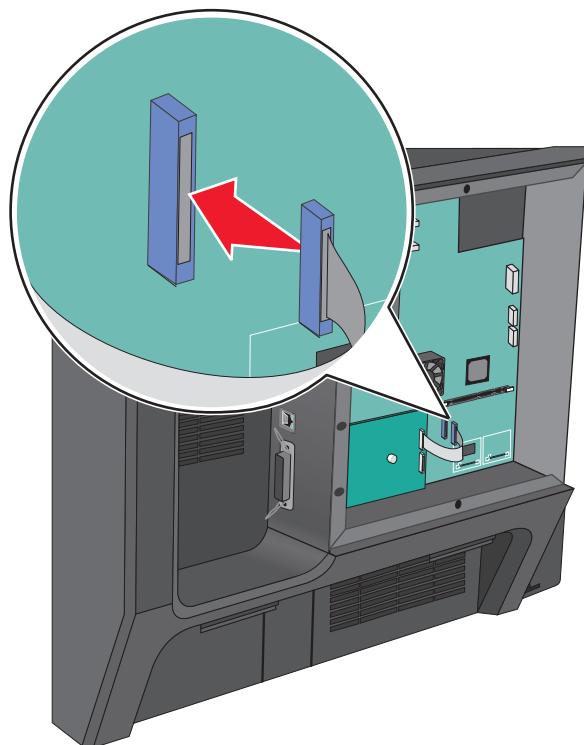
5 Use the provided screws to attach the plastic bracket to the ISP solution.



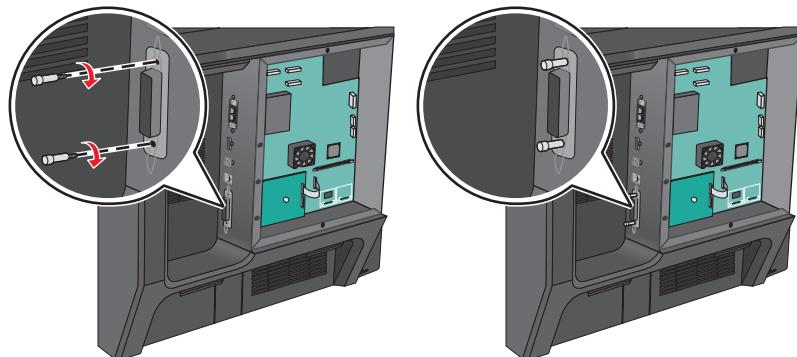
- 6 Use the provided screw to attach the ISP solution to the system board cage.



- 7** Connect the ISP solution interface cable into the receptacle of the system board.



- 8** Firmly connect the ISP solution to the system board cage using two screws.



Installing a printer hard disk

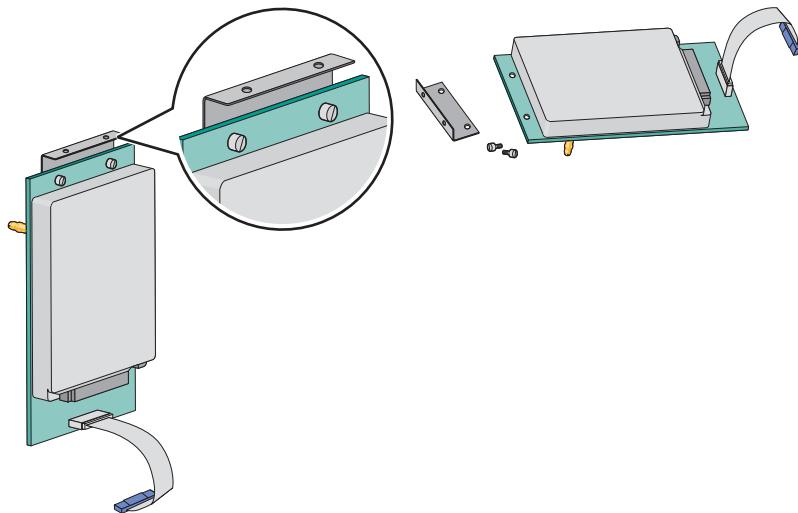
CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

Warning—Potential Damage: System board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any system board electronic components or connectors.

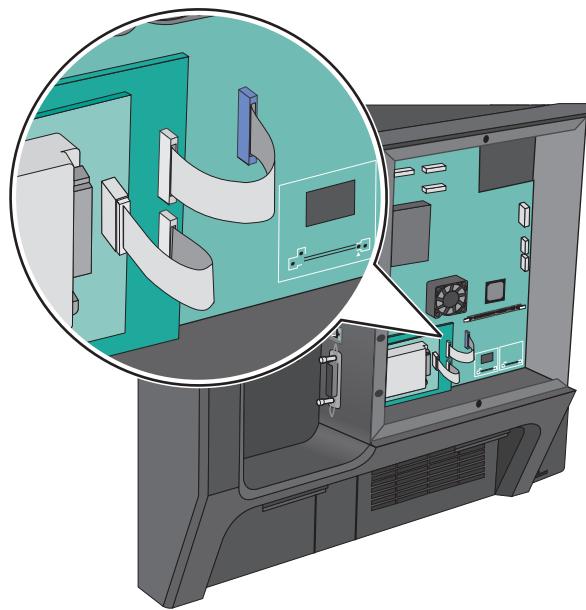
1 Access the system board.

for more information, see “Accessing the system board” on page 36

2 Remove the metal bracket from the printer hard disk using a flathead screwdriver.



3 Connect the printer hard disk interface cable into the receptacle of the ISP board.



4 Reattach the system board cover.

Removing a printer hard disk

The printer hard disk is preinstalled in this device.

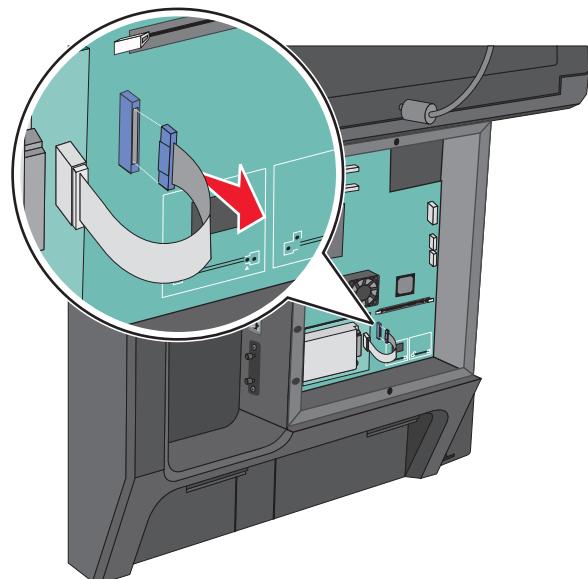
Note: This task requires a flathead screwdriver.

Warning—Potential Damage: System board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any system board electronic components or connectors.

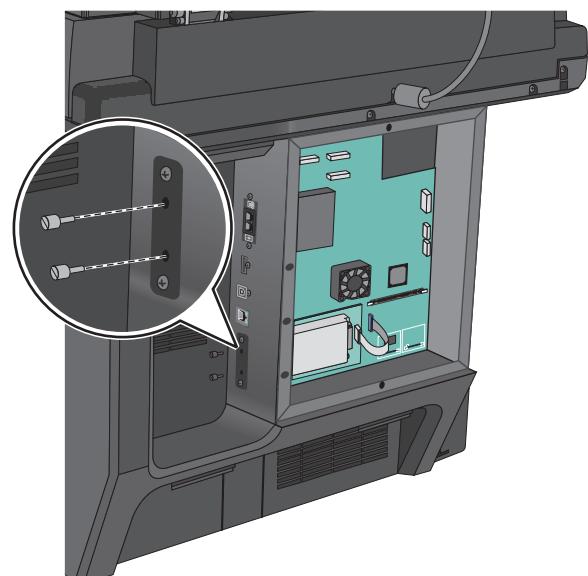
- 1 Access the system board.

For more information, see “Accessing the system board” on page 36.

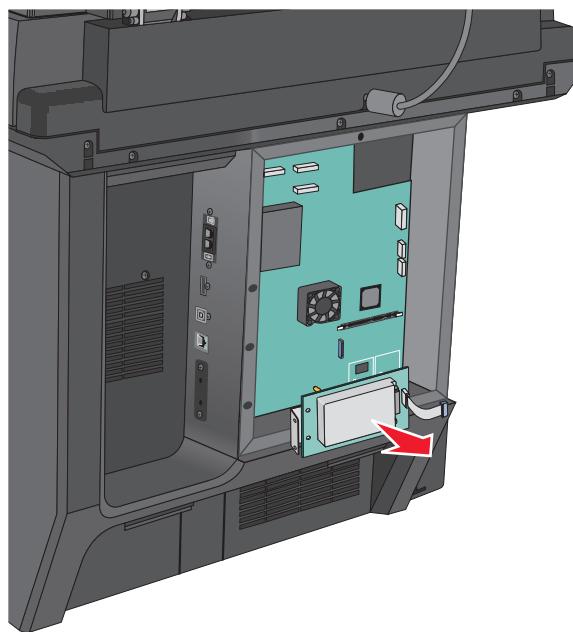
- 2 Unplug the printer hard disk interface cable from the system board, leaving the cable attached to the printer hard disk. To unplug the cable, squeeze the paddle at the plug of the interface cable to disengage the latch before pulling the cable out.



- 3 Remove the screws while holding the printer hard disk in place.



4 Remove the printer hard disk.



5 Reattach the system board cover.

Installing optional trays

Order of installation

⚠ CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD: Floor-mounted configurations require additional furniture for stability. You must use either a printer stand or printer base if you are using a high-capacity input tray, a duplex unit and an input option, or more than one input option. If you purchased a multifunction printer (MFP) that scans, copies, and faxes, you may need additional furniture. For more information, see www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters.

Install the printer and any options you have purchased in the following order:

- Printer stand
- Optional 550-sheet trays
- Printer

For more information on converting a printer stand to caster base, and installing a printer stand, caster base or optional 550-sheet tray, see the documentation that came with the printer option.

Installing a printer stand and optional tray

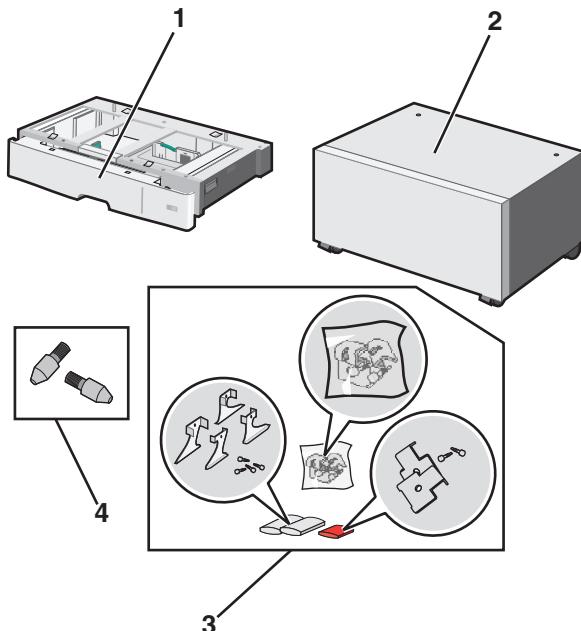
Note: If used with a printer stand, then the printer supports only one optional 550-sheet tray.

! **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely.

! **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

Note: This task requires a screwdriver.

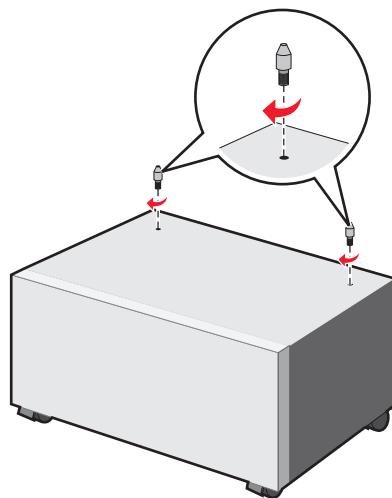
- 1 Unpack the optional tray and printer stand, and then remove all packing material.



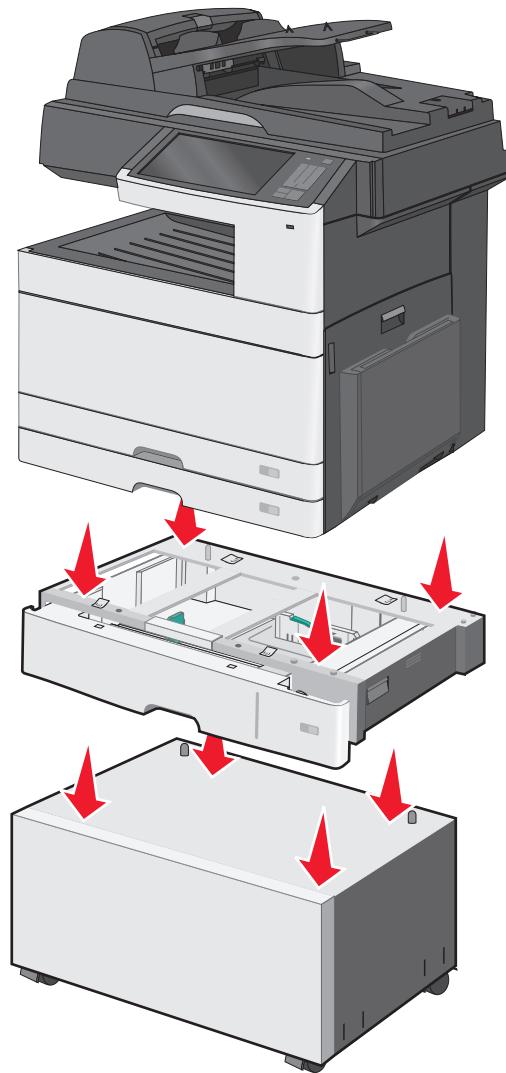
1	Optional 550-sheet tray
2	Printer stand
3	Brackets and screws
4	Thumbscrews

- 2 Turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

3 Attach the thumbscrews on top of the printer stand.

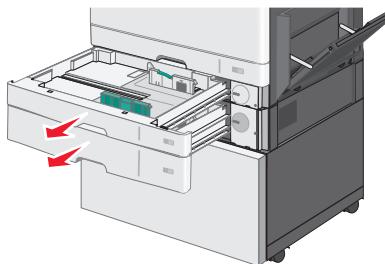


4 Align the optional tray to the printer stand, then lower the printer to the tray.

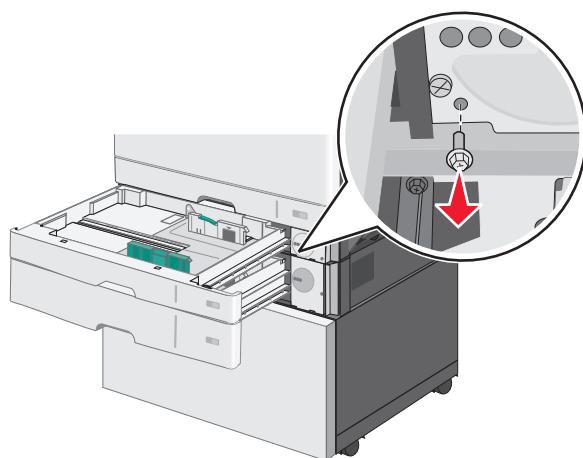


5 Lock the standard and optional trays together using the brackets that came with the optional tray.

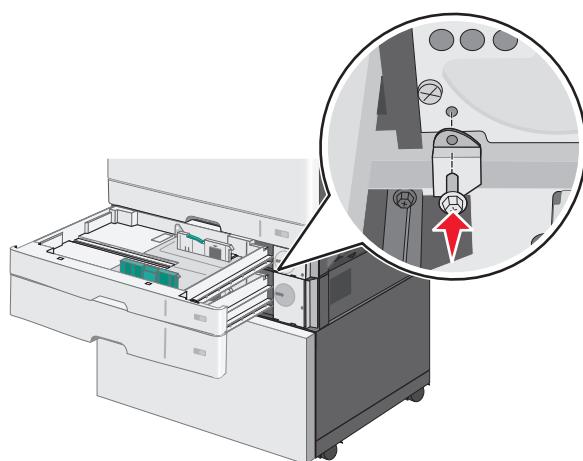
a Open the standard 250- and optional 550-sheet tray.



b Remove the screw from the 250-sheet tray.



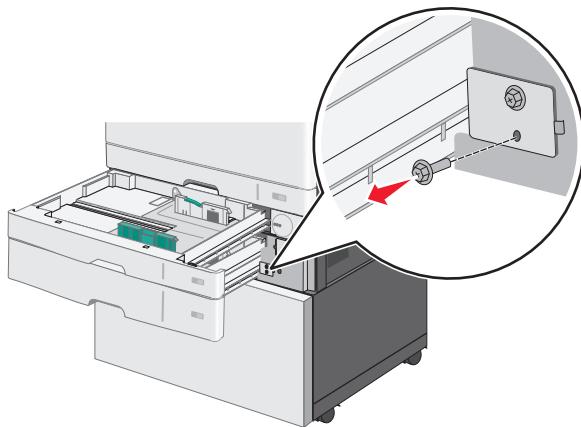
c Place a bracket over the screw hole and secure it with the screw.



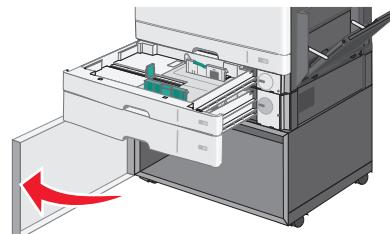
d Close the trays.

6 Lock the optional 550-sheet tray to the printer stand.

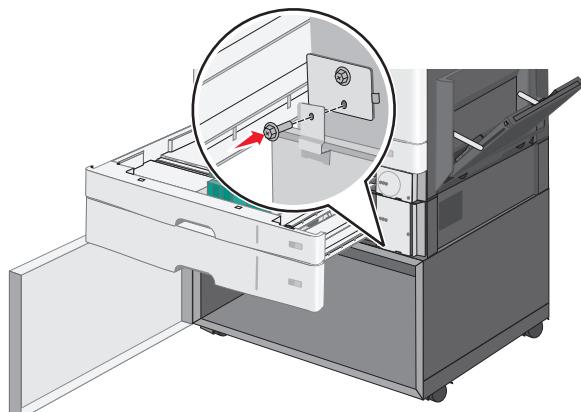
- a** Open the optional 550-sheet tray and remove the screw.



- b** Open the printer stand.

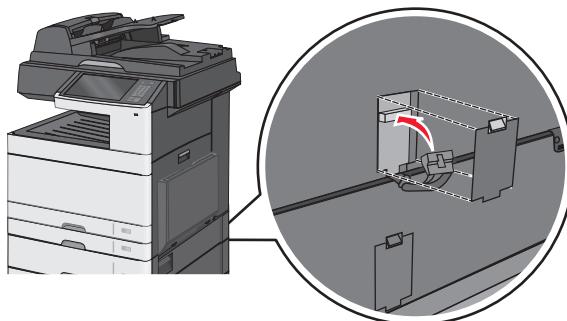


- c** Place a bracket over the screw hole and secure it with the screw.

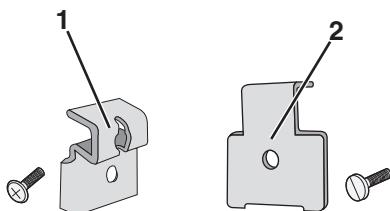


- d** Close the optional tray and printer stand.

7 Plug in the electrical connections between trays.

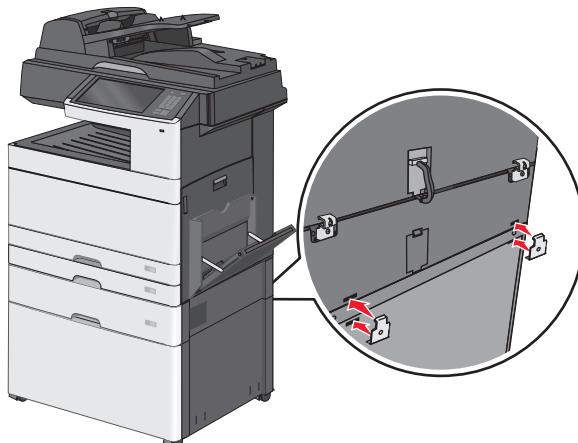


8 Attach brackets to the back of the printer, optional tray, and printer stand.

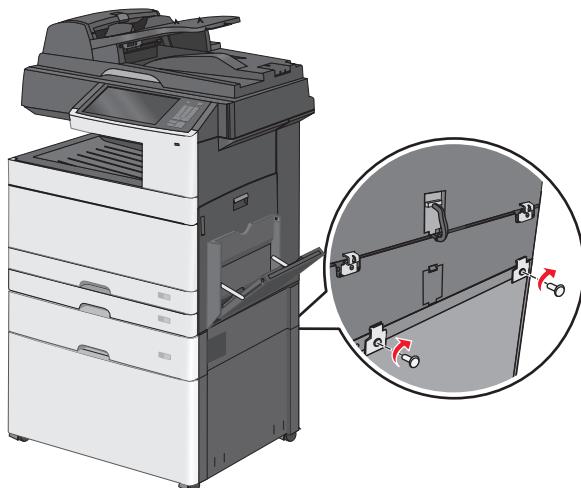


1	Bracket to lock optional tray to printer
2	Bracket to lock optional tray to printer stand

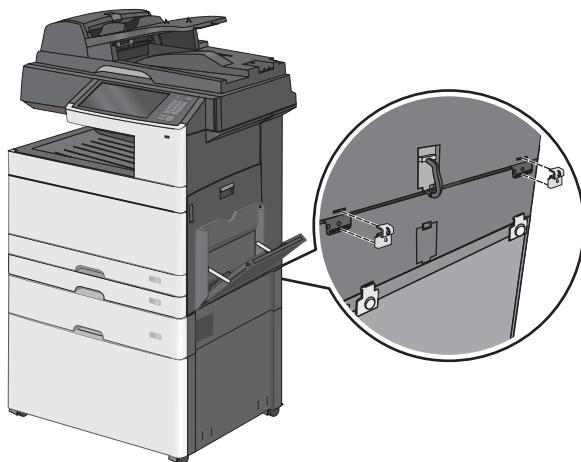
a Insert brackets on the slots located at the back of the optional tray and printer stand.



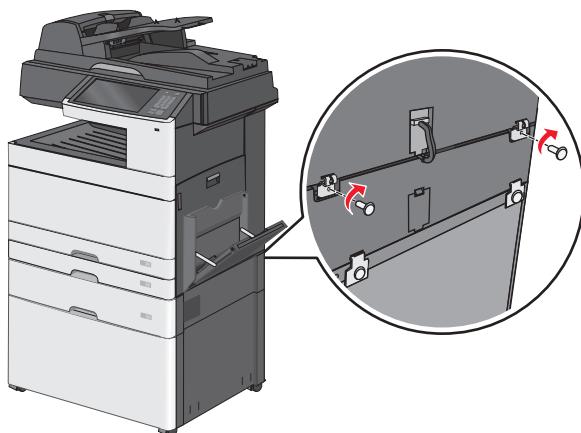
- b** Secure the brackets with screws.



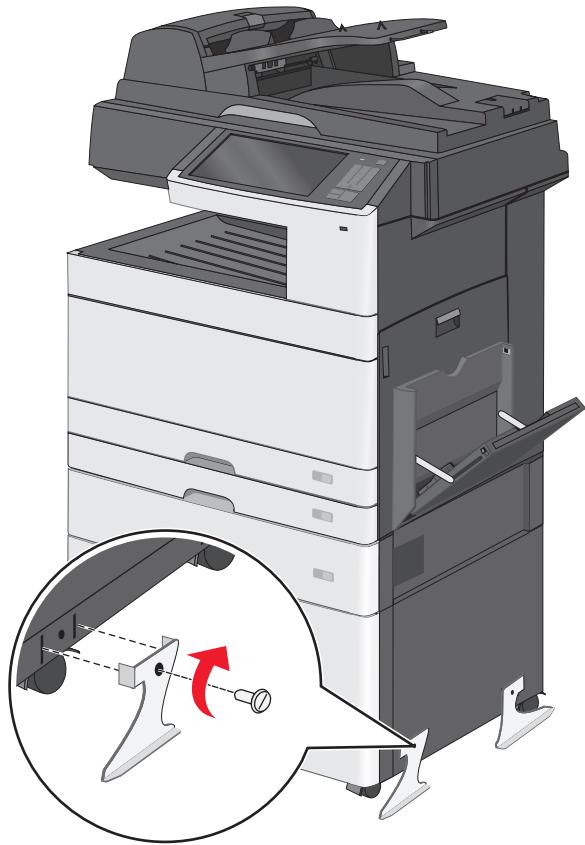
- c** Insert brackets on the slots located at the back of the printer and optional tray.



- d** Secure the brackets with screws.



9 Insert the bases on the slots at the sides of the printer stand and secure them with screws.



10 Turn the printer back on.

11 Set the printer software to recognize the optional input source.

For more information, see “Updating available options in the printer driver” on page 62.

Installing 550-sheet trays

Notes:

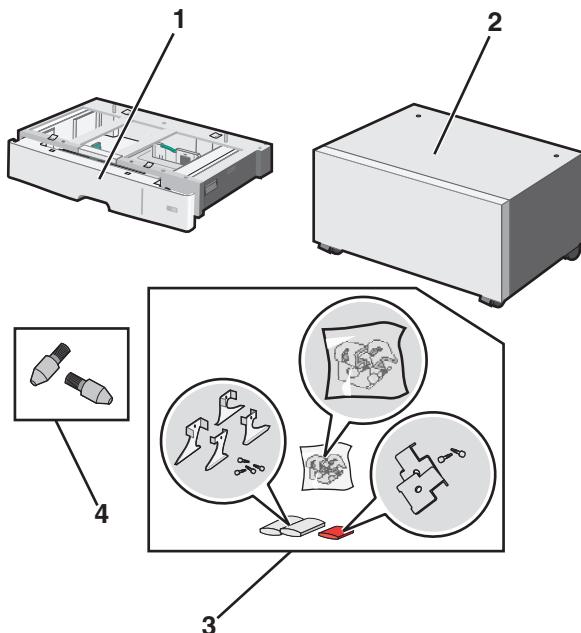
- The printer supports a maximum of three optional 550-sheet trays.
- When installing three optional 550-sheet trays, use a printer stand converted into a caster base.

⚠ CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY: The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely.

⚠ CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

Note: This task requires a screwdriver.

- 1 Unpack the optional tray and the printer stand, and then remove all packing material.

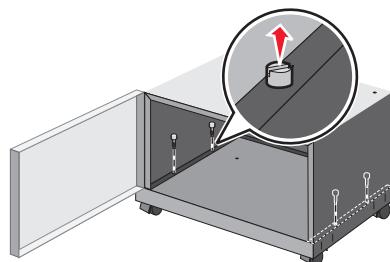


1	Optional 550-sheet tray
2	Printer stand
3	Brackets and screws
4	Thumbscrews

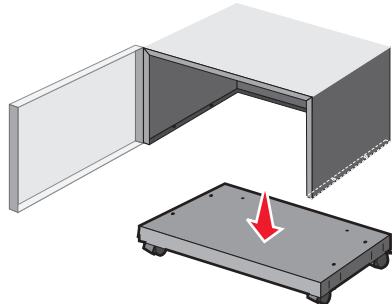
- 2 Turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

- 3 Convert the printer stand into a caster base.

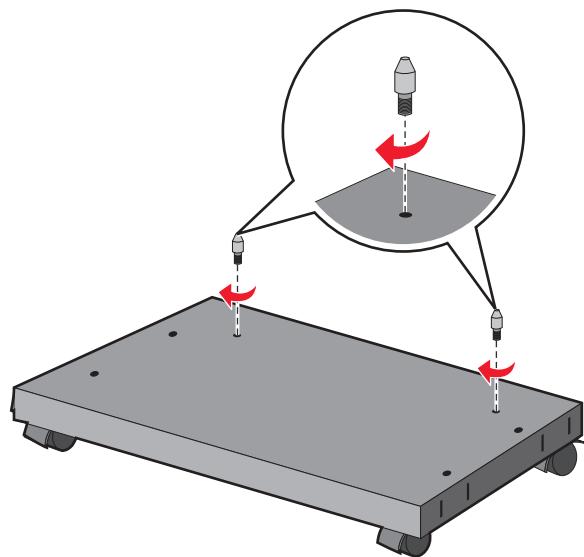
- a Remove the four screws inside the printer stand.



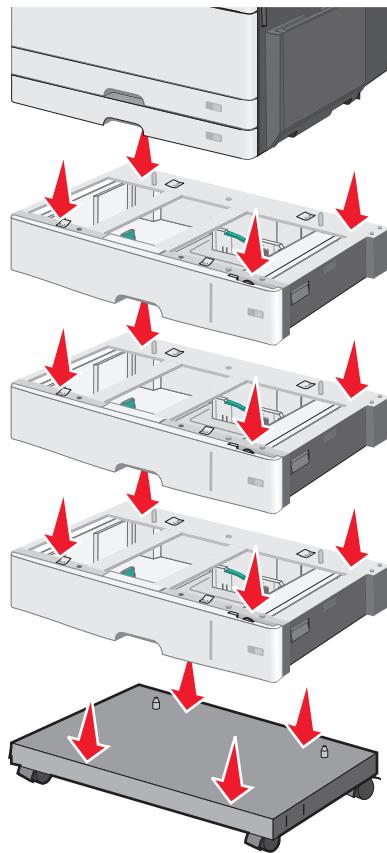
- b** Lift the upper portion of the printer stand, leaving the base.



- 4** Attach the thumbscrews on the caster base.

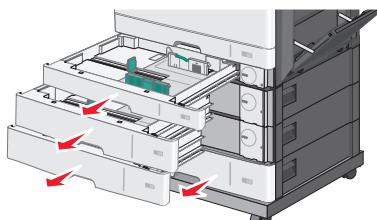


- 5 Align the trays to the caster base, then lower the printer to the trays.

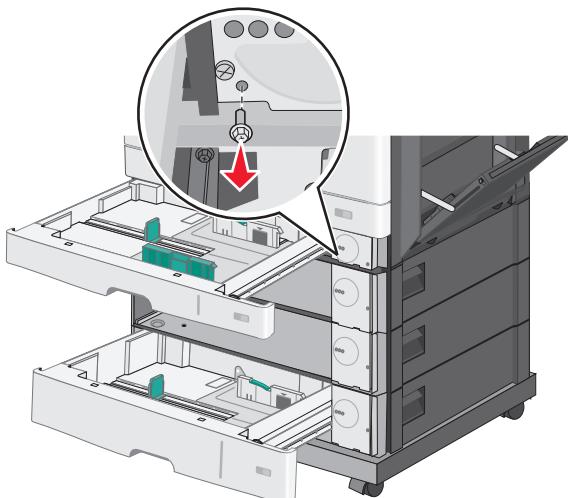


- 6 Lock the standard and optional trays together using the brackets that came with the optional tray.

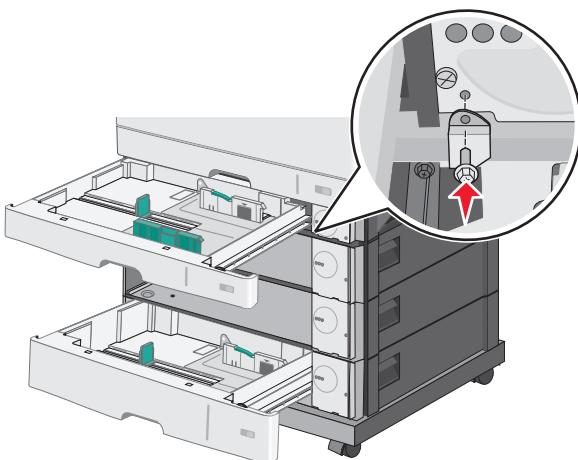
- a Open the standard 250- and optional 550-sheet tray.



- b** Remove the screw from the 250-sheet tray.



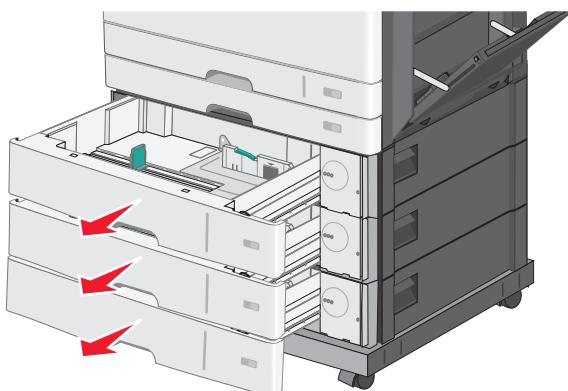
- c** Place a bracket over the screw hole and secure it with the screw.



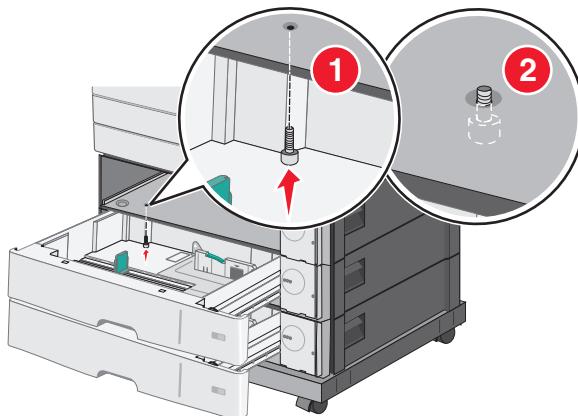
- d** Close the trays.

- 7** Lock the optional 550-sheet trays together using the screws that came with the trays.

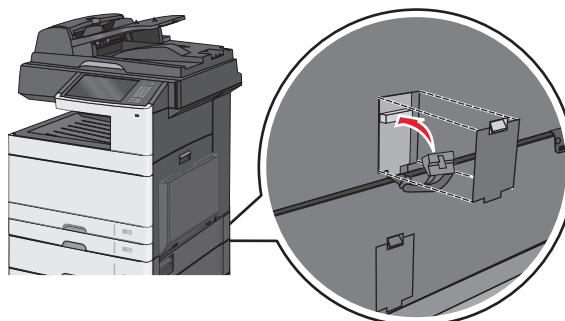
- a** Remove the upper optional 550-sheet tray drawer. Leave the lower optional trays open.



- b** Reach into the lower optional tray and insert a screw, pushing it upward to the optional tray above it.

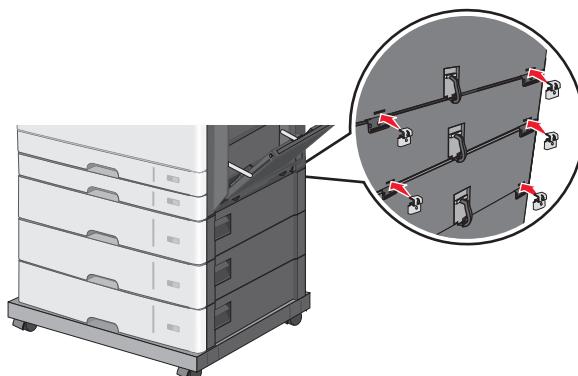


- 8** Plug in the electrical connections between trays.

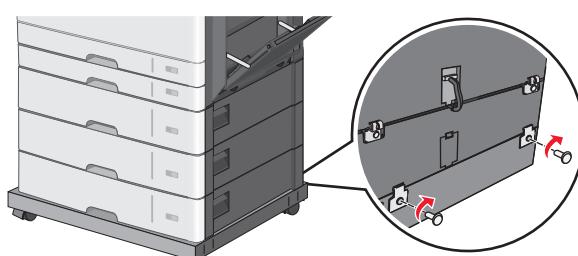


- 9** Attach brackets to the back of the printer and optional trays.

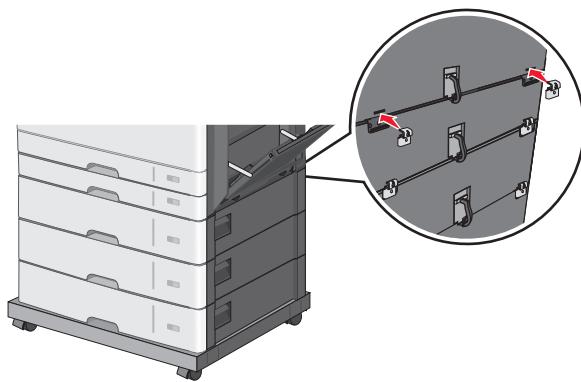
- a** Insert brackets on the slots located at the back of the optional trays.



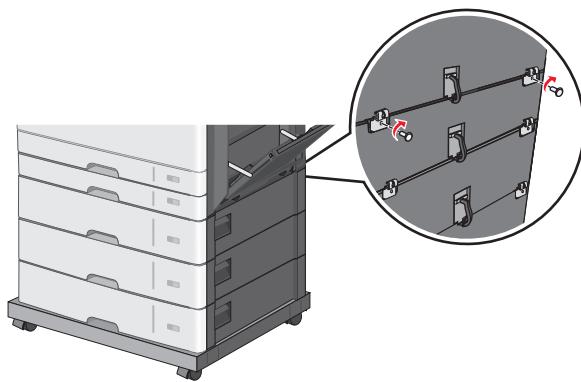
- b** Secure the brackets with screws.



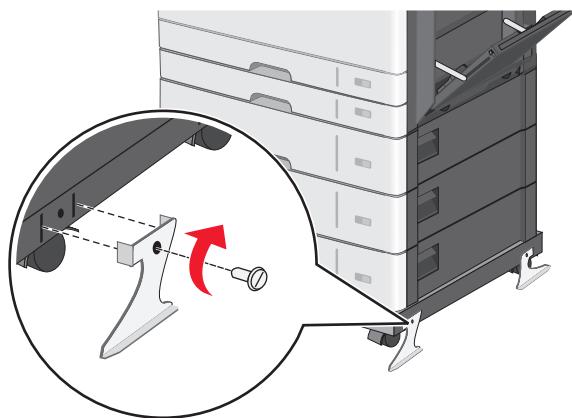
- c Insert brackets on the slots located at the back of the printer and optional tray.



- d Secure the brackets with screws.



- 10** Insert the bases on the slots at the sides of the caster base and secure them with screws.



- 11** Turn the printer back on.

- 12** Set the printer software to recognize the optional input source.

For more information, see “Updating available options in the printer driver” on page 62.

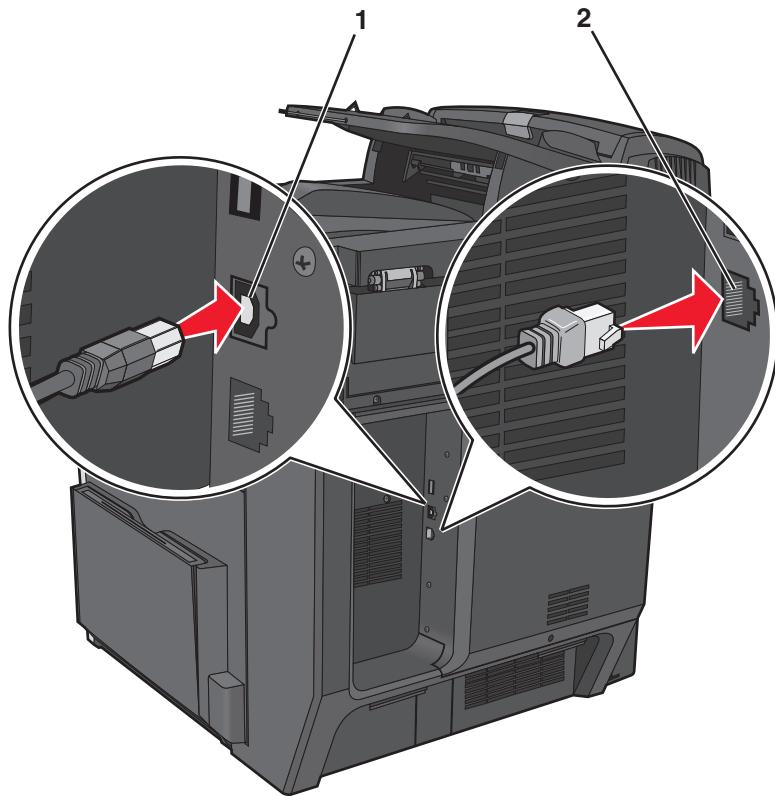
Attaching cables

! CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY: Do not use the fax feature during a lightning storm. Do not set up this product or make any electrical or cabling connections, such as the fax feature, power cord, or telephone, during a lightning storm.

Connect the printer to the computer using a USB cable or Ethernet cable.

Be sure to match the following:

- The USB symbol on the cable with the USB symbol on the printer
- The appropriate Ethernet cable to the Ethernet port



1	USB port Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch the USB cable, any network adapter, or the printer in the area shown while actively printing. A loss of data or a malfunction can occur.
2	Ethernet port

Verifying printer setup

Once all hardware and software options are installed and the printer is turned on, verify that the printer is set up correctly by printing the following:

- **Menu settings page**—Use this page to verify that all printer options are installed correctly. A list of installed options appears toward the bottom of the page. If an option you installed is not listed, then it is not installed correctly. Remove the option and install it again.
- **Network setup page**—If your printer is a network model and is attached to a network, print a network setup page to verify the network connection. This page also provides important information that aids network printing configuration.

Printing a menu settings page

From the home screen, navigate to:

 > Reports > Menu Settings Page

Printing a network setup page

If the printer is attached to a network, then print a network setup page to verify the network connection. This page also provides important information that aids network printing configuration.

- 1 From the home screen, navigate to:

 > Reports > Network Setup Page

- 2 Check the first section of the network setup page, and confirm that the status is **Connected**.

If the status is **Not Connected**, then the LAN drop may not be active, or the network cable may be malfunctioning. Consult a system support person for a solution, and then print another network setup page.

Setting up the printer software

Installing the printer software

Notes:

- If you installed the printer software on the computer before but need to reinstall the software, then uninstall the current software first.
- Close all open software programs before installing the printer software.

- 1 Obtain a copy of the software installer package.

- From the *Software and Documentation* CD that came with your printer.
- From our Web site:

Go to <http://support.lexmark.com>, and then navigate to:

SUPPORT & DOWNLOAD > select your printer > select your operating system

- 2 Double-click the software installer package.

Wait for the installation dialog to appear.

If you are using a *Software and Documentation CD* and the installation dialog does not appear, then do the following:

In Windows 8

From the Search charm, type **run**, and then navigate to:

Apps list > **Run** > type **D:\setup.exe** > **OK**.

In Windows 7 or earlier

- a Click  or click **Start**, and then click **Run**.
- b In the Start Search or Run dialog, type **D:\setup.exe**.
- c Press **Enter**, or click **OK**.

In Macintosh

Click the CD icon on the desktop.

Note: **D** is the letter of your CD or DVD drive.

- 3 Click **Install**, and then follow the instructions on the computer screen.

Updating available options in the printer driver

When any hardware options are installed, you may need to manually add the options in the printer driver to make them available for use.

For Windows users

- 1 Open the printers folder.

In Windows 8

From the Search charm, type **run**, and then navigate to:

Apps list > **Run** > type **control printers** > **OK**

In Windows 7 or earlier

- a Click  or click **Start**, and then click **Run**.
- b In the Start Search or Run dialog, type **control printers**.
- c Press **Enter**, or click **OK**.

- 2 Depending on your device, do either of the following:

- Press and hold the printer you want to update.
- Right-click the printer you want to update.

- 3 From the menu that appears, do either of the following:

- For Windows 7 or later, select **Printer properties**.
- For earlier versions, select **Properties**.

- 4 Click the **Configuration** tab.

- 5 Do either of the following:
 - Click **Update Now - Ask Printer**.
 - Under Configuration Options, manually add any installed hardware options.
- 6 Click **Apply**.

For Macintosh users

- 1 From the Apple menu, navigate to either of the following:
 - **System Preferences > Print & Scan** > select your printer > **Options & Supplies > Driver**
 - **System Preferences > Print & Fax** > select your printer > **Options & Supplies > Driver**
- 2 Add any installed hardware options, and then click **OK**.

Setting up wireless printing

Note: A Service Set Identifier (SSID) is a name assigned to a wireless network. Wireless Encryption Protocol (WEP) and Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA) are types of security used on a network.

Preparing to set up the printer on a wireless network

Notes:

- Make sure your access point (wireless router) is turned on and is working properly.
- Do not connect the installation or network cables until prompted to do so by the setup software.

Make sure you have the following information before setting up the printer on a wireless network:

- **SSID**—The SSID is also referred to as the network name.
 - **Wireless Mode (or Network Mode)**—The mode is either infrastructure or ad hoc.
 - **Channel (for ad hoc networks)**—The channel defaults to automatic for infrastructure networks.
- Some ad hoc networks will also require the automatic setting. Check with your system support person if you are not sure which channel to select.
- **Security Method**—There are four basic options for Security Method:
 - WEP key

If your network uses more than one WEP key, then enter up to four in the provided spaces. Select the key currently in use on the network by selecting the default WEP transmit key.

- WPA or WPA2 preshared key or passphrase

WPA includes encryption as an additional layer of security. The choices are AES or TKIP. Encryption must be set for the same type on the router and on the printer, or the printer will not be able to communicate on the network.

- 802.1X—RADIUS

If you are installing the printer on an 802.1X network, then you may need the following:

- Authentication type
- Inner authentication type

- 802.1X user name and password
- Certificates
- No security

If your wireless network does not use any type of security, then you will not have any security information.

Note: Using an unsecured wireless network is not recommended.

Notes:

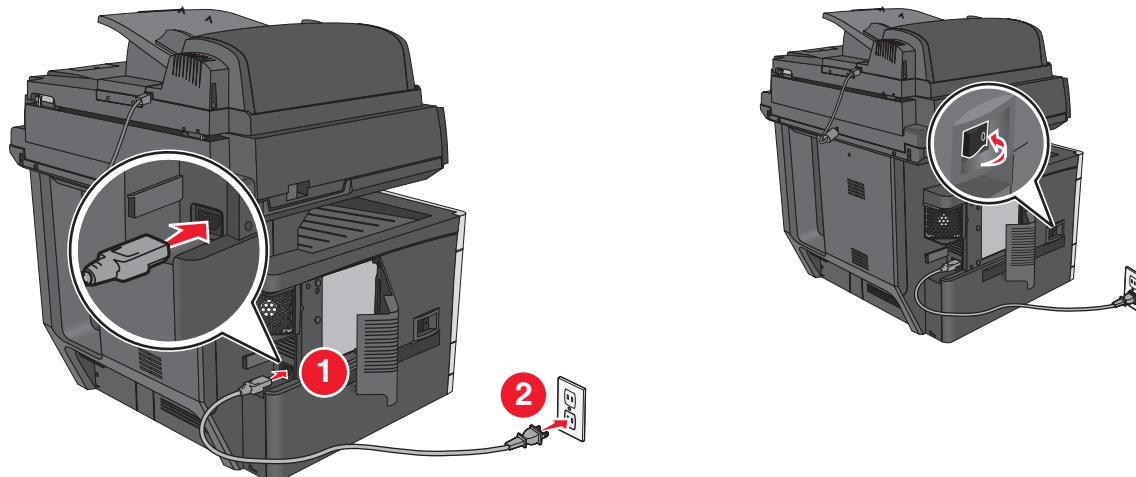
- If you do not know the SSID of the network that your computer is connected to, then launch the wireless utility of the computer network adapter, and then look for the network name. If you cannot find the SSID or the security information for your network, then see the documentation that came with the access point or contact your system support person.
- To find the WPA/WPA2 preshared key or passphrase for the wireless network, see the documentation that came with the access point, see the Embedded Web Server associated with the access point, or consult your system support person.

Installing the printer on a wireless network (Windows)

Before installing the printer on a wireless network, make sure:

- Your wireless network is set up and is working properly.
- The computer you are using is connected to the same wireless network where you want to set up the printer.

1 Connect the power cord to the printer, then to a properly grounded electrical outlet, and then turn on the printer.



Note: Make sure the printer and the computer are fully on and ready.

Warning—Potential Damage: Do not connect the USB cable until instructed to do so on the computer screen.



2 Obtain a copy of the software installer package.

- From the *Software and Documentation* CD that came with your printer.
- From our Web site:
Go to <http://support.lexmark.com>, and then navigate to:
SUPPORT & DOWNLOAD > select your printer > select your operating system

3 Double-click the software installer package.

Wait for the installation dialog to appear.

If you are using the *Software and Documentation* CD and the installation dialog does not appear, then do the following:

In Windows 8

From the Search charm, type **run**, and then navigate to:

Apps list > **Run** > type **D:\setup.exe** > **OK**

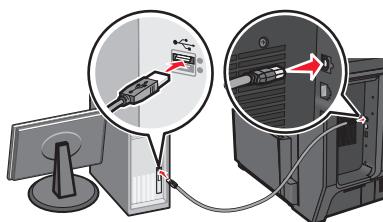
In Windows 7 or earlier

- Click  or click **Start**, and then click **Run**.
- In the Start Search or Run dialog, type **D:\setup.exe**.
- Press **Enter** or click **OK**.

Note: D is the letter of your CD or DVD drive.

4 Click **Install**, and then follow the instructions on the computer screen.**5** Select **Wireless connection** when asked to choose a connection type.**6** From the Wireless Configuration dialog, select **Guided Setup (Recommended)**.

Note: Choose **Advanced Setup** only if you want to customize your installation.

7 Temporarily connect a USB cable between the computer on the wireless network and the printer.

Note: After the printer is configured, the software will instruct you to disconnect the temporary USB cable so you can print wirelessly.

8 Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

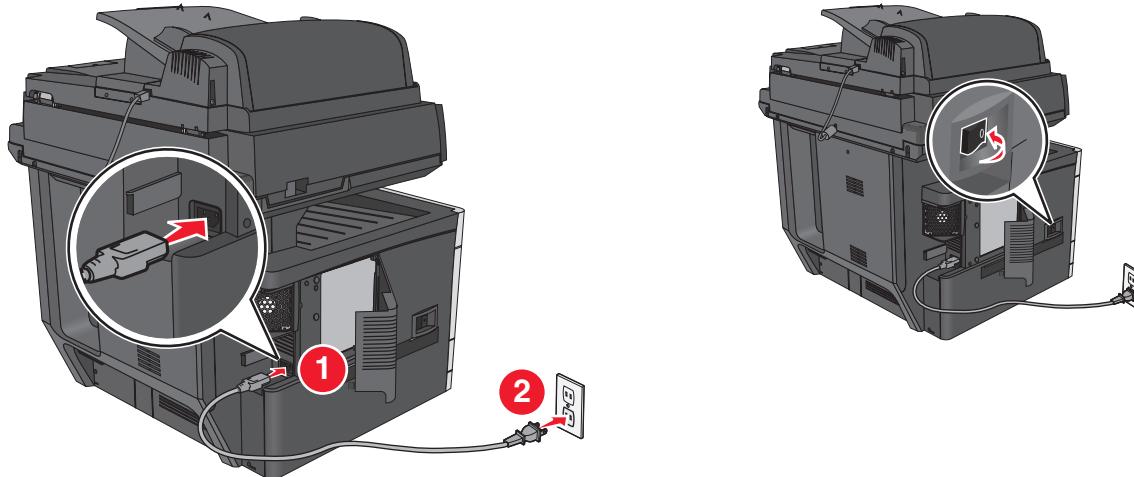
Note: For more information on allowing other computers on the network to use the wireless printer, see the *Networking Guide*.

Installing the printer on a wireless network (Macintosh)

Note: Make sure to disconnect the Ethernet cable when installing the printer on a wireless network.

Prepare to configure the printer

- 1 Connect the power cord to the printer, then to a properly grounded electrical outlet, and then turn on the printer.



- 2 Locate the printer MAC address.

- a From the printer control panel, navigate to:

 > **Reports** >  > **Network Setup Page** > 

or

 > **Reports** > **Network Setup Page**

- b In the Standard Network Card section, look for **UAA (MAC)**.

Note: You will need this information later.

Enter the printer information

- 1 Access the AirPort options:

In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

From the Apple menu, navigate to either of the following:

- **System Preferences** > **Network** > **Wi-Fi**
- **System Preferences** > **Network** > **AirPort**

In Mac OS X version 10.4

From the Finder, navigate to:

Applications > **Internet Connect** > **AirPort**

- 2 From the Network Name pop-up menu, select **print server [yyyyyy]**, where the y's are the last six digits of the MAC address located on the MAC address sheet.
- 3 Open a Web browser.
- 4 From the Bookmarks menu, select **Show** or **Show All Bookmarks**.

5 Under **COLLECTIONS**, select **Bonjour** or **Rendezvous**, and then double-click the printer name.

Note: The application referred to as *Rendezvous* in Mac OS X version 10.2 is now called *Bonjour* by Apple Inc.

6 From the Embedded Web Server, navigate to the location of the wireless settings information.

Configure the printer for wireless access

- 1 Type the network name (SSID) in the appropriate field.
- 2 Select **Infrastructure** as your Network Mode setting if you are using an access point (wireless router).
- 3 Select the type of security you want to use to protect the wireless network.
- 4 Enter the security information necessary for the printer to connect to the wireless network.
- 5 Click **Submit**.
- 6 Open the AirPort application on the computer:

In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

From the Apple menu, navigate to either of the following:

- **System Preferences** > **Network** > **Wi-Fi**
- **System Preferences** > **Network** > **AirPort**

In Mac OS X version 10.4

From the Finder, navigate to:

Applications > **Internet Connect** > **AirPort**

7 From the Network pop-up menu, select the name of the wireless network.

Configure your computer to use the printer wirelessly

To print on a network printer, each Macintosh user must install a custom printer driver file and create a print queue in the Printer Setup Utility or Print Center.

1 Install a printer driver file on the computer:

- a Obtain a copy of the software installer package.
 - From the *Software and Documentation* CD that came with your printer.
 - From our Web site:
Go to <http://support.lexmark.com>, and then navigate to:
SUPPORT & DOWNLOAD > select your printer > select your operating system

b Double-click the installer package for the printer.

c Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

d Select a destination, and then click **Continue**.

e From the Easy Install screen, click **Install**.

f Type the user password, and then click **OK**.

All necessary applications are installed in the computer.

g Click **Close** when the installation is complete.

2 Add the printer:

a For IP printing:

In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

- 1 From the Apple menu, navigate to either of the following:
 - **System Preferences > Print & Scan**
 - **System Preferences > Print & Fax**
- 2 Click **+**.
- 3 If necessary, click **Add Printer or Scanner** or **Add Other Printer or Scanner**.
- 4 Click the **IP** tab.
- 5 Type the IP address of the printer in the address field, and then click **Add**.

In Mac OS X version 10.4

- 1 From the Finder, navigate to:
Applications > Utilities
- 2 Double-click **Printer Setup Utility** or **Print Center**.
- 3 From the Printer List, choose **Add**, and then click **IP Printer**.
- 4 Type the IP address of the printer in the address field, and then click **Add**.

- b** For AppleTalk printing:

Notes:

- Make sure AppleTalk is activated on your printer.
- This feature is supported only in Mac OS X version 10.5 or earlier.

In Mac OS X version 10.5

- 1 From the Apple menu, navigate to:
System Preferences > Print & Fax
- 2 Click **+**, and then navigate to:
AppleTalk > select the printer from the list > **Add**

In Mac OS X version 10.4

- 1 From the Finder, navigate to:
Applications > Utilities
- 2 Double-click **Printer Setup Utility** or **Print Center**.
- 3 From the Printer List, click **Add**.
- 4 Click **Default Browser** tab > **More Printers**.
- 5 From the first pop-up menu, select **AppleTalk**.
- 6 From the second pop-up menu, select **Local AppleTalk Zone**.
- 7 Select the printer from the list, and then click **Add**.

Installing the printer on an Ethernet network

Note: Make sure you have completed the initial setup of the printer.

For Windows users

- 1** Obtain a copy of the software installer package.
 - From the *Software and Documentation* CD that came with your printer.
 - From our Web site:
Go to <http://support.lexmark.com>, and then navigate to:
SUPPORT & DOWNLOAD > select your printer > select your operating system
- 2** Double-click the software installer package.
Wait for the installation dialog to appear.
If you are using the *Software and Documentation* CD and the installation dialog does not appear, then do the following:

In Windows 8

From the Search charm, type **run**, and then navigate to:
Apps list > **Run** > type **D:\setup.exe** > **OK**

In Windows 7 or earlier

- a** Click  or click **Start**, and then click **Run**.
- b** In the Start Search or Run dialog, type **D:\setup.exe**.
- c** Press **Enter** or click **OK**.

Note: **D** is the letter of your CD or DVD drive.

- 3** Click **Install**, and then follow the instructions on the computer screen.

Note: To configure the printer using a static IP address, IPv6, or scripts, select **Advanced Options > Administrator Tools**.

- 4** Select **Ethernet connection**, and then click **Continue**.
- 5** Attach the Ethernet cable when instructed to do so.
- 6** Select the printer from the list, and then click **Continue**.
Note: If the configured printer does not appear in the list, then click **Modify Search**.
- 7** Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

For Macintosh users

- 1** Allow the network DHCP server to assign an IP address to the printer.
- 2** Obtain the printer IP address either:
 - From the printer control panel
 - From the TCP/IP section in the Network/Ports menu
 - By printing a network setup page or menu settings page, and then finding the TCP/IP section

Note: You will need the IP address if you are configuring access for computers on a different subnet than the printer.

- 3** Install the printer driver on the computer.
 - a** Double-click the installer package for the printer.
 - b** Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

- c Select a destination, and then click **Continue**.
- d From the Easy Install screen, click **Install**.
- e Type the user password, and then click **OK**.
All the necessary applications are installed on the computer.
- f Click **Close** when the installation is complete.

4 Add the printer.

- For IP printing:

In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

- a From the Apple menu, navigate to either of the following:
 - **System Preferences > Print & Scan**
 - **System Preferences > Print & Fax**
- b Click **+**.
- c If necessary, click **Add Printer or Scanner** or **Add Other Printer or Scanner**.
- d Click the **IP** tab.
- e Type the printer IP address in the address field, and then click **Add**.

In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier

- a From the Finder, navigate to:
Applications > Utilities
- b Double-click **Printer Setup Utility** or **Print Center**.
- c From the printer list, click **Add**, and then click **IP Printer**.
- d Type the scanner IP address in the address field, and then click **Add**.

- For AppleTalk printing:

Notes:

- Make sure AppleTalk is activated on your printer.
- This feature is supported only in Mac OS X version 10.5 or earlier.

In Mac OS X version 10.5

- a From the Apple menu, navigate to:
System Preferences > Print & Fax
- b Click **+**, and then navigate to:
AppleTalk > select your printer > Add

In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier

- a From the Finder, navigate to:
Applications > Utilities
- b Double-click **Printer Setup Utility** or **Print Center**.
- c From the printer list, click **Add**.
- d Click **Default Browser** tab > **More Printers**.
- e From the first pop-up menu, select **AppleTalk**.

- f** From the second pop-up menu, select **Local AppleTalk Zone**.
- g** Select the device from the list, and then click **Add**.

Note: If the scanner does not show up in the list, then you may need to add it using the IP address. For more information, contact your system support person.

Changing port settings after installing a new network Internal Solutions Port

When a new Lexmark Internal Solutions Port (ISP) is installed in the printer, the printer configurations on computers that access the printer must be updated since the printer will be assigned a new IP address. All computers that access the printer must be updated with this new IP address.

Notes:

- If the printer has a static IP address, then you do not need to make any changes to the computer configurations.
- If the computers are configured to use the network name, instead of an IP address, then you do not need to make any changes to your computer configurations.
- If you are adding a wireless ISP to a printer previously configured for an Ethernet connection, then make sure the printer is disconnected from the Ethernet network when you configure the printer to operate wirelessly. If the printer is connected to the Ethernet network, then the wireless configuration completes, but the wireless ISP is inactive. To activate the wireless ISP, disconnect the printer from the Ethernet network, turn off the printer, and then turn it back on.
- Only one network connection is active at a time. To switch between Ethernet and wireless connection types, turn off the printer, connect the cable (to switch to an Ethernet connection) or disconnect the cable (to switch to a wireless connection), and then turn the printer back on.

For Windows users

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer control panel. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Open the printers folder.

In Windows 8

From the Search charm, type **Run** and then navigate to:

Apps list > **Run** > type **control printers** > **OK**

In Windows 7 or earlier

- a** Click , or click **Start** and then click **Run**.
- b** In the Start Search or Run dialog, type **control printers**.
- c** Press **Enter**, or click **OK**.

- 3 To select the printer that has changed, do either of the following:
 - Press and hold the printer, and then select **Printer properties**.
 - Right-click the printer, and then select **Printer properties** (Windows 7 or later) or **Properties** (earlier versions).
- Note:** If there is more than one copy of the printer, then update all of them with the new IP address.
- 4 Click the **Ports** tab.
- 5 Select the port from the list, and then click **Configure Port**.
- 6 Type the new IP address in the “Printer Name or IP Address” field.
- 7 Click **OK > Close**.

For Macintosh users

- 1 Open a Web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

Notes:

- View the printer IP address on the printer control panel. The IP address appears as four sets of numbers separated by periods, such as 123.123.123.123.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Web page correctly.

- 2 Add the printer.

- For IP printing:
 - a From the Apple menu, navigate to either of the following:
 - **System Preferences > Print & Scan**
 - **System Preferences > Print & Fax**
 - b Click **+**.
 - c Click the **IP** tab.
 - d Type the printer IP address in the address field, and then click **Add**.
- For AppleTalk printing:

Notes:

- Make sure AppleTalk is activated on your printer.
- This feature is supported only in Mac OS X version 10.5.
- a From the Apple menu, navigate to:
System Preferences > Print & Fax
- b Click **+**, and then navigate to:
AppleTalk > select the printer > Add

Setting up serial printing

Use serial printing to print when the computer is far from the printer or to print at a reduced speed.

After installing the serial or communication (COM) port, configure the printer and the computer. Make sure you have connected the serial cable to the COM port on your printer.

1 Set the parameters in the printer.

- a** From the printer control panel, navigate to the menu for the port settings.
- b** Locate the menu for the serial port settings, and then adjust the settings, if necessary.
- c** Save the modified settings, and then print a menu settings page.

2 Install the printer driver.

- a** Obtain a copy of the software installer package.

- From the *Software and Documentation CD* that came with your printer

- From our Web site:

Go to <http://support.lexmark.com>, and then navigate to:

SUPPORT & DOWNLOAD > select your printer > select your operating system

- b** Double-click the software installer package.

Wait for the installation dialog to appear.

If you are using the *Software and Documentation CD* and the installation dialog does not appear, then do the following:

In Windows 8

From the Search charm type **run**, and then navigate to:

Apps list > **Run** > type **D:\setup.exe** > **OK**

In Windows 7 or earlier

- 1** Click  or click **Start**, and then click **Run**.
- 2** In the Start Search or Run dialog, type **D:\setup.exe**.
- 3** Press **Enter** or click **OK**.

Note: D is the letter of your CD or DVD drive.

- c** Click **Install**.

- d** Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

- e** Select **Advanced**, and then click **Continue**.

- f** From the Configure Printer Connection dialog, select a port.

- g** If the port is not in the list, then click **Refresh**, or navigate to:

Add port > select a port type > enter the necessary information > **OK**

- h** Click **Continue** > **Finish**.

3 Set the COM port parameters.

After installing the printer driver, set the serial parameters in the COM port assigned to the printer driver.

Note: Make sure the serial parameters in the COM port match the serial parameters you set in the printer.

- a** Open Device Manager.

In Windows 8

From the Search charm, type **run** and then navigate to:

Apps list > **Run** > type **devmgmt.msc** > **OK**

In Windows 7 or earlier

- 1 Click  or click **Start**, and then click **Run**.
 - 2 In the Start Search or Run dialog, type **devmgmt.msc**.
 - 3 Press **Enter** or click **OK**.
- b** Double-click **Ports (COM & LPT)** to expand the list of available ports.
- c** Do either of the following:
- Press and hold the COM port where you attached the serial cable to your computer (example: COM1).
 - Right-click the COM port where you attached the serial cable to your computer (example: COM1).
- d** From the menu that appears, select **Properties**.
- e** On the Port Settings tab, set the serial parameters to the same serial parameters set in the printer.
Check the serial heading of the menu settings page for the printer settings.
- f** Click **OK**, and then close all the dialogs.
- g** Print a test page to verify printer installation.

Minimizing your printer's environmental impact

Lexmark is committed to environmental sustainability and is continually improving its printers to reduce their impact on the environment. We design with the environment in mind, engineer our packaging to reduce materials, and provide collection and recycling programs. For more information, see:

- The Notices chapter
- The Environmental Sustainability section of the Lexmark Web site at www.lexmark.com/environment
- The Lexmark recycling program at www.lexmark.com/recycle

By selecting certain printer settings or tasks, you may be able to reduce your printer's impact even further. This chapter outlines the settings and tasks that may yield a greater environmental benefit.

Saving paper and toner

Studies show that as much as 80% of the carbon footprint of a printer is related to paper usage. You can significantly reduce your carbon footprint by using recycled paper and the following printing suggestions, such as printing on both sides of the paper and printing multiple pages on one side of a single sheet of paper.

For information on how you can quickly save paper and energy using one printer setting, see "Using Eco-Mode" on page 76.

Using recycled paper

As an environmentally conscious company, Lexmark supports the use of recycled office paper produced specifically for use in laser/LED printers. For more information on recycled papers that work well with your printer, see "Using recycled paper and other office papers" on page 91.

Conserving supplies

Use both sides of the paper

If your printer model supports duplex printing, you can control whether print appears on one or two sides of the paper by selecting **2-sided printing** from the Print dialog or from the Lexmark Toolbar.

Place multiple pages on one sheet of paper

You can print up to 16 consecutive pages of a multiple-page document onto one side of a single sheet of paper by selecting a setting from the Multipage printing (N-Up) section of the Print dialog screen.

Check your first draft for accuracy

Before printing or making multiple copies of a document:

- Use the preview feature, which you can select from the Print dialog or from the Lexmark Toolbar to see how the document will look like before you print it.
- Print one copy of the document to check its content and format for accuracy.

Avoid paper jams

Correctly set the paper type and size to avoid paper jams. For more information, see "Avoiding jams" on page 252.

Print in black and white

To print all text and graphics using only the black toner cartridge, set the printer to Black Only. For more information, see "Printing in black and white" on page 96.

Use Max Speed or Max Yield settings

The Max Speed and Max Yield settings let you choose between a faster print speed or a higher toner yield. Max Speed is the factory default setting. For more information, see "Using Max Speed and Max Yield" on page 103.

Saving energy

Using Eco-Mode

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings > General Settings > Eco-Mode** > select a setting > **Submit**.

Choose	To
Off	Use factory default settings for all settings associated with Eco-Mode. This setting supports the performance specifications of your printer.
Energy	Reduce energy use, especially when the printer is idle. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Printer engine motors do not start until it is ready to print. You may notice a short delay before the first page is printed.• The printer enters Sleep mode after one minute of inactivity.• When the printer enters Sleep mode, the printer control panel display and the standard exit bin lights are turned off.• If scanning is supported, the scanner lamps are activated only when a scan job is started.
Energy/Paper	Use all the settings associated with Energy mode and Paper mode.
Paper	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Enable the automatic duplex feature.• Turn off print log features.

Reducing printer noise

To select a Quiet Mode setting using the Embedded Web Server:

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings > General Settings > Quiet Mode** > select a setting > **Submit**.

Choose	To
Off Note: Selecting Photo from the driver may disable Quiet Mode and provide better print quality and full speed printing.	Use factory default settings. This setting supports the performance specifications of your printer.
On	<p>Reduce printer noise.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Print jobs will process at a reduced speed. • Printer engine motors do not start until a document is ready to print. There will be a short delay before the first page is printed. • If your printer has faxing capability, fax sounds are reduced or disabled, including those made by the fax speaker and ringer. The fax is placed in standby mode. • The alarm control and cartridge alarm sounds are turned off. • The printer will ignore the Advance Start command.

Adjusting Sleep Mode

To save energy, you can decrease the number of minutes before the printer enters Sleep Mode.

Available settings range from 1–240 minutes. The factory default setting is 5 minutes.

Using the Embedded Web Server

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings > General Settings > Timeouts**.

3 In the Sleep Mode field, enter the number of minutes you want the printer to wait before it enters Sleep Mode.

4 Click **Submit**.

Using the printer control panel

1 From the home screen, navigate to:

 > **Settings > General Settings > Timeouts > Sleep Mode**

2 In the Sleep Mode field, select the number of minutes you want the printer to wait before it enters Sleep Mode.

3 Touch .

Using Hibernate Mode

Hibernate is an ultra-low power operating mode. When operating in Hibernate mode, the printer is essentially off, and all other systems and devices are powered down safely.

Note: The Hibernate and Sleep modes can be scheduled.

Using the Embedded Web Server

1 Type the printer IP address in the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings > General Settings > Sleep Button Settings**.

3 From the Press Sleep Button or Press and Hold Sleep Button drop-down, select **Hibernate**.

4 Click **Submit**.

Using the printer control panel

1 From the home screen, navigate to:

 **> Settings > General Settings > Press Sleep Button or Press and Hold Sleep Button > Hibernate**

2 Touch **Submit**.

Adjusting the brightness of the display

To save energy, or if you have trouble reading your display, then adjust the brightness of the display.

Available settings range from 20–100. The factory default setting is 100.

Using the Embedded Web Server

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings > General Settings**.

3 In the Screen Brightness field, enter the brightness percentage you want for the display.

4 Click **Submit**.

Using the printer control panel

1 From the home screen, navigate to:

 **> Settings > General Settings**

2 Touch the arrows until **Screen Brightness** appears, and then select a setting.

3 Touch **Submit**.

Setting the standard exit bin light

To save energy, you can dim or turn off the output lighting for the standard exit bin.

Available settings are Off, Dim, and Bright.

The factory default setting for Normal/Standby Mode is Bright.

When Eco-Mode is set to Energy or Energy/Paper, then the light setting is Dim.

When in Sleep Mode, then the light is off.

Using the Embedded Web Server

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings > General Settings > Output Lighting**.

3 From the Normal/Standby Mode list, select the light setting for the standard exit bin when in Ready or Standby mode.

4 Click **Submit**.

Using the printer control panel

1 From the home screen, navigate to:

 > **Settings > General Settings > Output Lighting**

2 Touch the arrow button next to **Normal/Standby Mode** to select the light settings for the standard exit bin when in Ready or Standby Mode.

3 Touch **Submit**.

Recycling

Lexmark provides collection programs and environmentally progressive approaches to recycling. For more information, see:

- The Notices chapter
- The Environmental Sustainability section of the Lexmark Web site at www.lexmark.com/environment
- The Lexmark recycling program at www.lexmark.com/recycle

Recycling Lexmark products

To return Lexmark products for recycling:

1 Go to www.lexmark.com/recycle.

2 Find the product type you want to recycle, and then select your country or region from the list.

-
- 3 Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

Note: Printer supplies and hardware not listed in the Lexmark collection program may be recycled through your local recycling center. Contact your local recycling center to determine the items they accept.

Recycling Lexmark packaging

Lexmark continually strives to minimize packaging. Less packaging helps to ensure that Lexmark printers are transported in the most efficient and environmentally sensitive manner and that there is less packaging to dispose of. These efficiencies result in fewer greenhouse emissions, energy savings, and natural resource savings.

Lexmark cartons are 100% recyclable where corrugated recycling facilities exist. Facilities may not exist in your area.

The foam used in Lexmark packaging is recyclable where foam recycling facilities exist. Facilities may not exist in your area.

When you return a cartridge to Lexmark, you can reuse the box that the cartridge came in. Lexmark will recycle the box.

Returning Lexmark cartridges for reuse or recycling

Lexmark Cartridge Collection Program diverts millions of Lexmark cartridges from landfills annually by making it both easy and free for Lexmark customers to return used cartridges to Lexmark for reuse or recycling. One hundred percent of the empty cartridges returned to Lexmark are either reused or demanufactured for recycling. Boxes used to return the cartridges are also recycled.

To return Lexmark cartridges for reuse or recycling, follow the instructions that came with your printer or cartridge and use the prepaid shipping label. You can also do the following:

- 1 Go to www.lexmark.com/recycle.
- 2 From the Toner Cartridges section, select your country or region.
- 3 Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

Loading paper and specialty media

Setting the paper size and type

The Paper Size setting is automatically sensed according to the position of the paper guides in each tray except the multipurpose feeder. The Paper Size setting for the multipurpose feeder must be set manually from the Paper Size menu. The Paper Type setting must be set manually for all trays that do not contain plain paper.

From the home screen navigate to:

 > **Paper Menu** > **Paper Size/Type** > select a tray > select the paper size or type > **Submit**

Configuring Universal paper settings

The Universal Paper Size is a user-defined setting that lets you print on paper sizes that are not preset in the printer menus. Set the Paper Size for the specified tray to Universal when the size you want is not available from the Paper Size menu. Then, specify all of the following Universal size settings for your paper:

- Units of Measure
- Portrait Width
- Portrait Height

Note: The maximum setting for Portrait Width and Portrait Height is 3–48 inches.

1 From the home screen, navigate to:

 > **Paper Menu** > **Universal Setup** > **Units of Measure** > select a unit of measure

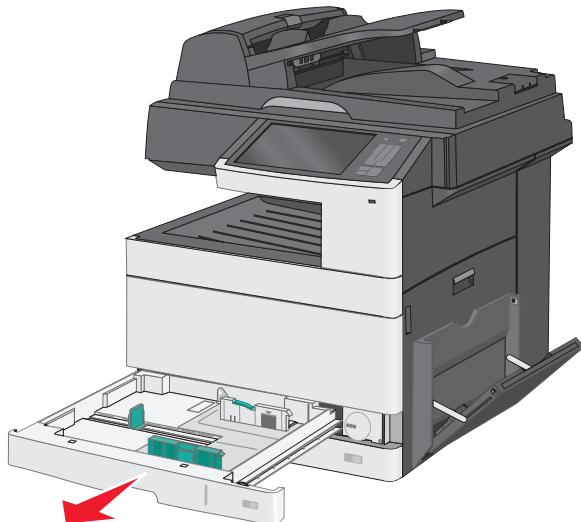
2 Touch **Portrait Width** or **Portrait Height** > select the width or height > **Submit**

Loading the standard or optional 550-sheet tray

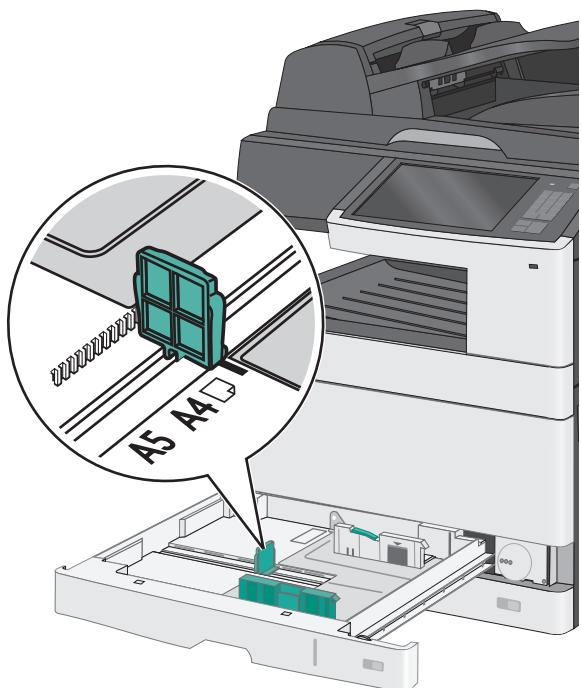
The printer has a standard 150-sheet (Tray 1) and 250-sheet tray (Tray 2), and it may have one or more optional 550-sheet trays. All 550-sheet trays support the same paper sizes and types.

CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY: To reduce the risk of equipment instability, load each paper drawer or tray separately. Keep all other drawers or trays closed until needed.

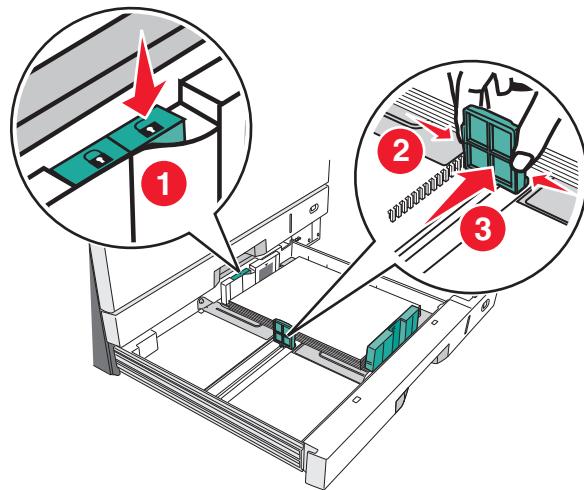
- 1 Pull the tray out.



Notice the size indicators at the bottom of the tray. Use these indicators to help position the guides.

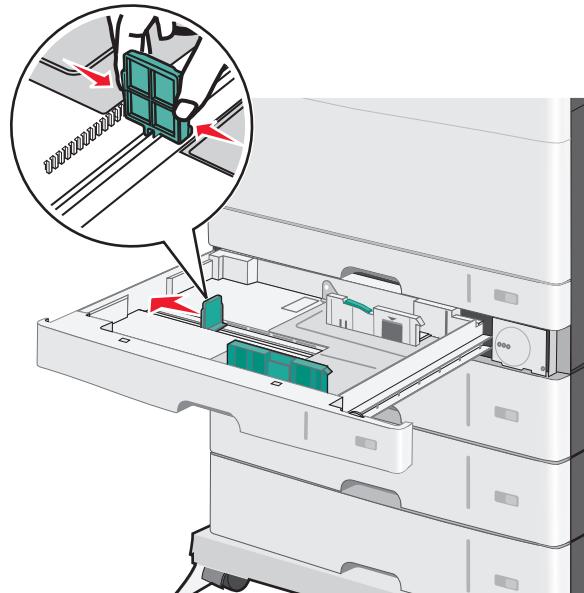


- 2 Make sure to release the width guide lock at the rear of the tray. Squeeze and then slide the width guide to the correct position for the paper size you are loading.

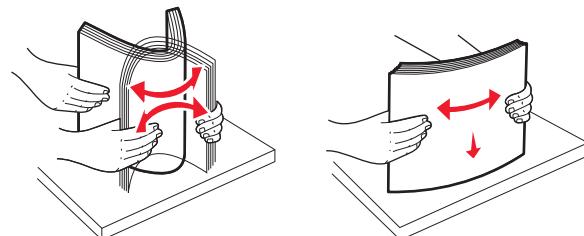


Note: Always use the width guide lock at the rear of the tray to prevent the margins from being knocked out of adjustment.

- 3 Squeeze and then slide the length guide to the correct position for the paper size you are loading.



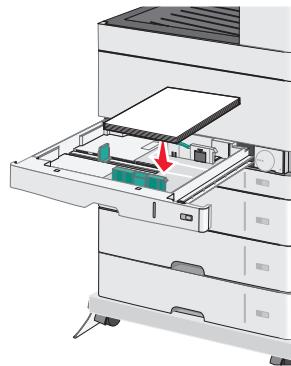
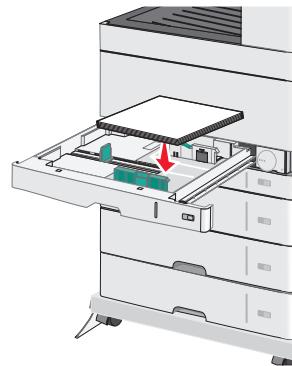
- 4 Flex the sheets back and forth to loosen them. Do not fold or crease the paper. Straighten the edges on a level surface.



- 5 Load the paper stack with the recommended print side faceup.

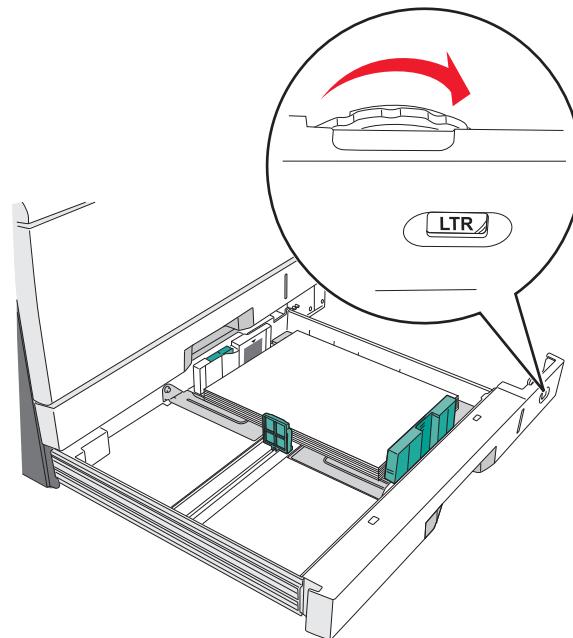
Notes:

- If the paper is longer than A4, then load it in short-edge orientation.
- If the paper is shorter than A4, then load it in long-edge orientation.
- Make sure the paper is below the maximum fill line located on the edge of the paper tray. Overloading the tray can cause paper jams and possible printer damage.

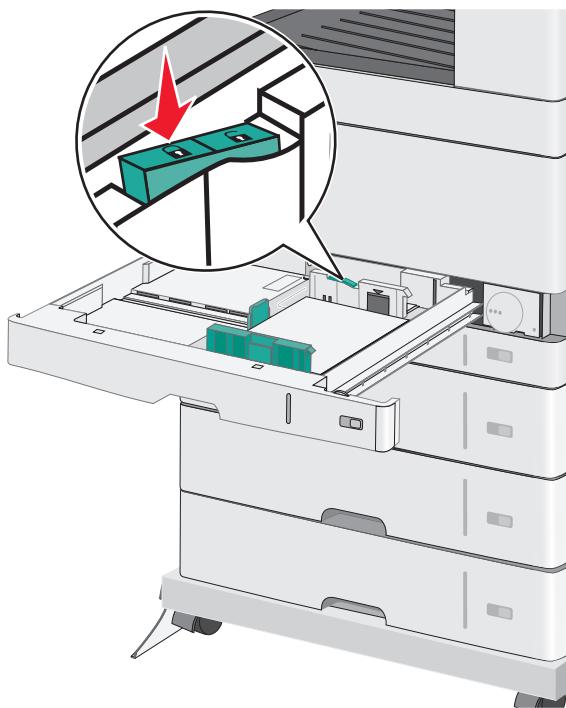
Long-edge orientation**Short-edge orientation**

6 Adjust both the width and length guides to lightly touch the edge of the paper stack. Make sure the paper fits loosely in the tray, lies flat, and is not bent or wrinkled.

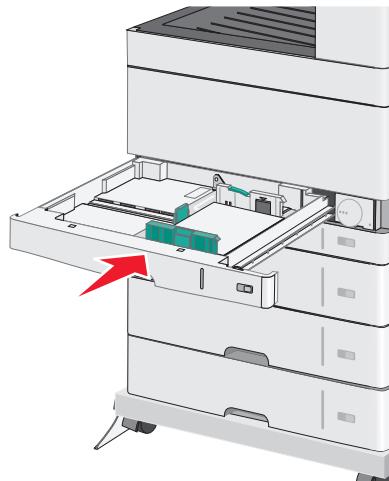
7 Turn the wheel clockwise to set the paper size.



8 Lock the width guide.



9 Insert the tray.



10 From the printer control panel, verify the Paper Size and Paper Type for the tray based on the paper you loaded.

Loading the multipurpose feeder

The multipurpose feeder can hold several sizes and types of print media, such as transparencies, labels, card stock, and envelopes. It can be used for single-page or manual printing, or as an additional tray.

The multipurpose feeder can hold approximately:

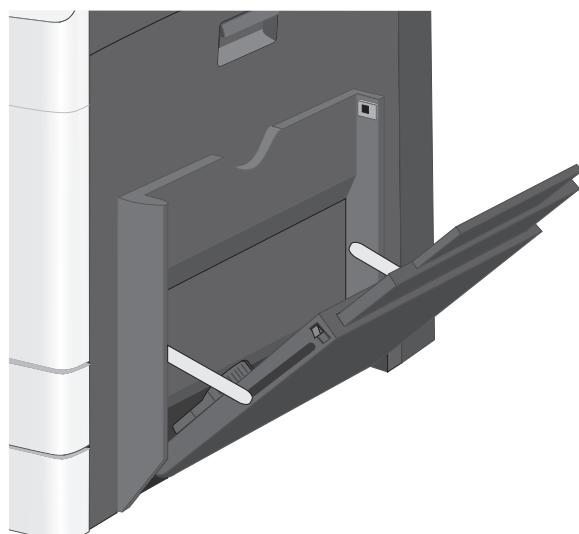
- 50 sheets of 75-g/m² (20-lb) paper
- 10 envelopes
- 20 transparencies

Note: Do not add or remove paper or specialty media when the printer is printing from the multipurpose feeder or when the printer control panel indicator light is blinking. Doing so may cause a jam.

- 1 Pull down the multipurpose feeder door.

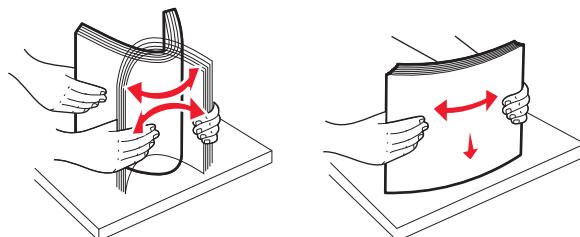


- 2 Gently pull the extension until it is fully extended.

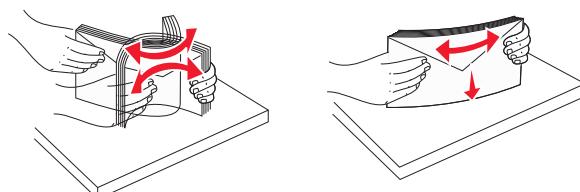


- 3 Flex the sheets of paper or specialty media back and forth to loosen them. Do not fold or crease them. Straighten the edges on a level surface.

Paper

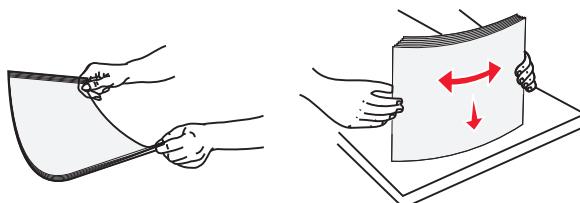


Envelopes



Transparencies

Note: Avoid scratching or touching the print side.

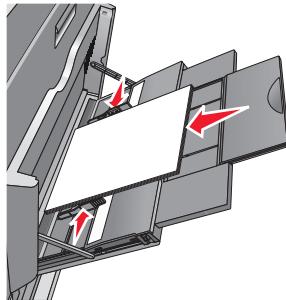


- 4 Load the paper or specialty media. Slide the stack gently into the multipurpose feeder until it comes to a stop.

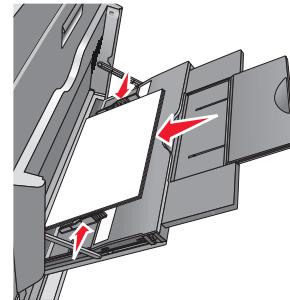
Notes:

- Load A3-, A6-, 11x17, JIS B4-, Statement- and legal-size media in short-edge orientation.
- Load A4-, A5-, Exec-, JIS B5- and letter-size media in long-edge orientation.
- Load envelopes flap side up in short-edge orientation.
- Do not exceed the maximum amount of media that the multipurpose feeder can hold.
- Load only one size and type of paper at a time.

Long-edge orientation

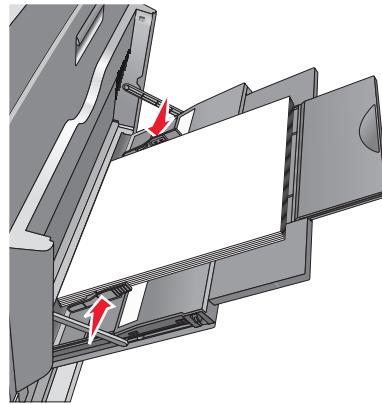


Short-edge orientation



Warning—Potential Damage: Never use envelopes with stamps, clasps, snaps, windows, coated linings, or self-stick adhesives. These envelopes may severely damage the printer.

- 5 Adjust the width guide to lightly touch the edge of the stack. Make sure the paper or specialty media fits loosely in the multipurpose feeder, lies flat, and is not bent or wrinkled.



- 6 From the printer control panel, set the Paper Size and Paper Type for the multipurpose feeder (MP Feeder Size and MP Feeder Type) based on the paper or specialty media loaded.

Linking and unlinking trays

Linking trays

Tray linking is useful for large print jobs or for printing multiple copies. When one linked tray is empty, paper feeds from the next linked tray. When the Paper Size and Paper Type settings are the same for any trays, the trays are automatically linked. The Paper Size setting is automatically sensed according to the position of the paper guides in each tray except Tray 1 and the multipurpose feeder. The Paper Size setting for the multipurpose feeder must be set manually from the Paper Size menu. The Paper Type setting must be set for all trays from the Paper Type menu. The Paper Type menu and the Paper Size menu are both available from the Paper Size/Type menu.

Unlinking trays

Note: Trays that do not have the same settings as any other tray are not linked.

Change one of the following tray settings:

- **Paper Type**

Paper Type names describe the paper characteristics. If the name that best describes your paper is used by linked trays, assign a different Paper Type name to the tray, such as Custom Type [x], or define your own custom name.

- **Paper Size**

Load a different paper size to automatically change the Paper Size setting for a tray. Paper Size settings for the multipurpose feeder are not automatic; they must be set manually from the Paper Size menu.

Warning—Potential Damage: Do not assign a Paper Type name that does not accurately describe the type of paper loaded in a tray. The temperature of the fuser varies according to the specified Paper Type. Prints may not be properly processed if an inaccurate Paper Type is selected.

Creating a custom name for a paper type

If the printer is on a network, you can use the Embedded Web Server to define a name other than Custom Type [x] for each of the custom paper types loaded into the printer.

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

Note: If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings > Paper Menu > Custom Name** > type a name > **Submit**.

Note: This custom name will replace the Custom Type [x] name under the Custom Types and Paper Size and Type menus.

3 Click **Custom Types** > select a paper type > **Submit**.

Assigning a custom paper type name

Assign a custom paper type name to a tray when linking or unlinking trays.

From the home screen, navigate to:



> **Paper Menu > Paper Size/Type** > select a custom paper type name > select a tray > **Submit**

Configuring a custom name

If the printer is on a network, then you can use the Embedded Web Server to define a name other than Custom Type [x] for each of the custom paper types loaded into the printer.

1 Type the printer IP address in the address field of your Web browser.

Note: If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings > Paper Menu > Custom Types** > select the custom name you want to configure > select a paper or specialty media type > **Submit**.

Paper and specialty media guidelines

Paper guidelines

Paper characteristics

The following paper characteristics affect print quality and reliability. Consider these factors before printing on them:

Weight

The printer trays and multipurpose feeder can automatically feed paper weights between 60–176 g/m² (16–47-lb) grain long paper. The 2100-sheet tray can automatically feed paper weights up to 60–135 g/m² (16–36-lb) grain long paper. Paper lighter than 60 g/m² (16 lb) might not be stiff enough to feed properly, and may cause jams.

Note: Two-sided printing is supported for 60–176 g/m² (16–47-lb) paper.

Curl

Curl is the tendency for paper to curl at its edges. Excessive curl can cause paper feeding problems. Curl can occur after the paper passes through the printer, where it is exposed to high temperatures. Storing paper unwrapped in hot, humid, cold, or dry conditions, even in the trays, can contribute to paper curling prior to printing and can cause feeding problems.

Smoothness

Paper smoothness directly affects print quality. If paper is too rough, toner cannot fuse to it properly. If paper is too smooth, it can cause paper feeding or print quality issues. Always use paper between 100 and 300 Sheffield points; smoothness between 150 and 250 Sheffield points produces the best print quality.

Moisture content

The amount of moisture in paper affects both print quality and the ability of the printer to feed the paper correctly. Leave paper in its original wrapper until it is time to use it. This limits the exposure of paper to moisture changes that can degrade its performance.

Store paper in its original wrapper in the same environment as the printer for 24 to 48 hours before printing. Extend the time several days if the storage or transportation environment is very different from the printer environment. Thick paper may also require a longer conditioning period.

Grain direction

Grain refers to the alignment of the paper fibers in a sheet of paper. Grain is either *grain long*, running the length of the paper, or *grain short*, running the width of the paper.

For 60–176 g/m² (16–47-lb) paper, grain long paper is recommended.

Fiber content

Most high-quality xerographic paper is made from 100% chemically treated pulped wood. This content provides the paper with a high degree of stability, resulting in fewer paper feeding problems and better print quality. Paper containing fibers such as cotton can negatively affect paper handling.

Unacceptable paper

The following paper types are not recommended for use with the printer:

- Chemically treated papers used to make copies without carbon paper, also known as carbonless papers, carbonless copy paper (CCP), or no carbon required (NCR) paper
- Preprinted papers with chemicals that may contaminate the printer
- Preprinted papers that can be affected by the temperature in the printer fuser
- Preprinted papers that require a registration (the precise print location on the page) greater than ± 2.3 mm (± 0.9 in.), such as optical character recognition (OCR) forms
 - In some cases, registration can be adjusted with a software application to successfully print on these forms.
- Coated papers (erasable bond), synthetic papers, thermal papers
- Rough-edged, rough or heavily textured surface papers, or curled papers
- Recycled papers that fail EN12281:2002 (European)
- Paper weighing less than 60 g/m^2 (16 lb)
- Multiple-part forms or documents

Selecting paper

Using the appropriate paper prevents jams and helps ensure trouble-free printing.

To help avoid paper jams and poor print quality:

- *Always* use new, undamaged paper.
- Before loading paper, know the recommended printable side of the paper. This information is usually indicated on the paper package.
- *Do not* use paper that has been cut or trimmed by hand.
- *Do not* mix paper sizes, types, or weights in the same tray; mixing results in jams.
- *Do not* use coated papers unless they are specifically designed for electrophotographic printing.

Selecting preprinted forms and letterhead

- Use grain long for $60\text{--}90\text{ g/m}^2$ (16–24-lb) paper.
- Use only forms and letterhead printed using an offset lithographic or engraved printing process.
- Avoid paper with rough or heavily textured surfaces.
- Use inks that are not affected by the resin in toner. Inks that are oxidation-set or oil-based generally meet these requirements; latex inks might not.
- Print samples on preprinted forms and letterheads considered for use before buying large quantities. This determines whether or not the ink in the preprinted form or letterhead will affect print quality.
- When in doubt, contact your paper supplier.

Using recycled paper and other office papers

As an environmentally conscious company, Lexmark supports the use of recycled office paper produced specifically for use in laser and LED (electrophotographic) printers. In 1998, Lexmark presented to the US government a study demonstrating that recycled paper produced by major mills in the US fed as well as non-recycled paper. However, no blanket statement can be made that *all* recycled paper will feed well.

Lexmark consistently tests its printers with recycled paper (20–100% post-consumer waste) and a variety of test paper from around the world, using chamber tests for different temperature and humidity conditions. Lexmark has found no reason to discourage the use of today's recycled office papers, but generally the following property guidelines apply to recycled paper.

- Low moisture content (4–5%)
- Suitable smoothness (100–200 Sheffield units, or 140–350 Bendtsen units, European)

Note: Some much smoother papers (such as premium 24 lb laser and LED papers, 50–90 Sheffield units) and much rougher papers (such as premium cotton papers, 200–300 Sheffield units) have been engineered to work very well in laser and LED printers, despite surface texture. Before using these types of paper, consult your paper supplier.

- Suitable sheet-to-sheet coefficient of friction (0.4–0.6)
- Sufficient bending resistance in the direction of feed

Recycled paper, paper of lower weight (<60 g/m² [16 lb bond]) and/or lower caliper (<3.8 mils [0.1 mm]), and paper that is cut grain-short for portrait (or short-edge) fed printers may have lower bending resistance than is required for reliable paper feeding. Before using these types of paper for laser or LED (electrophotographic) printing, consult your paper supplier. Remember that these are general guidelines only and that paper meeting these guidelines may still cause paper feeding problems in any laser or LED printer (for example, if the paper curls excessively under normal printing conditions).

Storing paper

Use these paper storage guidelines to help avoid jams and uneven print quality:

- For best results, store paper where the temperature is 21°C (70°F) and the relative humidity is 40 percent. Most label manufacturers recommend printing in a temperature range of 18–24°C (65–75°F) with relative humidity between 40 and 60 percent.
- Store paper in cartons, on a pallet or shelf, rather than on the floor.
- Store individual packages on a flat surface.
- Do not store anything on top of individual paper packages.
- Take paper out of the carton or wrapper only when you are ready to load it in the printer. The carton and wrapper help keep the paper clean, dry, and flat.

Supported paper sizes, types, and weights

The following tables provide information on standard and optional paper input sources and the types of paper they support.

Note: To use a paper size that is unlisted, configure a Universal Paper Size.

Supported paper sizes

Paper size and dimension	150-sheet tray	250-sheet tray	520-sheet tray	MP Feeder	Manual Paper	Manual Envelope	Duplex	ADF	Scanner glass
A4 210 x 297 mm (8.27 x 11.7 in.)	✓	✓ ¹	✓ ¹	✓ ³	✓ ³	✓	✓	✓	✓
A5 148 x 210 mm (5.83 x 8.27 in.)	✗	✓ ¹	✓ ¹	✓ ³	✓ ³	✗	✓	✓ ¹	✓ ¹
A6 105 x 148 mm (4.13 x 5.83 in.)	✗	✗	✗	✓ ³	✓ ³	✗	✗	✗	✓ ¹
JIS B5 182 x 257 mm (7.17 x 10.1 in.)	✗	✓	✓	✓ ³	✓ ³	✗	✓	✓ ¹	✓ ¹
Letter 216 x 279 mm (8.5 x 11 in.)	✓	✓ ²	✓ ²	✓ ³	✓ ³	✗	✓	✓	✓
Legal 216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 in.)	✓	✓	✓	✓ ³	✓ ³	✗	✓	✓ ²	✓ ²
Executive 184 x 267 mm (7.25 x 10.5 in.)	✗	✗	✗	✓ ³	✓ ³	✗	✓	✓ ²	✓ ²
JIS B4 257 x 364 mm (10.12 x 14.33 in.)	✓	✓	✓	✓ ³	✓ ³	✗	✓	✓	✓ ¹
A3 297 x 420 mm (11.69 x 16.54 in.)	✓	✓	✓	✓ ³	✓ ³	✗	✓	✓	✓

¹ Paper size is supported if set to metric.

² Paper size is supported if set to US.

³ Source supports size without *size sensing*.

⁴ Source supports size with *size sensing*.

Paper size and dimension	150-sheet tray	250-sheet tray	520-sheet tray	MP Feeder	Manual Paper	Manual Envelope	Duplex	ADF	Scanner glass
11x17 279 x 432 mm (11 x 17 in.)	✓	✓ ²	✓ ²	✓ ³	✓ ³	X	✓	✓	✓
Oficio (México) 216 x 340 mm (8.5 x 13.4 in.)	X	X	X	✓ ³	✓ ³	X	✓	✓ ⁴	✓ ⁴
Folio 216 x 330 mm (8.5 x 13 in.)	X	X	X	✓ ³	✓ ³	X	✓	✓ ¹	✓ ¹
Statement 140 x 216 mm (5.5 x 8.5 in.)	X	X	X	✓ ³	✓ ³	X	✓	✓ ²	✓ ²
Universal 64-297 mm x 148-4 32 mm (2.52-11.69 x 5.83- 17.01 in.)	X	X	X	✓ ³	✓ ³	X	✓	✓ ⁴	✓ ⁴
7 3/4 Envelope (Monarch) 98 x 191 mm (3.875 x 7.5 in.)	X	X	X	✓ ³	X	✓	X	X	X
9 Envelope 98 x 226 mm (3.875 x 8.9 in.)	X	X	X	✓ ³	X	✓	X	X	X
Com 10 Envelope 105 x 241 mm (4.12 x 9.5 in.)	X	X	X	✓ ³	X	✓	X	X	X
DL Envelope 110 x 220 mm (4.33 x 8.66 in.)	X	X	X	✓ ³	X	✓	X	X	X
C5 Envelope 162 x 229 mm (6.38 x 9.01 in.)	X	X	X	✓ ³	X	✓	X	X	X
B5 Envelope 176 x 250 mm (6.93 x 9.84 in.)	X	X	X	✓ ³	X	✓	X	X	X

¹ Paper size is supported if set to metric.

² Paper size is supported if set to US.

³ Source supports size without *size sensing*.

⁴ Source supports size with *size sensing*.

Paper size and dimension	150-sheet tray	250-sheet tray	520-sheet tray	MP Feeder	Manual Paper	Manual Envelope	Duplex	ADF	Scanner glass
Other Envelope 86 x 165 mm to 216 x 356 mm (3.375 x 6.50 in. to 8.5 x 14 in.)	X	X	X	✓ ³	X	✓	X	X	X

¹ Paper size is supported if set to metric.

² Paper size is supported if set to US.

³ Source supports size without *size sensing*.

⁴ Source supports size with *size sensing*.

Supported paper types and weights

The printer engine supports 60–120 g/m (16–74 lb) paper weights. The duplex unit supports 64–128 g/m (17–34 lb) paper weights.

Note: Labels, transparencies, envelopes, and card stock always print at reduced speed.

Paper type	150-sheet tray	250-sheet tray	520-sheet tray	MP Feeder	Manual Paper	Manual Envelope	Duplex	ADF	Flatbed
Paper	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	X	✓	✓	✓
• Plain									
• Bond									
• Glossy									
• Heavy Glossy									
• Colored									
• Custom Type [x]									
• Letterhead									
• Light									
• Heavy									
• Preprinted									
• Rough/ Cotton									
• Recycled									
Card stock	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	X	X	X	✓
Transparencies	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	X	X	X	✓
Labels	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	X	X	X	✓
• Paper									
• Vinyl									
Envelopes	X	X	X	✓	X	✓	X	X	✓

Printing

Printing a document

Printing a document

- 1 From the printer control panel, set the paper type and size to match the paper loaded.
- 2 Send the print job:

For Windows users

- a With a document open, click **File > Print**.
- b Click **Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup**.
- c Adjust the settings, if necessary.
- d Click **OK > Print**.

For Macintosh users

- a Customize the settings in the **Page Setup** dialog:
 - 1 With a document open, choose **File > Page Setup**.
 - 2 Choose a paper size or create a custom size to match the paper loaded.
 - 3 Click **OK**.
- b Customize the settings in the **Print** dialog:
 - 1 With a document open, choose **File > Print**.
If necessary, click the disclosure triangle to see more options.
 - 2 From the print options pop-up menus, adjust the settings, if necessary.

Note: To print on a specific paper type, adjust the paper type setting to match the paper loaded, or select the appropriate tray or feeder.

- 3 Click **Print**.

Printing in black and white

From the home screen, navigate to:

 > **Settings > Print Settings > Quality Menu > Print Mode > Black Only > Submit**

Adjusting toner darkness

- 1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

- 2 Click **Settings > Print Settings > Quality Menu > Toner Darkness**.

3 Adjust the toner darkness setting.

4 Click **Submit**.

Printing from a mobile device

For the list of supported mobile devices and to download a compatible mobile printing application, visit <http://lexmark.com/mobile>.

Note: Mobile printing applications may also be available from your mobile device manufacturer.

Printing from a flash drive

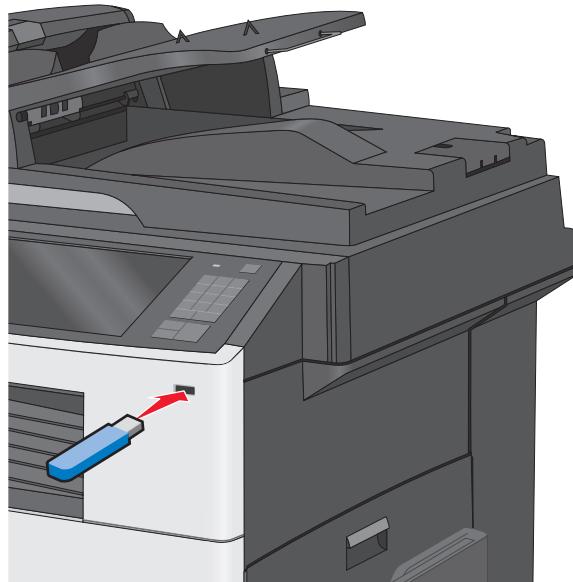
Printing from a flash drive

Notes:

- Before printing an encrypted PDF file, enter the file password from the printer control panel.
- You cannot print files for which you do not have printing permissions.

1 Insert a flash drive into the USB port.

The USB Drive home screen appears.



Notes:

- If you insert the flash drive when the printer requires attention, such as when a jam has occurred, then the printer ignores the flash drive.
- If you insert the flash drive while the printer is processing other print jobs, then **Busy** appears. After these print jobs are processed, you may need to view the held jobs list to print documents from the flash drive.



Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch the USB cable, any network adapter, any connector, the memory device, or the printer in the areas shown while actively printing, reading, or writing from the memory device. A loss of data can occur.

- 2 From the printer control panel, touch **Print from USB**, and then select the document you want to print.
- 3 Touch the arrows to increase the number of copies to print, and then touch **Print**.

Notes:

- Do not remove the flash drive from the USB port until the document has finished printing.
- If you leave the flash drive in the printer after leaving the initial USB menu screen, then you can still print files from the flash drive as held jobs.

Supported flash drives and file types

Flash drive	File type
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lexar JumpDrive 2.0 Pro (256MB, 512MB, or 1GB sizes) • SanDisk Cruzer Mini (256MB, 512MB, or 1GB sizes) <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hi-Speed USB flash drives must support the Full-Speed standard. Devices supporting only USB low-speed capabilities are not supported. • USB flash drives must support the FAT (<i>File Allocation Tables</i>) system. Devices formatted with NTFS (<i>New Technology File System</i>) or any other file system are not supported. 	<p>Documents:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • .pdf • .xps <p>Images:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • .dcx • .gif • .JPEG • .jpg • .bmp • .pcx • .TIFF • .tif • .png

Printing on specialty media

Tips on using letterhead

- Use letterhead designed specifically for laser/LED printers.
- Print samples on the letterhead being considered for use before buying large quantities.
- Before loading letterhead, flex the sheets to prevent them from sticking together.
- Page orientation is important when printing on letterhead.

Source	Print side	Paper orientation
Standard and optional trays (simplex printing)	Preprinted letterhead design is placed faceup.	When feeding short edge, the top edge of the sheet with the logo is placed at the right side of the tray. When feeding long-edge, the letter head should go to the rear of the printer.
Standard and optional trays (duplex printing)	Preprinted letterhead design is placed facedown.	The top edge of the sheet with the logo is placed at the right side of the tray.
Multipurpose feeder (simplex printing)	Preprinted letterhead design is placed facedown.	The top edge of the sheet with the logo should enter the multipurpose feeder first.
Multipurpose feeder (duplex printing)	Preprinted letterhead design is placed faceup.	The top edge of the sheet with the logo should enter the multipurpose feeder last.

Note: Check with the manufacturer or vendor to determine whether the chosen preprinted letterhead is acceptable for laser/LED printers.

Tips on using transparencies

- Print samples on the transparencies being considered for use before buying large quantities.
- Feed transparencies from the standard tray or from the multipurpose feeder.
- From the Paper menu, set the Paper Type to Transparency.
- Use transparencies designed specifically for laser/LED printers. Transparencies must be able to withstand temperatures of 230°C (446°F) without melting, discoloring, offsetting, or releasing hazardous emissions.
- To prevent print quality problems, avoid getting fingerprints on the transparencies.
- Before loading transparencies, flex the stack to prevent sheets from sticking together.
- We recommend Lexmark transparencies. For ordering information, see the Lexmark Web site at www.lexmark.com.

Tips on using envelopes

Print samples on the envelopes being considered for use before buying large quantities.

- Use envelopes designed specifically for laser/LED printers. Check with the manufacturer or vendor to ensure that the envelopes can withstand temperatures up to 220°C (446°F) without sealing, wrinkling, curling excessively, or releasing hazardous emissions.
- For best performance, use envelopes made from 90-g/m² (24-lb bond) paper or 25% cotton. All-cotton envelopes must not exceed 70-g/m² (20-lb bond) weight.
- Use only new envelopes from undamaged packages.
- To optimize performance and minimize jams, do not use envelopes that:
 - Have excessive curl or twist.
 - Are stuck together or damaged in any way.
 - Have windows, holes, perforations, cutouts, or embossing.
 - Have metal clasps, string ties, or folding bars.
 - Have an interlocking design.
 - Have postage stamps attached.
 - Have any exposed adhesive when the flap is in the sealed or closed position.
 - Have bent corners.
 - Have rough, cockle, or laid finishes.
- Adjust the width guides to fit the width of the envelopes.

Note: A combination of high humidity (over 60%) and high printing temperature may wrinkle or seal envelopes.

Tips on using labels

Note: Use paper label sheets for occasional use only. Vinyl, pharmacy, and dual-sided labels are not supported.

For detailed information on label printing, characteristics, and design, see the *Card Stock & Label Guide* available on the Lexmark Web site at <http://support.lexmark.com>.

When printing on labels:

- Use labels designed specifically for laser/LED printers. Check with the manufacturer or vendor to verify that:
 - The labels can withstand temperatures up to 210°C (410°F) without sealing, excessive curling, wrinkling, or releasing hazardous emissions.
- Note:** Labels can be printed at a higher fusing temperature up to 220°C (428°F) if Label Weight is set to Heavy. Select this setting using the Embedded Web Server, or from the printer control panel Paper menu.
- Label adhesives, face sheet (printable stock), and topcoats can withstand up to 25 psi (172 kPa) pressure without delaminating, oozing around the edges, or releasing hazardous fumes.
 - Do not use labels with slick backing material.
 - Use full label sheets. Partial sheets may cause labels to peel off during printing, resulting in a jam. Partial sheets also contaminate the printer and the cartridge with adhesive, and could void the printer and cartridge warranties.
 - Do not use labels with exposed adhesive.
 - Do not print within 1 mm (0.04 in.) of the edge of the label, of the perforations, or between die-cuts of the label.
 - Be sure adhesive backing does not reach to the sheet edge. Zone coating of the adhesive at least 1 mm (0.04 in.) away from edges is recommended. Adhesive material contaminates the printer and could void the warranty.

- If zone coating of the adhesive is not possible, remove a 1.6 mm (0.06 in.) strip on the leading and driver edge, and use a non-oozing adhesive.
- Portrait orientation works best, especially when printing bar codes.

Tips on using card stock

Card stock is heavy, single-ply specialty media. Many of its variable characteristics, such as moisture content, thickness, and texture, can significantly impact print quality. Print samples on the card stock being considered for use before buying large quantities.

- From the Paper menu, set the Paper Type to Card Stock.
- Select the appropriate Paper Texture setting.
- Be aware that preprinting, perforation, and creasing may significantly affect the print quality and cause jams or other paper handling problems.
- Check with the manufacturer or vendor to ensure the card stock can withstand temperatures up to 220°C (446°F) without releasing hazardous emissions.
- Do not use preprinted card stock manufactured with chemicals that may contaminate the printer. Preprinting introduces semi-liquid and volatile components into the printer.
- Use grain short card stock when possible.

Printing confidential and other held jobs

Storing print jobs in the printer

You can set the printer to store print jobs in the printer memory until you start the print job from the printer control panel.

All print jobs that can be initiated by the user at the printer are called *held jobs*.

Note: Confidential, Verify, Reserve, and Repeat print jobs may be deleted if the printer requires extra memory to process additional held jobs.

Print job type	Description
Confidential	Confidential lets you hold print jobs in the computer until you enter the PIN from the control panel. Note: The PIN is set from the computer. It must be four digits, using the numbers 0–9.
Verify	Verify lets you print one copy of a print job while the printer holds the remaining copies. It allows you to examine if the first copy is satisfactory. The print job is automatically deleted from the printer memory once all copies are printed.
Reserve	Reserve allows the printer to store print jobs for printing at a later time. The print jobs are held until deleted from the Help Jobs menu.
Repeat	Repeat prints <i>and</i> stores print jobs in the printer memory for reprinting.

Printing confidential and other held jobs

Note: Confidential and Verify print jobs are automatically deleted from memory after printing. Repeat and Reserve jobs are *held* in the printer until you delete them.

For Windows users

- 1 With a document open, click **File > Print**.
- 2 Click **Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup**.
- 3 Click **Print and Hold**.
- 4 Select the print job type (Confidential, Repeat, Reserve, or Verify), and then assign a user name. For a confidential print job, also enter a four-digit PIN.
- 5 Click **OK or Print**.
- 6 From the printer home screen, release the print job.
 - For confidential print jobs, navigate to:
Held jobs > select your user name > **Confidential Jobs** > enter the PIN > **Print**
 - For other print jobs, navigate to:
Held jobs > select your user name > select the print job > specify the number of copies > **Print**

For Macintosh users

- 1 With a document open, choose **File > Print**.
If necessary, click the disclosure triangle to see more options.
- 2 From the print options or Copies & Pages pop-up menu, choose **Job Routing**.
- 3 Select the print job type (Confidential, Repeat, Reserve, or Verify), and then assign a user name. For a confidential print job, also enter a four-digit PIN.
- 4 Click **OK or Print**.
- 5 From the printer home screen, release the print job.
 - For confidential print jobs, navigate to:
Held jobs > select your user name > **Confidential Jobs** > enter the PIN > **Print**
 - For other print jobs, navigate to:
Held jobs > select your user name > select the print job > specify the number of copies > **Print**

Printing information pages

Printing a font sample list

- 1 From the home screen, navigate to:



> **Reports > Print Fonts**

- 2 Touch **PCL Fonts** or **PostScript Fonts**.

Printing a directory list

A directory list shows the resources stored in a flash memory or on the printer hard disk.

From the home screen, navigate to:

 > Reports > Print Directory

Using Max Speed and Max Yield

The Max Speed and Max Yield settings let you choose between a faster print speed or a higher toner yield. Max Yield is the factory default setting.

- **Max Speed**—Prints in color unless Black Only is selected in the driver. Prints in black only if the Black Only driver setting is selected.
- **Max Yield**—Switches from black to color based on the color content found on each page. Frequent color mode switching can result in slower printing if the content of pages is mixed.

Using the Embedded Web Server

- 1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

- 2 Click **Configuration > Print Settings > Setup Menu**.

- 3 From the Printer Usage list, select **Max Speed** or **Max Yield**.

- 4 Click **Submit**.

Using the printer control panel

- 1 Navigate to:

 > Settings > Print Settings > Setup Menu

- 2 From the Printer Usage list, select **Max Speed** or **Max Yield**.

- 3 Touch **Submit**.

Canceling a print job

Canceling a print job from the printer control panel

- 1 From the printer control panel, touch **Cancel Job** or press  on the keypad.

- 2 Touch the print job you want to cancel, and then touch **Delete Selected Jobs**.

Note: If you press  on the keypad, then touch **Resume** to return to the home screen.

Canceling a print job from the computer

For Windows users

- 1 Open the printers folder.

In Windows 8

From the Search charm, type **run**, and then navigate to:

Apps list > **Run** > type **control printers** > **OK**

In Windows 7 or earlier

- a Click  or click **Start**, and then click **Run**.
- b In the Start Search or Run dialog, type **control printers**.
- c Press **Enter**, or click **OK**.

- 2 Double-click the printer icon.

- 3 Select the print job you want to cancel.

- 4 Click **Delete**.

For Macintosh users

- 1 From the Apple menu, navigate to either of the following:
 - **System Preferences** > **Print & Scan** > select your printer > **Open Print Queue**
 - **System Preferences** > **Print & Fax** > select your printer > **Open Print Queue**
- 2 From the printer window, select the print job you want to cancel, and then delete it.

Copying

ADF	Scanner glass
	
Use the ADF for multiple-page documents.	Use the scanner glass for single pages, small items (such as postcards or photos), transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings).

Making copies

Making a quick copy

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 Adjust the paper guides when loading a document into the ADF.

Note: Make sure the size of the original document and the copy paper size are the same. Failure to set the proper size may result to a cropped image.

3 From the printer control panel, press  to start copying.

Copying using the ADF

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 Adjust the paper guides.

3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Copy > change the copy settings > **Copy It**

Copying using the scanner glass

- 1 Place an original document facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.
- 2 From the home screen, navigate to:
Copy > change the copy settings > **Copy It**
- 3 If you have more pages to scan, then place the next document on the scanner glass, and then touch **Scan the Next Page**.
- 4 Touch **Finish the Job** to return to the home screen.

Copying film photos

- 1 Place a photo facedown on the upper left corner of the scanner glass.
- 2 From the home screen, navigate to:
Copy > **Content** > **Photo** >  > **Photo/Film** >  > **Copy It** > **Scan the Next Page or Finish the Job**

Copying on specialty media

Copying on transparencies

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.
Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.
- 3 From the home screen, navigate to:
Copy > **Copy from** > size of the original document > 
- 4 Touch **Copy to**, and then select the tray that contains transparencies, or touch **Manual Feeder Size**.
- 5 Load transparencies in the multipurpose feeder.
- 6 From the home screen, navigate to:
 > select the desired size of the transparencies > **Manual Feeder Type** >  > **Copy It**

Copying on letterhead

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.
Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.
- 3 From the home screen, navigate to:
Copy > **Copy from** > size of the original document > **Copy to** > **Manual Feeder**

4 Place the letterhead faceup, top edge first in the multipurpose feeder.

5 Select the size of the letterhead.

6 Navigate to:

Continue > Letterhead > Continue > Copy It

Customizing copy settings

Copying to a different size

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 On the home screen, touch **Copy**.

4 Touch **Copy from** > select the size of the original document > .

5 Touch **Copy to** > select the size of the copy > .

Note: The printer will scale the size automatically.

6 Touch **Copy It**.

Making copies using paper from a selected tray

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Copy > Copy from > size of the original document > Copy to

4 Touch **Manual Feeder** or select the tray that contains the paper type you want to use.

Note: If you choose Manual Feeder, then you will also need to select the paper size and type.

5 Touch **Copy It**.

Copying different paper sizes

Use the ADF to copy original documents with different paper sizes. Depending on the paper sizes loaded and the “Copy to” and “Copy from” settings, each copy is either printed on mixed paper sizes (Example 1) or scaled to fit a single paper size (Example 2).

Example 1: Copying on mixed paper sizes

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.
- 3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Copy > Copy from > Mixed Sizes >  > Copy to > Auto Size Match >  > Copy It

The scanner identifies the different paper sizes as they are scanned. Copies are printed on mixed paper sizes corresponding to the paper sizes of the original document.

Example 2: Copying on a single paper size

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.
- 3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Copy > Copy from > Mixed Sizes >  > Copy to > Letter >  > Copy It

The scanner identifies the different paper sizes as they are scanned, and then scales the mixed paper sizes to fit on the paper size selected.

Copying on both sides of the paper (duplexing)

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.
- 3 On the home screen, touch **Copy**.
- 4 From the Sides (Duplex) area, touch the button for your preferred duplexing method.

The first number represents sides of the original documents; the second number represents sides of the copy. For example, select 1-sided to 2-sided if you have 1-sided original documents and you want 2-sided copies.

- 5 Touch , and then **Copy It**.

Reducing or enlarging copies

Copies can be reduced to 25% of the original document size or enlarged to 400% of the original document size. The factory default setting for Scale is Auto. If you leave Scale set to Auto, the content of your original document will be scaled to fit the size of the paper onto which you are copying.

To reduce or enlarge a copy:

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

- 3 On the home screen, touch **Copy**.

- 4 From the Scale area, touch the arrows to enlarge or reduce your copies.

Touching “Copy to” or “Copy from” after setting Scale manually changes the scale value back to Auto.

- 5 Touch **Copy It**.

Adjusting copy quality

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

- 3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Copy > Content

- 4 Touch the button that best represents the content type of the document you are copying:

- **Text**—Use when the content of the original document is mostly text or line art.
- **Graphic**—Use when the original document is mostly business-type graphics such as pie charts, bar charts, and animations.
- **Text/Photo**—Use when the original document is a mixture of text, graphics, and photos.
- **Photo**—Use when the original document is mostly a photo or an image.

- 5 Touch .

- 6 Touch the button that best represents the content source of the document you are copying:

- **Color Laser**—Use when the original document was printed using a color laser printer.
- **Black/White**—Use when the original document was printed using a black/white laser printer.
- **Inkjet**—Use when the original document was printed using a inkjet printer.
- **Photo/Film**—Use when the original document is a photo from film.
- **Magazine**—Use when the original document is from a magazine.
- **Newspaper**—Use when the original document is from a newspaper.

- **Press**—Use when the original document was printed using a printing press.
- **Other**—Use when the original document was printed using an alternate or unknown printer.

7 Touch  > **Copy It**.

Collating copies

If you print multiple copies of a document, then you can choose to print each copy as a set (collated) or to print the copies as groups of pages (not collated).

Collated



Not collated



By default, Collate is set to On. If you do not want to collate your copies, then change the setting to Off:

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Copy > enter the number of copies > **Collate** > **Off** >  > **Copy It**

Placing separator sheets between copies

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Copy > **Advanced Options** > **Separator Sheets**

Note: Collate must be set to On for the separator sheets to be placed between copies. If Collate is set to Off, then the separator sheets are added to the end of the print job.

4 Select one of the following:

- **Between Copies**
- **Between Jobs**
- **Between Pages**
- **Off**

5 Touch , and then **Copy It**.

Copying multiple pages onto a single sheet

In order to save paper, you can copy either two or four consecutive pages of a multiple-page document onto a single sheet of paper.

Notes:

- The Paper Size must be set to Letter, Legal, A4, or JIS B5.
- The Copy Size must be set to 100%.

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Copy > Advanced Options > Paper Saver > select desired output >  > Copy It

Creating a custom copy job (job build)

The custom copy job or job build is used to combine one or more sets of original documents into a single copy job. Each set may be scanned using different job parameters. When a copy job is submitted and Custom Job is enabled, the scanner scans the first set of original documents using the supplied parameters, and then it scans the next set with the same or different parameters.

The definition of a set depends on the scan source:

- If you scan a document on the scanner glass, then a set consists of one page.
- If you scan multiple pages using the ADF, then a set consists of all scanned pages until the ADF becomes empty.
- If you scan one page using the ADF, then a set consists of one page.

For example:

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Copy > Options > Custom Job > On > Done > Copy It

When the end of a set is reached, the scan screen appears.

4 Load the next document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass, and then touch **Scan the Automatic Document Feeder** or **Scan the flatbed**.

Note: If required, change the job settings.

5 If you have another document to scan, then repeat the previous step. Otherwise, touch **Finish the job**.

Placing information on copies

Placing the date and time at the top of each page

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

- 3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Copy > Advanced Options > Header/Footer

- 4 Pick an area of the page where you want to place the date and time.

- 5 Touch **Yes or No** >  > **Copy It.**

Placing an overlay message on each page

An overlay message can be placed on each page. The message choices are Urgent, Confidential, Copy, Custom or Draft. To place a message on the copies:

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

- 3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Copy > Advanced Options > Overlay > select overlay message > .

- 4 Touch **Copy It.**

Canceling a copy job

Canceling a copy job while the document is in the ADF

When the ADF begins processing a document, the scanning screen appears. To cancel the copy job, touch **Cancel Job** on the touch screen.

A “Canceling scan job” screen appears. The ADF clears all pages in the ADF and cancels the job.

Canceling a copy job while copying pages using the scanner glass

Touch **Cancel Job** on the touch screen.

A “Canceling scan job” screen appears. Once the job is canceled, the copy screen appears.

Canceling a copy job while pages are being printed

- 1 From the printer control panel, touch **Cancel Job** or press  on the keypad.
- 2 Touch the job you want to cancel, and then touch **Delete Selected Jobs**.

Note: If you press  on the keypad, then touch **Resume** to return to the home screen.

Understanding the copy screens and options

Copy from

This option opens a screen where you can enter the paper size of the original document.

- Touch a paper size that matches the original document.
- Touch **Mixed Sizes** to copy an original document that contains mixed paper sizes with the same width.
- Touch **Auto Size Sense** to allow the scanner to automatically determine the size of the original document.

Copy to

This option opens a screen where you can enter the paper size and type on which your copies will be printed.

- Touch the paper size and type that matches the paper loaded.
- If the settings for “Copy from” and “Copy to” are different, then the printer automatically adjusts the Scale setting to accommodate the difference.
- If the paper type or size that you want to copy onto is not loaded in one of the trays, then touch **Manual Feeder**, and manually load the paper in the multipurpose feeder.
- When “Copy to” is set to Auto Size Match, each copy matches the paper size of the original document. If a matching paper size is not in one of the trays, then **Paper size not found** appears and prompts to load a paper in a tray or multipurpose feeder.

Copies

This option allows you to set the number of copies to be printed.

Scale

This option creates an image from your copy that is proportionally scaled anywhere between 25% and 400%. Scale can also be set for you automatically.

- When you want to copy from one size of paper to another, such as from legal-size to letter-size paper, setting the “Copy from” and “Copy to” paper sizes automatically changes the scale to keep all the original document information on your copy.
- Touch the left arrow to decrease the value by 1%; touch the right arrow to increase the value by 1%.
- Hold your finger on an arrow to make a continuous increment change.
- Hold your finger on an arrow for two seconds to cause the pace of the change to accelerate.

Darkness

This option adjusts how light or dark your copies will turn out in relation to the original document.

Sides (Duplex)

Use this option to select duplex settings. You can print copies on one or two sides, make two-sided copies (duplex) of two-sided original documents, make two-sided copies from one-sided original documents, or make one-sided copies (simplex) from two-sided original documents.

Collate

This option keeps the pages of a print job stacked in sequence when printing multiple copies of the document. The factory default setting for Collate is on; the output pages of your copies will be ordered (1,2,3) (1,2,3) (1,2,3). If you want all the copies of each page to remain together, turn Collate off, and your copies will be ordered (1,1,1) (2,2,2) (3,3,3).

Content

This option lets you set the original document type and source.

Choose content type from Text, Text/Photo, Photo, or Graphics.

- **Text**—Use when the content of the original document is mostly text or line art.
- **Graphics**—Use when the original document is mostly business-type graphics such as pie charts, bar charts, and animations.
- **Text/Photo**—Use when the original document is a mixture of text, graphics, and photos.
- **Photo**—Use when the original document is mostly a photo or an image.

Choose content source from Color Laser, Black/White Laser, Inkjet, Photo/Film, Magazine, Newspaper, Press, or Other.

- **Color Laser**—Use when the original document was printed using a color laser printer.
- **Black/White Laser**—Use when the original document was printed using a mono laser printer.
- **Inkjet**—Use when the original document was printed using an inkjet printer.
- **Photo/Film**—Use when the original document is a photo from film.
- **Magazine**—Use when the original document is from a magazine.
- **Newspaper**—Use when the original document is from a newspaper.
- **Press**—Use when the original document was printed using a printing press.
- **Other**—Use when the original document was printed using an alternate or unknown printer.

Color

This option enables or disables color for the scanned image.

Advanced Options

Touching the Advanced Options button opens a screen where you can change the following settings:

- **ADF Skew Fix**—Use to correct slight skew in the scanned image.
- **Advanced Duplex**—Use to specify the document orientation, whether documents are one-sided or two-sided, and how documents are bound.

Note: Some Advanced Duplex options are available only on select printers.

- **Advanced Imaging**—Use to change or adjust Auto Center, Background Removal, Color Balance, Color Dropout, Contrast, Mirror Image, Negative Image, Scan Edge to Edge, Shadow Detail, Sharpness, and Temperature settings before you copy the document.
- **Create Booklet**—Use to create a booklet. You can choose between 1-sided and 2-sided booklets.

Note: This option appears only when a print duplexer and printer hard disk are installed.

- **Cover Page Setup**—Use to set copy cover page and booklet cover page.
- **Custom Job**—Use to combine multiple scanning jobs into a single job.
- **Edge Erase**—Use to eliminate smudges or information around the edges of a document. You can choose to eliminate an equal area around all four sides of the paper, or pick a particular edge. Edge Erase will erase whatever is within the area selected, leaving nothing on that portion of the scan.
- **Header/Footer**—Use to turn on Date/Time, Page number, Bates number, or Custom text, and prints them in the specified header or footer location.
- **Margin Shift**—Use to increase the size of the margin of an specified distance by shifting the scanned image. This can be useful in providing space to bind or hole-punch copies. Use the increase or decrease arrows to set how much of a margin you want. If the additional margin is too large, then the copy will be cropped.
- **Overlay**—Use to create a watermark (or message) that overlays the content of your copy. You can choose between Urgent, Confidential, Copy, and Draft, or you can enter a custom message in the "Enter custom text" field. The word you pick will appear, faintly, in large print across each page.

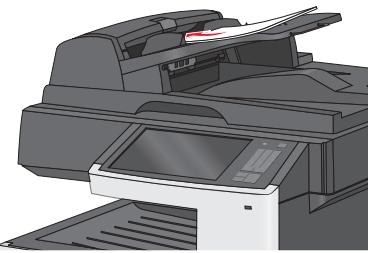
Note: A custom overlay can also be created by your system support person. When a custom overlay is created, a button with an icon of that overlay will be available.

- **Paper Saver**—Use to print two or more sheets of an original document together on the same page. Paper Saver is also called N-up printing. The N stands for Number. For example, 2-up would print two pages of your document on a single page, and 4-up would print four pages of your document on a single page. Touching Print Page Borders adds or removes the outline border surrounding the original document pages on the output page.
- **Separator Sheets**—Use to place a blank piece of paper between copies, pages, or print jobs. The separator sheets can be drawn from a tray that contains a type or color of paper that is different from the paper your copies are printed on.

Save As Shortcut

This option allows the current settings to be saved as a shortcut by assigning a number.

E-mailing

ADF	Scanner glass
	
Use the ADF for multiple-page documents.	Use the scanner glass for single pages, small items (such as postcards or photos), transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings).

You can use the printer to e-mail scanned documents to one or more recipients. There are three ways to send an e-mail from the printer. You can type the e-mail address, use a shortcut number, or use the address book.

Getting ready to e-mail

Setting up the e-mail function

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings**.

3 Under Default Settings, click **E-mail/FTP Settings**.

4 Click **E-mail Settings > Setup E-mail Server**.

5 Fill in the fields with the appropriate information.

6 Click **Submit**.

Configuring e-mail settings

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings > E-mail/FTP Settings > E-mail Settings**.

3 Fill in the fields with the appropriate information.

4 Click **Submit**.

Creating an e-mail shortcut

Creating an e-mail shortcut using the Embedded Web Server

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings**.

3 Under Other Settings, click **Manage Shortcuts > E-mail Shortcut Setup**.

4 Type a unique name for the recipient, and then enter the e-mail address.

Note: If you are entering multiple addresses, then separate each address with a comma (,).

5 Select the scan settings (Format, Content, Color, and Resolution).

6 Enter a shortcut number, and then click **Add**.

If you enter a number that is already in use, then you are prompted to select another number.

Creating an e-mail shortcut using the touch screen

1 From the home screen, navigate to:

E-mail > Recipient > type an e-mail address

To create a group of recipients, touch **Next address**, and then type the next recipient's e-mail address.

2 Touch .

3 Type a unique name for the shortcut, and then touch **Done**.

4 Verify that the shortcut name and number are correct, and then touch **OK**.

If the name or number is incorrect, then touch **Cancel**, and then reenter the information.

E-mailing a document

Sending an e-mail using the touch screen

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

Note: Make sure the size of the original document and the copy paper size are the same. Failure to set the proper size may result to a cropped image.

- 3 From the home screen, navigate to:

E-mail > Recipient

- 4 Enter the e-mail address, or press  and then enter the shortcut number.

To enter additional recipients, touch **Next Address**, and then enter the address or shortcut number you want to add.

Note: You can also enter an e-mail address using the address book.

- 5 Touch **Done > Send It**.

Sending an e-mail using a shortcut number

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

- 3 Press , enter the shortcut number using the keypad, and then touch .

To enter additional recipients, touch **Next address**, and then enter the address or shortcut number you want to add.

- 4 Touch **Send It**.

Sending an e-mail using the address book

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

- 3 From the home screen, navigate to:

E-mail >Recipient(s) >  > enter the name of recipient > Browse shortcuts

4 Touch the name of the recipients.

To enter additional recipients, touch **Next address**, and then enter the address or shortcut number you want to add, or search the address book.

5 Touch **Done**.

Customizing e-mail settings

Adding e-mail subject and message information

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.**3** From the home screen, touch **E-mail**.**4** Type an e-mail address.**5** Touch **Options > Subject**.**6** Type the e-mail subject.**7** Touch **Done > Message**.**8** Type an e-mail message.**9** Touch **Done > E-mail It**.

Changing the output file type

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.**3** From the home screen, navigate to:

E-mail > Recipient > type an e-mail address > Send as

4 Touch the button that represents the file type you want to send.

- **PDF**—Use this to create a single file with multiple pages, viewable with Adobe Reader. Adobe Reader is provided free by Adobe at www.adobe.com.
- **Secure PDF**—Use this to create an encrypted PDF file that protects the file contents from unauthorized access.
- **TIFF**—Use this to create multiple files or a single file. If Multi-page TIFF is turned off in the Settings menu of the Embedded Web Server, then TIFF saves one page in each file. The file size is usually larger than an equivalent JPEG.

- **JPEG**—Use this to create and attach a separate file for each page of your original document, viewable by most Web browsers and graphics programs.
- **XPS**—Use this to create a single XML Paper Specification (XPS) file with multiple pages, viewable using an Internet Explorer-hosted viewer and the .NET Framework, or by downloading a third-party standalone viewer.

5 Touch **E-mail It**.

Note: If you selected Secure PDF, you will be prompted to enter your password twice.

Canceling an e-mail

- When using the ADF, touch **Cancel Job** while **Scanning** appears.
- When using the scanner glass, touch **Cancel Job** while **Scanning** appears, or while **Scan the Next Page / Finish the Job** appears.

Understanding e-mail options

Recipients

This option lets you enter the destination of your e-mail. You may enter multiple e-mail addresses.

Subject

This option lets you enter a subject line for your e-mail.

Message

This option lets you enter a message that will be sent with your scanned attachment.

File Name

This option lets you customize the attachment file name.

Original Size

This option opens a screen where you can choose the size of the documents you are going to e-mail.

- Touch a paper size button to select that size as the Original Size setting. The e-mail screen appears with the new setting displayed.
- When “Original Size” is set to Mixed Sizes, you can scan an original document that contains mixed paper sizes.
- When “Original Size” is set to Auto Size Sense, the scanner automatically determines the size of the original document.

Resolution

Adjusts the output quality of your e-mail. Increasing the image resolution increases the e-mail file size and the time needed to scan your original document. Image resolution can be decreased to reduce the e-mail file size.

Color

This option sets the output color for the scanned image. Touch to enable or disable color.

Content

This option lets you specify the content type and source of the original document.

Choose content type from Text, Text/Photo, Photo, or Graphics.

- **Text**—Use when the content of the original document is mostly text or line art.
- **Graphics**—Use when the original document is mostly business-type graphics such as pie charts, bar charts, and animations.
- **Text/Photo**—Use when the original document is a mixture of text, graphics, and photos.
- **Photo**—Use when the original document is mostly a photo or an image.

Choose content source from Color Laser, Black/White Laser, Inkjet, Photo/Film, Magazine, Newspaper, Press, or Other.

- **Color Laser**—Use when the original document was printed using a color laser printer.
- **Black/White Laser**—Use when the original document was printed using a mono laser printer.
- **Inkjet**—Use when the original document was printed using an inkjet printer.
- **Photo/Film**—Use when the original document is a photo from film.
- **Magazine**—Use when the original document is from a magazine.
- **Newspaper**—Use when the original document is from a newspaper.
- **Press**—Use when the original document was printed using a printing press.
- **Other**—Use when the original document was printed using an alternate or unknown printer.

Darkness

This option adjusts how light or dark your scanned documents will turn out in relation to the original document.

Send As

This option sets the output (PDF, TIFF, JPEG or XPS) for the scanned image.

- **PDF**—Creates a single file with multiple pages, viewable with Adobe Reader. Adobe Reader is provided free by Adobe at www.adobe.com.
- **Secure PDF**—Creates an encrypted PDF file that protects the file contents from unauthorized access
- **TIFF**—Creates multiple files or a single file. If Multi-page TIFF is turned off in the Settings menu of the Embedded Web Server, then TIFF saves one page in each file. The file size is usually larger than an equivalent JPEG.
- **JPEG**—Creates and attaches a separate file for each page of your original document, viewable by most Web browsers and graphics programs
- **XPS**—Creates a single XPS file with multiple pages, viewable using an Internet Explorer-hosted viewer and the .NET Framework, or by downloading a third party standalone viewer

Page Setup

This option lets you change the Sides (Duplex), Orientation, and Binding.

- **Sides (Duplex)**— Specifies if the original document is simplex (printed on one page) or duplex (printed on both sides). This also identifies what needs to be scanned for inclusion in the e-mail.
- **Orientation**— Specifies the orientation of the original document, and then changes **Sides** and **Binding** to match the orientation.
- **Binding**— Specifies if the original document is bound on the long-edge or short-edge side.

Scan Preview

This option displays the first page of the image before it is included in the e-mail. When the first page is scanned, the scanning is paused and a preview image appears.

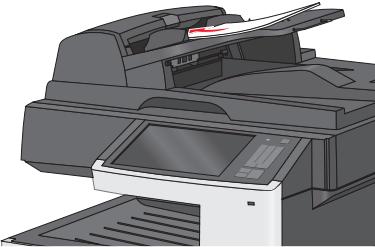
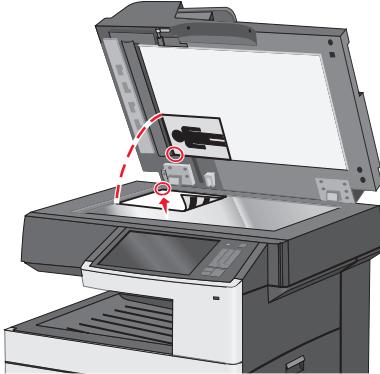
Advanced Options

Touching this button opens a screen where you can change ADF Skew Fix, Advanced Imaging, Custom Job, Edge Erase, and Transmission Log settings.

- **ADF Skew Fix**—This lets you correct slight skew in the scanned image.
- **Advanced Imaging**—This lets you adjust the Background Removal, Color Balance, Color Dropout, Contrast, JPEG Quality, Mirror Image, Negative Image, Scan Edge to Edge, Shadow Detail, Sharpness, and Temperature settings before you e-mail the document.
- **Custom Job**—This lets you combine multiple scanning jobs into a single job
- **Edge Erase**—This lets you eliminate smudges or information around the edges of a document. You can choose to eliminate an equal area around all four sides of the paper, or pick a particular edge. Edge Erase will erase whatever is within the area selected, leaving nothing on that portion of the scan.
- **Transmission Log**—This lets you print the transmission log or transmission error log

Faxing

Note: Fax capabilities may not be available on all printer models.

ADF	Scanner glass
	

Use the ADF for multiple-page documents. Use the scanner glass for single pages, small items (such as postcards or photos), transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings).

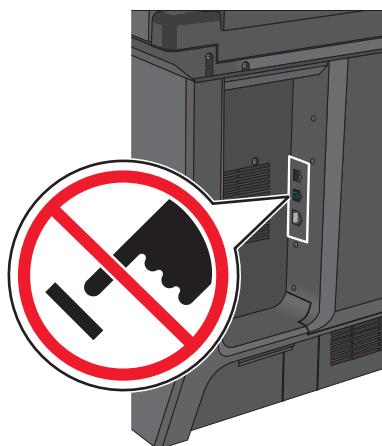
Getting the printer ready to fax

The following connection methods may not be applicable in all countries or regions.

Note: During the initial printer setup, deselect Fax and any other function you plan to set up later, and then touch **Continue**. The indicator light may blink red if the fax function is enabled and not fully set up.

 **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** Do not use the fax feature during a lightning storm. Do not set up this product or make any electrical or cabling connections, such as the fax feature, power cord, or telephone, during a lightning storm.

Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch cables or the printer in the area shown while actively sending or receiving a fax.



Initial fax setup

Many countries and regions require outgoing faxes to contain the following information in a margin at the top or bottom of each transmitted page, or on the first page of the transmission: station name (identification of the business, other

Choosing a fax connection

Notes:

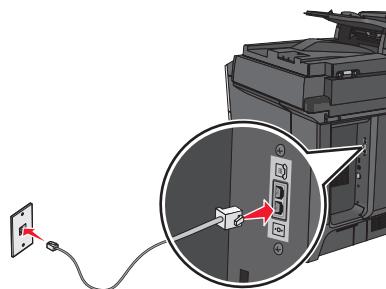
- The printer is an analog device that works best when directly connected to the telephone wall outlet. Other devices(such as a telephone or answering machine) can be successfully attached to pass through the printer, as described in the setup steps.
- If you want a digital connection such as ISDN, DSL, or ADSL, then a third-party device (such as a DSL filter) is required. Contact your DSL provider for a DSL filter. The DSL filter removes the digital signal on the telephone line that can interfere with the ability of the printer to fax properly.
- You *do not* need to attach the printer to a computer, but you *do* need to connect it to an analog telephone line to send and receive faxes.

Equipment and service options	Fax connection setup
Connect directly to the telephone line.	See "Connecting to an analog telephone line" on page 124.
Connect to a Digital Subscriber Line (DSL or ADSL) service.	See "Connecting to a DSL service" on page 125.
Connect to a Private Branch eXchange (PBX) or Integrated Services Digital Network (ISDN) system.	See "Connecting to a PBX or ISDN system" on page 125.
Use a Distinctive Ring service.	See "Connecting to a distinctive ring service" on page 126.
Connect through an adapter used in your area.	See "Connecting to an adapter for your country or region" on page 126.

Connecting to an analog telephone line

If your telecommunications equipment uses a US-style (RJ11) telephone line, then follow these steps to connect the equipment:

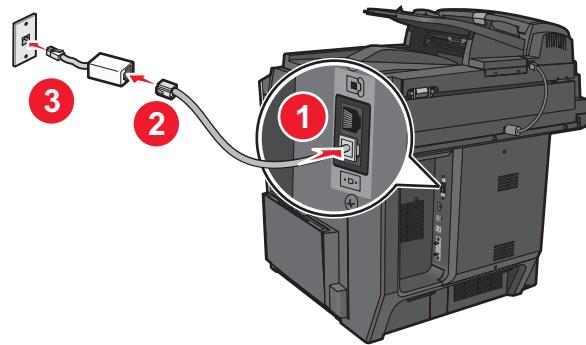
- 1 Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with the printer to the printer LINE port .
- 2 Connect the other end of the telephone cable to an active analog telephone wall jack.



Connecting to a DSL service

If you subscribe to a DSL service, then contact the DSL provider to obtain a DSL filter and telephone cord, and then follow these steps to connect the equipment:

- 1 Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with the printer to the printer LINE port .
 - 2 Connect the other end of the telephone cable to the DSL filter.
- Note:** Your DSL filter may look different than the one in the illustration.
- 3 Connect the DSL filter cable to an active telephone wall jack.



Connecting to a PBX or ISDN system

If you use a PBX or ISDN converter or terminal adapter, then follow these steps to connect the equipment:

- 1 Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with the printer to the printer LINE port .
- 2 Connect the other end of the telephone cable to the port designated for fax and telephone use.

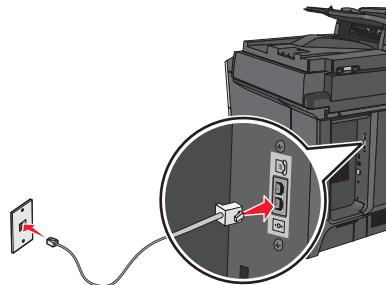
Notes:

- Make sure the terminal adapter is set to the correct switch type for your region.
- Depending on the ISDN port assignment, you may have to connect to a specific port.
- When using a PBX system, make sure the call waiting tone is off.
- When using a PBX system, dial the outside line prefix before dialing the fax number.
- For more information on using the fax with a PBX system, see the documentation that came with your PBX system.

Connecting to a distinctive ring service

A distinctive ring service may be available from your telephone service provider. This service allows you to have multiple telephone numbers on one telephone line, with each telephone number having a different ring pattern. This may be useful for distinguishing between fax and voice calls. If you subscribe to a distinctive ring service, then follow these steps to connect the equipment:

- 1 Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with the printer to the printer LINE port .
- 2 Connect the other end of the telephone cable to an active analog telephone wall jack.



- 3 Change the Distinctive Rings setting to match the setting you want for the printer to answer:

Note: The factory default setting for distinctive rings is **On**. This allows the printer to answer single, double, and triple ring patterns.

- a From the home screen, navigate to:



> **Settings** > **Fax Settings** > **Analog Fax Settings** > **Distinctive Rings**

- b Select the pattern setting you want to change, and then touch **Submit**.

Connecting to an adapter for your country or region

The following countries or regions may require a special adapter to connect the telephone cable to the active telephone wall jack:

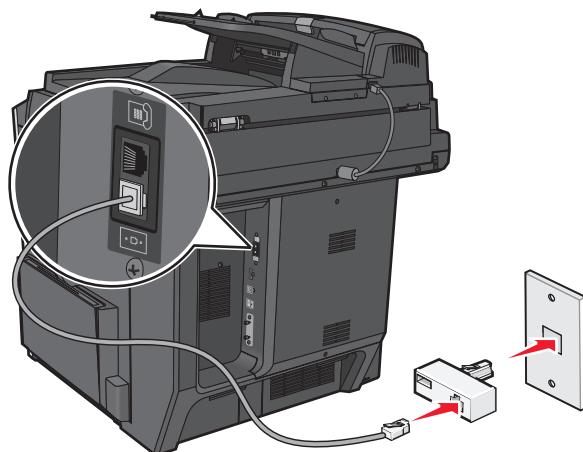
Country/Region

- Austria
- Cyprus
- Denmark
- Finland
- France
- Germany
- Ireland
- Italy
- New Zealand
- Netherlands
- Norway
- Portugal
- Sweden
- Switzerland
- United Kingdom

For some countries or regions, a telephone line adapter is included in the box. Use this adapter to connect an answering machine, telephone, or other telecommunications equipment to the printer.

- 1 Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with the printer to the printer LINE port 
- 2 Connect the other end of the telephone cable to the adapter, and then connect the adapter to the active telephone wall jack.

Note: Your telephone adapter may look different than the one shown. It will fit the wall jack used in your location.



Setting the outgoing fax or station name and number

- 1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

- 2 Click **Settings > Fax Settings > Analog Fax Setup**.

- 3 In the Fax Name or Station Name field, enter the name to be printed on all outgoing faxes.

- 4 In the Fax Number or Station Number field, enter the printer fax number.

- 5 Click **Submit**.

Setting the date and time

You can set the date and time so that they are printed on every fax you send. If there is a power failure, then you may have to reset the date and time.

- 1 Type the printer IP address in the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

- 2 Click **Security > Set Date and Time**.

3 In the Set Date & Time field, enter the current date and time.

4 Click **Submit**.

Note: It is recommended to use the network time.

Configuring the printer to observe daylight saving time

The printer can be set to automatically adjust for daylight saving time:

1 Type the printer IP address in the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Security > Set Date and Time**.

3 Select the **Automatically Observe DST** checkbox, and then enter the DST start and end dates in the Custom Time Zone Setup section.

4 Click **Submit**.

Creating shortcuts

Creating a fax destination shortcut using the Embedded Web Server

Instead of entering the entire phone number of a fax recipient on the printer control panel each time you want to send a fax, you can create a permanent fax destination and assign a shortcut number. A shortcut can be created to a single fax number or a group of fax numbers.

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings > Manage Shortcuts > Fax Shortcut Setup**.

Note: A password may be required. If you do not have an ID and password, get one from your system support person.

3 Type a unique name for the shortcut, and then enter the fax number.

To create a multiple-number shortcut, enter the fax numbers for the group.

Note: Separate each fax number in the group with a semicolon (;).

4 Assign a shortcut number.

If you enter a number that is already in use, then you are prompted to select another number.

5 Click **Add**.

Creating a fax destination shortcut using the touch screen

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

- 3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Fax > enter the fax number

To create a group of fax numbers, touch **Next number**, and then enter the next fax number.

- 4 Navigate to:

 > enter a name for the shortcut > **Done** > **OK** > **Fax It**

Sending a fax

Sending a fax using the touch screen

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

- 3 From the home screen, touch **Fax**.

- 4 Enter the fax number or a shortcut using the touch screen or keypad.

To add recipients, touch **Next Number** and then enter the recipient's telephone number or shortcut number, or search the address book.

Note: To place a dial pause within a fax number, press . The dial pause appears as a comma in the "Fax to" box. Use this feature if you need to dial an outside line first.

- 5 Touch **Fax It**.

Sending a fax using the computer

The printer driver fax option allows you to "print to fax," where the printer will send a queued document as a fax rather than print it. The fax option functions as a normal fax machine, but is controlled through the printer driver instead of the printer control panel.

- 1 With a document open, click **File** > **Print**.

- 2 Select the printer, and then navigate to:

Properties > **Fax** tab > **Enable fax**

- 3 Enter the recipient fax number(s) in the "Fax number(s)" field.

Fax numbers can be entered manually or by using the Phone Book feature.

- 4 If necessary, enter a prefix in the Dialing prefix field.

- 5 Select the appropriate paper size and page orientation.
- 6 If you want to include a cover page with the fax, then select **Include cover page with fax**, and enter the appropriate information.
- 7 Click **OK**.

Notes:

- The Fax option is available for use only with the PostScript driver or the Universal Fax Driver. For information on installing these drivers, see the *Software and Documentation* CD.
- The Fax option must be configured and enabled in the PostScript driver under Configuration tab before it can be used.
- If the **Always display settings prior to faxing** check box is selected, then you will be prompted to verify the recipient information before the fax is sent. If this check box is not selected, then the queued document will be sent automatically as a fax when you click **OK** on the Fax tab.

Sending a fax using shortcuts

Fax shortcuts are just like the speed dial numbers on a telephone or fax machine. A shortcut number (1–99999) can contain a single recipient or multiple recipients.

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.
Note: Do not place postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.
- 3 Press  , and then enter the shortcut number using the keypad.
- 4 Touch **Fax It**.

Sending a fax using the address book

The address book enables you to search for bookmarks and network directory servers.

Note: If the address book feature is not enabled, then contact your system support person.

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.
Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.
- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.
- 3 From the home screen, navigate to:
Fax >  > Browse shortcuts
- 4 Using the virtual keyboard, type the name or part of the name of the person whose fax number you want to find.
Note: Do not attempt to search for multiple names at the same time.
- 5 Touch **Done > Fax It**.

Customizing fax settings

Changing the fax resolution

Settings range from Standard (fastest speed) to Ultra Fine (slowest speed, best quality).

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

- 3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Fax > enter the fax number > **Options**

- 4 From the Resolution area, touch the arrows to change to the resolution you want.

- 5 Touch **Fax It**.

Making a fax lighter or darker

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

- 3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Fax > enter the fax number > **Options**

- 4 From the Darkness area, touch the arrows to adjust the darkness of the fax.

- 5 Touch **Fax It**.

Sending a fax at a scheduled time

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

- 3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Fax > enter the fax number > **Options** > **Advanced Options** > **Delayed Send**

Note: If Fax Mode is set to Fax Server, the Delayed Send button will not appear. Faxes waiting for transmission are listed in the Fax Queue.

- 4 Touch the arrows to adjust the time the fax will be transmitted.

The time is increased or decreased in increments of 30 minutes. If the current time is shown, the left arrow is unavailable.

- 5 Touch **Fax It**.

Note: The document is scanned and then faxed at the scheduled time.

Viewing a fax log

- 1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

- 2 Click **Settings > Reports > Fax Job Log or Fax Call Log**.

Blocking junk faxes

- 1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

- 2 Click **Settings > Fax Settings > Analog Fax Setup > Block No Name Fax**.

Notes:

- This option blocks all incoming faxes that have a private caller ID or no fax station name.
- In the Banned Fax List field, enter the phone numbers or fax station names of specific fax callers you want to block.

Cancelling an outgoing fax

Cancelling a fax while the original documents are still scanning

- When using the ADF, touch **Cancel Job** while **Scanning...** appears.
- When using the scanner glass, touch **Cancel Job** while **Scanning...** appears or while **Scan the Next Page / Finish the Job** appears.

Cancelling a fax after the original documents have been scanned to memory

- 1 On the home screen, touch **Cancel Jobs**.

The Cancel Jobs screen appears.

- 2 Touch the job or jobs you want to cancel.

Only three jobs appear on the screen; touch the down arrow until the job you want appears, and then touch the job you want to cancel.

- 3 Touch **Delete Selected Jobs**.

The Deleting Selected Jobs screen appears, the selected jobs are deleted, and then the home screen appears.

Understanding fax options

Content

This option lets you specify the content type and source of the original document.

Choose content type from Text, Text/Photo, Photo, or Graphics.

- **Text**—Use when the content of the original document is mostly text or line art.
- **Graphics**—Use when the original document is mostly business-type graphics such as pie charts, bar charts, and animations.
- **Text/Photo**—Use when the original document is a mixture of text, graphics, and photos.
- **Photo**—Use when the original document is mostly a photo or an image.

Choose content source from Color Laser, Black/White Laser, Inkjet, Photo/Film, Magazine, Newspaper, Press, or Other.

- **Color Laser**—Use when the original document was printed using a color laser printer.
- **Black/White Laser**—Use when the original document was printed using a mono laser printer.
- **Inkjet**—Use when the original document was printed using an inkjet printer.
- **Photo/Film**—Use when the original document is a photo from film.
- **Magazine**—Use when the original document is from a magazine.
- **Newspaper**—Use when the original document is from a newspaper.
- **Press**—Use when the original document was printed using a printing press.
- **Other**—Use when the original document was printed using an alternate or unknown printer.

Resolution

This option increases how closely the scanner examines the document you want to fax. If you are faxing a photo, a drawing with fine lines, or a document with very small text, then increase the Resolution setting. This will increase the amount of time required for the scan and will increase the quality of the fax output.

- **Standard**—Suitable for most documents
- **Fine 200 dpi**—Recommended for documents with small print
- **Super fine 300 dpi**—Recommended for original documents with fine detail
- **Ultra fine 600 dpi**—Recommended for documents with pictures or photos

Note: **Fine 200 dpi** and **Super fine 300 dpi** is displayed when color printing is selected.

Darkness

This option adjusts how light or dark your faxes will turn out in relation to the original document.

Color

This option enables or disables color in faxing.

Page Setup

This option lets you change the Sides (Duplex), Orientation, and Binding settings.

- **Sides (Duplex)**—Use to specify if the original document is simplex (printed on one page) or duplex (printed on both sides). This also identifies what needs to be scanned for inclusion in the fax.
- **Orientation**—Use to specify the orientation of the original document, and then changes Sides and Binding to match the orientation.
- **Binding**—Use to specify if the original document is bound on the long-edge or short-edge side.

Scan Preview

This option displays the first page of the image before it is included in the fax. When the first page is scanned, the scanning is paused and a preview image appears.

Delayed Send

This lets you send a fax at a later time or date.

- 1 Set up your fax.
- 2 From the home screen, navigate to:
Delayed Send > enter the date and time you want to send your fax > **Done**

Note: If the printer is turned off when the delayed fax is scheduled to be sent, then the fax is sent the next time the printer is turned on.

This setting can be especially useful in sending information to fax lines that are not readily available during certain hours, or when transmission times are cheaper.

Advanced Options

Touching the Advanced Options button opens a screen where you can change the following settings:

- **ADF Skew Fix**—Use to correct slight skew in the scanned image.
- **Advanced Imaging**—Use to adjust the Background Removal, Contrast, Color Balance, Negative Image, Mirror Image, Scan Edge to Edge, Shadow Detail, Sharpness, and Temperature settings before you fax the document.
- **Custom Job**—Use to combine multiple scanning jobs into a single job.
- **Edge Erase**—Use to eliminate smudges or information around the edges of a document. You can choose to eliminate an equal area around all four sides of the paper, or pick a particular edge. Edge Erase will erase whatever is within the area selected, leaving nothing on that portion of the scan.
- **Transmission Log**—Use to print the transmission log or transmission error log.

Holding and forwarding faxes

Holding faxes

This option lets you hold received faxes from printing until they are released. Held faxes can be released manually or at a scheduled day or time.

- 1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

- 2 Click **Settings > Fax Settings > Analog Fax Setup > Holding Faxes**.

- 3 In the Print Faxes Password field, enter a password.

- 4 From the Held Fax Mode menu, select one of the following:

- **Off**
- **Always On**
- **Manual**
- **Scheduled**

- 5 If you selected Scheduled, then continue with the following steps:

- a Click **Fax Holding Schedule**.
- b From the Action menu, select **Hold faxes**.
- c From the Time menu, select the time you want the held faxes released.
- d From the Day(s) menu, select the day you want the held faxes released.

- 6 Click **Add**.

Forwarding a fax

This option lets you print and forward received faxes to a fax number, e-mail address, FTP site, or LDSS.

- 1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

- 2 Click **Settings > Fax Settings**.

- 3 From the Fax Forwarding menu, select one of the following:

- **Print**
- **Print and Forward**
- **Forward**

4 From the “Forward to” menu, select one of the following:

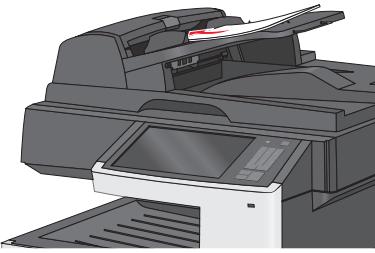
- **Fax**
- **E-mail**
- **FTP**
- **LDSS**
- **eSF**

5 In the Forward to Shortcut field, enter the shortcut number where you want the fax forwarded.

Note: The shortcut number must be valid for the setting selected in the “Forward to” menu.

6 Click **Submit**.

Scanning to an FTP address

ADF	Scanner glass
	
Use the ADF for multiple-page documents.	Use the scanner glass for single pages, small items (such as postcards or photos), transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings).

The scanner lets you scan documents directly to a File Transfer Protocol (FTP) server. Only one FTP address may be sent to the server at a time.

Once an FTP destination has been configured by your system support person, the name of the destination becomes available as a shortcut number, or it is listed as a profile under the Held Jobs icon. An FTP destination could also be another PostScript printer; for example, a color document can be scanned, and then sent to a color printer. Sending a document to an FTP server is similar to sending a fax. The difference is that you are sending the information over your network instead of over the phone line.

Creating shortcuts

Instead of entering the entire FTP site address on the printer control panel each time you want to send a document to an FTP server, you can create a permanent FTP destination and assign a shortcut number. There are two methods for creating shortcut numbers: using the Embedded Web Server and using the printer touch screen.

Creating an FTP shortcut using the Embedded Web Server

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings**.

3 Under Other Settings, click **Manage Shortcuts**.

Note: A password may be required. If you do not have an ID and password, get one from your system support person.

4 Click **FTP Shortcut Setup**.

5 Enter the appropriate information.

6 Enter a shortcut number.

If you enter a number that is already in use, then you are prompted to select another number.

7 Click **Add**.

Creating an FTP shortcut using the touch screen

1 From the home screen, navigate to:

FTP > type the FTP address >  > enter a name for the shortcut > **Done**

2 Verify that the shortcut name and number are correct, and then touch **OK**. If the name or number is incorrect, then touch **Cancel**, and then reenter the information.

If you enter a number that is already in use, then you are prompted to select another number.

3 Touch **Submit**.

Scanning to an FTP address

Scanning to an FTP address using the touch screen

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the home screen, navigate to:

FTP > **FTP** > type the FTP address > **Send It**

Scanning to an FTP address using a shortcut number

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 Press , and then enter the FTP shortcut number.

4 Touch **Send It**.

Scanning to an FTP address using the address book

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, adjust the paper guides.

- 3 From the home screen, navigate to:

FTP > FTP >  > enter the name of recipient > **Browse shortcuts** > name of recipient > **Search**

Understanding FTP options

FTP

This option lets you enter the IP address for the FTP destination.

Note: Addresses should be in dot notation form (for example: **yyy.yyy.yyy.yyy**).

File Name

This option lets you enter the file name of the scanned document.

Original Size

This option opens a screen where you can choose the size of the documents for FTP sending.

- Touch a paper size button to select that size as the Original Size setting. The FTP screen appears with the new setting displayed.
- When “Original Size” is set to Mixed Sizes, you can scan an original document that contains mixed paper sizes.
- When “Original Size” is set to Auto Size Sense, the scanner automatically determines the size of the original document.

Send As

This option sets the output (PDF, TIFF, JPEG or XPS) for the scanned image.

- **PDF**—Creates a single file with multiple pages, viewable with Adobe Reader. Adobe Reader is provided free by Adobe at www.adobe.com.
- **Secure PDF**—Creates an encrypted PDF file that protects the file contents from unauthorized access
- **TIFF**—Creates multiple files or a single file. If Multi-page TIFF is turned off in the Settings menu of the Embedded Web Server, then TIFF saves one page in each file. The file size is usually larger than an equivalent JPEG.
- **JPEG**—Creates and attaches a separate file for each page of your original document, viewable by most Web browsers and graphics programs
- **XPS**—Creates a single XPS file with multiple pages, viewable using an Internet Explorer-hosted viewer and the .NET Framework, or by downloading a third party standalone viewer

Color

This option enables or disables color for the scanned image.

Resolution

This option adjusts the output quality of your file. Increasing the image resolution increases the file size and the time needed to scan your original document. Image resolution can be decreased to reduce the file size.

Darkness

This option adjusts how light or dark your files will turn out in relation to the original document.

Page Setup

This option lets you change the Sides (Duplex), Orientation, and Binding.

- **Sides (Duplex)**— Specifies if the original document is simplex (printed on one page) or duplex (printed on both sides). This also identifies what needs to be scanned.
- **Orientation**— Specifies the orientation of the original document, and then changes the Sides and Binding settings to match the orientation.
- **Binding**— Specifies if the original document is bound on the long-edge or short-edge side.

Content

This option lets you specify the content type and source of the original document.

Choose content type from Text, Text/Photo, Photo, or Graphics.

- **Text**—Use when the content of the original document is mostly text or line art.
- **Graphics**—Use when the original document is mostly business-type graphics such as pie charts, bar charts, and animations.
- **Text/Photo**—Use when the original document is a mixture of text, graphics, and photos.
- **Photo**—Use when the original document is mostly a photo or an image.

Choose content source from Color Laser, Black/White Laser, Inkjet, Photo/Film, Magazine, Newspaper, Press, or Other.

- **Color Laser**—Use when the original document was printed using a color laser printer.
- **Black/White Laser**—Use when the original document was printed using a mono laser printer.
- **Inkjet**—Use when the original document was printed using an inkjet printer.
- **Photo/Film**—Use when the original document is a photo from film.
- **Magazine**—Use when the original document is from a magazine.
- **Newspaper**—Use when the original document is from a newspaper.
- **Press**—Use when the original document was printed using a printing press.
- **Other**—Use when the original document was printed using an alternate or unknown printer.

Scan Preview

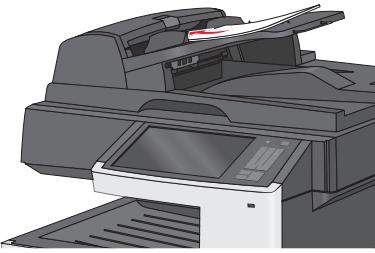
This option displays the first page of the original document before it is scanned completely. When the first page is scanned, the scanning is paused and a preview image appears.

Advanced Options

Touching the Advanced Options button opens a screen where you can change the following settings:

- **ADF Skew Fix**—Use to correct slight skew in the scanned image.
- **Advanced Imaging**—Use to adjust the Background Removal, Color Balance, Color Dropout, Contrast, JPEG Quality, Negative Image, Mirror Image, Scan edge to edge, Shadow Detail, Sharpness, and Temperature image output settings before sending the image file.
- **Edge Erase**—Use to eliminate smudges or information around the edges of a document. You can choose to eliminate an equal area around all four sides of the paper, or pick a particular edge. Edge Erase will erase whatever is within the area selected, leaving nothing on that portion of the scan.
- **Transmission Log**—Use to print the transmission log or transmission error log.
- **Custom Job**—Use to combine multiple scanning jobs into a single job.

Scanning to a computer or flash drive

ADF	Scanner glass
	
Use the ADF for multiple-page documents.	Use the scanner glass for single pages, small items (such as postcards or photos), transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings).

The scanner lets you scan documents directly to a computer or a flash drive. The computer does not have to be directly connected to the printer for you to receive Scan to PC images. You can scan the document back to the computer over the network by creating a scan profile on the computer and then downloading the profile to the printer.

Scanning to a computer

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Scan Profile > Create**.

3 Select your scan settings, and then click **Next**.

4 Select a location on your computer where you want to save the scanned output file.

5 Enter a scan name.

The scan name is the name that appears in the Scan Profile list on the display.

6 Click **Submit**.

7 Review the instructions on the Scan Profile screen.

A shortcut number was automatically assigned when you clicked **Submit**. You can use this shortcut number when you are ready to scan your documents.

- a** Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

- b** If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

- c Press  #, and then enter the shortcut number using the keypad, or touch **Held Jobs** on the home screen, and then touch **Profiles**.
 - d After entering the shortcut number, the scanner scans and sends the document to the directory or program you specified. If you touched **Profiles** on the home screen, then locate your shortcut on the list.
- 8 Return to the computer to view the file.

The output file is saved in the location or launched in the program you specified.

Scanning to a flash drive

- 1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

- 2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.
- 3 Insert the flash drive into the USB port on the front of the printer.
The USB Drive home screen appears.
- 4 Select the destination folder, and then touch **Scan to USB drive**.
- 5 Adjust the scan settings.
- 6 Touch **Scan It**.

Understanding the Scan Center features

The Scan Center software lets you modify scan settings and select where to send the scanned output. Scan settings modified with the Scan Center software can be saved and used for other scan jobs.

The following features are available:

- Scan and send images to your computer
- Convert scanned images to text
- Preview the scanned image and adjust the brightness and contrast
- Make larger scans without losing detail
- Scan two-sided documents

Using the ScanBack Utility

You can use the Lexmark ScanBack™ Utility to create scan-to-PC profiles. The ScanBack Utility can be downloaded from the Lexmark Web site on <http://support.lexmark.com>.

- 1 Set up a scan-to-PC profile:
 - a Launch the ScanBack Utility.
 - b Select the printer.
If no printers are listed, then contact your system support person, or click **Setup** to manually search for an IP address or host name.

- c Follow the instructions on your computer screen to define the type of document being scanned and what kind of output you want to create.
- d Select any of the following:
 - **Show MFP Instructions**—View or print the instructions.
 - **Create Shortcut**—Save this group of settings to use again.
- e Click **Finish**.

A dialog box appears with your scan profile information and the status of the received images.

2 Scan original documents:

- a Load all pages in the ADF or on the scanner glass.
- b From the printer control panel, navigate to:
Scan/Email > Profiles > select your scan profile > **Submit**

Note: The output file is saved in a directory or launched in the application you specified.

Understanding scan profile options

Original Size

This option sets the size of the documents you are going to scan. When Original Size is set to Mixed Sizes, you can scan an original document that contains mixed paper sizes (letter- and legal-size pages).

Resolution

This option adjusts the output quality of your file. Increasing the image resolution increases the file size and the time needed to scan your original document. Image resolution can be decreased to reduce the file size.

Color

This option enables or disables color for the scanned image.

Content

This option lets you specify the content type and source of the original document.

Choose content type from Text, Text/Photo, Photo, or Graphics.

- **Text**—Use when the content of the original document is mostly text or line art.
- **Graphics**—Use when the original document is mostly business-type graphics such as pie charts, bar charts, and animations.
- **Text/Photo**—Use when the original document is a mixture of text, graphics, and photos.
- **Photo**—Use when the original document is mostly a photo or an image.

Choose content source from Color Laser, Black/White Laser, Inkjet, Photo/Film, Magazine, Newspaper, Press, or Other.

- **Color Laser**—Use when the original document was printed using a color laser printer.
- **Black/White Laser**—Use when the original document was printed using a mono laser printer.

- **Inkjet**—Use when the original document was printed using an inkjet printer.
- **Photo/Film**—Use when the original document is a photo from film.
- **Magazine**—Use when the original document is from a magazine.
- **Newspaper**—Use when the original document is from a newspaper.
- **Press**—Use when the original document was printed using a printing press.
- **Other**—Use when the original document was printed using an alternate or unknown printer.

Darkness

This option adjusts how light or dark your scanned documents will turn out in relation to the original document.

Page Setup

This option lets you change the Sides (Duplex), Orientation, and Binding.

- **Sides (Duplex)**— Use this to specify if the original document is simplex (printed on one page) or duplex (printed on both sides). This also identifies what needs to be scanned for inclusion in the e-mail.
- **Orientation**— Use this to specify the orientation of the original document, and then change **Sides** and **Binding** to match the orientation.
- **Binding**— Use this to specify if the original document is bound on the long-edge or short-edge of the page.

Scan Preview

This option displays the first page of the image before it is included in the e-mail. When the first page is scanned, the scanning is paused and a preview image appears.

Advanced Options

Touching the Advanced Options button opens a screen where you can change the following settings:

- **ADF Skew Fix**— Use this to correct slight skew in the scanned image.
- **Advanced Imaging**— Use this to change or adjust Background Removal, Color Balance, Color Dropout, Contrast, JPEG Quality, Mirror Image, Negative Image, Scan Edge to Edge, Shadow Detail, Sharpness, and Temperature before scanning a document.
- **Custom Job**—Use this to combine multiple scan jobs into a single scan job.
- **Edge Erase**—Use this to remove smudges or information around the edges of a document. You can choose to eliminate an equal area around all four sides of the paper, or pick a particular edge. Edge Erase will erase whatever is within the area selected, leaving nothing on that portion of the scanned image.
- **Transmission Log**—Use this to print the transmission log or transmission error log.

Understanding printer menus

Menus list

Supplies	Paper Menu	Reports	Network/Ports
Replace Supply	Default Source	Menu Settings Page	Active NIC
Cyan Cartridge	Paper Size/Type	Device Statistics	Standard Network or Network [x] ¹
Magenta Cartridge	Configure MP	Network Setup Page	Standard USB
Yellow Cartridge	Substitute Size	Network [x] Setup Page	Parallel [x]
Black Cartridge	Paper Weight	Shortcut List	Serial [x]
Cyan Imaging Unit	Paper Loading	Fax Job Log	SMTP Setup
Magenta Imaging Unit	Custom Types	Fax Call Log	
Yellow Imaging Unit	Custom Names	Copy Shortcuts	
Black Imaging Unit	Custom Scan Sizes	E-mail Shortcuts	
Separator Pick Assembly and Roller	Universal Setup	Fax Shortcuts	
Waste Toner Bottle		FTP Shortcuts	
Fuser		Profiles List	
Transfer Module		Print Fonts	
Maintenance Kit		Print Directory	
		Asset Report	
Security	Settings	Help	Manage Shortcuts
Edit Security Setups	General Settings	Print All Guides	Fax Shortcuts
Miscellaneous Security Settings	Copy Settings	Copy Guide	E-mail Shortcuts
Confidential Print	Fax Settings	E-mail Guide	FTP Shortcuts
Disk Wiping	E-mail Settings	Fax Guide	Copy Shortcuts
Security Audit Log	FTP Settings	FTP Guide	Profile Shortcuts
Set Date and Time	Flash Drive Menu	Print Defects Guide	
	Print Settings	Information Guide	
		Supplies Guide	

Option Card Menu

A list of installed *download emulators* (DLEs) appears.²

¹ Depending on the printer setup, this menu appears as Standard Network or Network [x].

² This menu appears only when one or more DLEs are installed.

Supplies menu

Menu item	Description
Replace Supply Separator Pick Assembly and Roller Waste Toner Bottle	Lets you reset the supply counter for the separator pick assembly and roller <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Select Yes to reset the supply counter.• Select No to exit.
Cyan Cartridge Early Warning Low Invalid Near End of Life Replace Missing Defective OK Unsupported	Shows the status of the cyan toner cartridge
Magenta Cartridge Early Warning Low Invalid Near End of Life Replace Missing Defective OK Unsupported	Shows the status of the magenta toner cartridge
Yellow Cartridge Early Warning Low Invalid Near End of Life Replace Missing Defective OK Unsupported	Shows the status of the yellow toner cartridge

Menu item	Description
Black Cartridge Early Warning Low Invalid Near End of Life Replace Missing Defective OK Unsupported	Shows the status of the black toner cartridge
Cyan Imaging Unit Early Warning Low Replace Missing OK	Shows the status of the cyan imaging unit
Magenta Imaging Unit Early Warning Low Replace Missing OK	Shows the status of the magenta imaging unit
Yellow Imaging Unit Early Warning Low Replace Missing OK	Shows the status of the yellow imaging unit
Black Imaging Unit Early Warning Low Replace Missing OK	Shows the status of the black imaging unit
Separator Pick Assembly and Roller OK Replace	Shows the status of the separator pick assembly and roller
Waste Toner Bottle Near Full Replace Missing OK	Shows the status of the waste toner bottle

Menu item	Description
Fuser Early Warning Low Replace Missing OK	Shows the status of the fuser
Transfer Module Early Warning Low Replace Missing OK	Shows the status of the transfer module
Maintenance Kit OK Replace	Shows the status of the maintenance kit

Paper menu

Default Source menu

Menu item	Description
Default Source Tray [x] MP Feeder Manual Paper Manual Envelope	Sets a default paper source for all print jobs Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tray 1 (standard tray) is the factory default setting. • From the Paper menu, Configure MP feeder must be set to Cassette for MP feeder to appear as a menu setting. • If the same size and type of paper are in two trays and the Paper Size and Paper Type settings match, then the trays are automatically linked. When one tray is empty, the print job continues using the linked tray.

Paper Size/Type menu

Menu item	Description
Tray [x] Size (LEF) Letter Legal JIS B4 A3 11 x 17 Universal (LEF) A4	Specifies the paper size loaded in each tray Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Letter is the US factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting. • For trays with automatic size sensing, only the size detected by the hardware appears. • If the same size and type of paper are in two trays and the Paper Size and Paper Type settings match, then the trays are automatically linked. When one tray is empty, the print job continues using the linked tray.
Tray [x] Type Plain Paper Card Stock Transparency Recycled Glossy Heavy Glossy Labels Vinyl Labels Bond Letterhead Preprinted Colored Paper Light Paper Heavy Paper Rough/Cotton Paper Custom Type [x]	Specifies the type of paper loaded in each tray Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Plain Paper is the factory default setting for Tray 1. Custom Type [x] is the factory default setting for all other trays. • If available, a user-defined name appears instead of Custom Type [x]. • If the same size and type of paper are in two trays and the Paper Size and Paper Type settings match, then the trays are automatically linked. When one tray is empty, the print job continues using the linked tray.

Note: Only installed trays are listed in this menu.

Menu item	Description
MP Feeder Size Letter Legal Executive JIS B4 A3 11 x 17 Oficio (México) Folio Statement Universal 7 3/4 Envelope 9 Envelope 10 Envelope DL Envelope C5 Envelope B5 Envelope Other Envelope A4 A5 A6 JIS B5	<p>Specifies the paper size loaded in the multipurpose feeder</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Letter is the US factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting. • From the Paper menu, Configure MP Feeder must be set to Cassette for MP Feeder to appear as a menu setting.
MP Feeder Type Plain Paper Card Stock Transparency Recycled Glossy Heavy Glossy Labels Vinyl Labels Bond Envelope Rough Envelope Letterhead Preprinted Colored Paper Light Paper Heavy Paper Rough/Cotton Paper Custom Type [x]	<p>Specifies the type of paper loaded in the multipurpose feeder</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Plain Paper is the factory default setting. • From the Paper menu, Configure MP Feeder must be set to Cassette for MP Feeder to appear as a menu setting.

Note: Only installed trays are listed in this menu.

Menu item	Description
Manual Paper Size <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Letter Legal Executive JIS B4 A3 11 x 17 Oficio (México) Folio Statement Universal A4 A5 A6 JIS B5 	<p>Specifies the size of the paper loaded manually</p> <p>Note: Letter is the US factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting.</p>
Manual Paper Type <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Plain Paper Card Stock Transparency Recycled Glossy Heavy Glossy Labels Vinyl Labels Bond Letterhead Preprinted Colored Paper Light Paper Heavy Paper Rough/Cotton Paper Custom Type [x] 	<p>Specifies the type of paper loaded manually</p> <p>Note: Plain Paper is the factory default setting.</p>
Manual Envelope Size <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 10 Envelope DL Envelope C5 Envelope B5 Envelope 7 3/4 Envelope 9 Envelope Other Envelope 	<p>Specifies the size of the envelope loaded manually</p> <p>Note: 10 Envelope is the US factory default setting. DL Envelope is the international factory default setting.</p>
<p>Note: Only installed trays are listed in this menu.</p>	

Menu item	Description
Manual Envelope Type Envelope Rough Envelope Custom Type [x]	Specifies the type of envelope loaded manually Note: Envelope is the factory default setting.

Note: Only installed trays are listed in this menu.

Configure MP menu

Menu item	Description
Configure MP Cassette Manual First	Determines when the printer selects paper from the multipurpose feeder Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cassette is the factory default setting. Cassette configures the multipurpose feeder as the automatic paper source. • Manual sets the multipurpose feeder only for manual feed print jobs. • First configures the multipurpose feeder as the primary paper source.

Substitute Size menu

Menu item	Description
Substitute Size All Listed Off Statement/A5 Letter/A4 11 x 17/A3	Substitutes a specified paper size if the requested paper size is not available Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • All Listed is the factory default setting. All available substitutions are allowed. • Off indicates that no size substitutions are allowed. • Setting a size substitution lets the print job continue without a Change Paper message appearing.

Paper Weight menu

Menu item	Description
Plain Weight Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the plain paper loaded Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Card Stock Weight Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the card stock loaded Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Normal is the factory default setting. • Settings appear only if card stock is supported.

Menu item	Description
Transparency Weight Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the transparencies loaded Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Recycled Weight Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the recycled paper loaded Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Glossy Weight Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the glossy paper loaded Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Heavy Glossy Weight Heavy	Specifies the relative weight of the glossy paper loaded Note: Heavy is the factory default setting.
Labels Weight Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the labels loaded Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Vinyl Labels Weight Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of vinyl labels loaded Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Bond Weight Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the bond paper loaded Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Envelope Weight Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the envelopes loaded Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Rough Envelope Weight Heavy Light Normal	Specifies the relative weight of the envelopes loaded Note: Heavy is the factory default setting.
Letterhead Weight Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the letterhead loaded Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Preprinted Weight Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the preprinted paper loaded Note: Normal is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Colored Weight Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the colored paper loaded Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Light Weight Light	Specifies the relative weight of the paper loaded Note: Light is the factory default setting.
Heavy Weight Heavy	Specifies the relative weight of the paper loaded Note: Heavy is the factory default setting.
Rough/Cotton Weight Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the cotton paper loaded Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Custom [x] Weight Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the custom paper loaded Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Normal is the factory default setting. • Settings appear only if the custom type is supported.

Paper Loading menu

Menu item	Description
Card Stock Loading Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Card Stock as the paper type Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Recycled Loading Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Recycled as the paper type Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Glossy Loading Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Glossy as the paper type Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Heavy Glossy Loading Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Heavy Glossy as the paper type Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Labels Loading Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Labels as the paper type Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Notes:	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Duplex sets the printer default to 2-sided printing for every print job unless 1-sided printing is selected from Print Properties. • If Duplex is selected, then all print jobs are sent through the duplex unit, including 1-sided print jobs. 	

Menu item	Description
Vinyl Labels Loading Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Vinyl Labels as the paper type Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Bond Loading Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Bond as the paper type Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Letterhead Loading Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Letterhead as the paper type Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Preprinted Loading Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Preprinted as the paper type Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Colored Loading Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Colored as the paper type Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Light Loading Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Light as the paper type Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Heavy Loading Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Heavy as the paper type Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Rough/Cotton Loading Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Rough or Cotton as the paper type Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Custom [x] Loading Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Custom [x] as the paper type Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off is the factory default setting. • Custom [x] Loading is available only if the custom paper type is supported.
Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Duplex sets the printer default to 2-sided printing for every print job unless 1-sided printing is selected from Print Properties. • If Duplex is selected, then all print jobs are sent through the duplex unit, including 1-sided print jobs. 	

Custom Types menu

Menu item	Description
Custom Type [x] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Paper Card Stock Transparency Glossy Rough/Cotton Labels Vinyl Labels Envelope 	<p>Associates a paper or specialty media type with a factory default Custom Type [x] name or a user-defined Custom Name created from the Embedded Web Server or from MarkVision™ Professional</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Paper is the factory default setting. • The custom media type must be supported by the selected tray or multipurpose feeder in order to print from that source.
Recycled <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Paper Card Stock Transparency Glossy Rough/Cotton Labels Vinyl Labels Envelope 	<p>Specifies a paper type when the Recycled setting is selected in other menus</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Paper is the factory default setting. • The custom media type must be supported by the selected tray or multipurpose feeder in order to print from that source.

Custom Names menu

Menu item	Definition
Custom Name [x] [none]	Specify a custom name for a paper type. This name replaces the Custom Type [x] name in the printer menus.

Custom Scan Sizes menu

Menu item	Description
Custom Scan Size [x] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Scan Size Name Width 1–11.69 inches (25–297 mm) Height 1–17 inches (25–432 mm) Orientation <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Portrait Landscape 2 scans per side <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off On 	<p>Specifies a custom scan size name, scan sizes, and options. The custom scan size name replaces Custom Scan Size [x] in the printer menus.</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 11.69 inches is the US factory default setting for Width. 297 millimeters is the international factory default setting for Width. • 17 inches is the US factory default setting for Height. 432 millimeters is the international factory default setting for Height. • Portrait is the factory default setting for Orientation. • Off is the factory default setting for 2 scans per side.

Universal Setup menu

Menu item	Description
Units of Measure Inches Millimeters	Identifies the unit of measure Note: Inches is the US factory default setting. Millimeters is the international factory default setting.
Portrait Width 3–48 inches 76–1219 mm	Sets the portrait width Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 11.69 inches is the US factory default setting. Inches can be increased in 0.01-inch increments. 296.9 mm is the international factory default setting. Millimeters can be increased in 1-mm increments. If the width exceeds the maximum, then the printer uses the maximum width allowed.
Portrait Height 3–48 inches 76–1219 mm	Sets the portrait height Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 48 inches is the US factory default setting. Inches can be increased in 0.01-inch increments. 1219 mm is the international factory default setting. Millimeters can be increased in 1-mm increments. If the height exceeds the maximum, then the printer uses the maximum height allowed.
Feed Direction Short Edge Long Edge	Specifies the feed direction Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Short Edge is the factory default setting. Long Edge appears only if the longest edge is shorter than the maximum width supported by the tray.

Reports menu

Reports menu

Menu item	Description
Menu Settings Page	Prints a report containing information about the paper loaded into trays, installed memory, total page count, alarms, timeouts, printer control panel language, TCP/IP address, status of supplies, status of the network connection, and other information
Device Statistics	Prints a report containing printer statistics such as supply information and details about printed pages

Menu item	Description
Network Setup Page	<p>Prints a report containing information about the network printer settings, such as the TCP/IP address information</p> <p>Note: This menu item appears only in network printers or printers connected to print servers.</p>
Network [x] Setup Page	<p>Prints a report containing information about the network printer settings, such as the TCP/IP address information</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • This menu item is available when there is more than one network option installed. • This menu item appears only in network printers or printers connected to print servers.
Shortcut List	Prints a report containing information about configured shortcuts
Fax Job Log	<p>Prints a report containing information about the last 200 completed faxes</p> <p>Note: This menu item is available only when Enable Job Log is set to On in the Fax Settings menu.</p>
Fax Call Log	<p>Prints a report containing information about the last 100 attempted, received, and blocked calls</p> <p>Note: This menu item is available only when Enable Job Log is set to On in the Fax Settings menu.</p>
Copy Shortcuts	Prints a report containing information about copy shortcuts
E-mail Shortcuts	Prints a report containing information about e-mail shortcuts
Fax Shortcuts	Prints a report containing information about fax shortcuts
FTP Shortcuts	Prints a report containing information about FTP shortcuts
Profiles List	Prints a list of profiles stored in the printer
Print Fonts	Prints a report of all the fonts available for the printer language currently set in the printer
Print Directory	<p>Prints a list of all the resources stored on an optional flash memory card or printer hard disk</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Job Buffer Size must be set to 100%. • Make sure the optional flash memory or printer hard disk is installed correctly and working.
Asset Report	Prints a report containing asset information including the printer serial number and model name. The report contains text and UPC barcodes that can be scanned into an asset database.

Network/Ports menu

Active NIC menu

Menu item	Description
Active NIC Auto [list of available network cards]	Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Auto is the factory default setting. • This menu item appears only if an optional network card is installed.

Standard Network or Network [x] menus

Note: Only active ports appear in this menu; all inactive ports are omitted.

Menu item	Description
PCL SmartSwitch On Off	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PCL emulation when a print job requires it, regardless of the default printer language Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On is the factory default setting. • When Off is used, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PostScript emulation if PS SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if PS SmartSwitch is set to Off.
PS SmartSwitch On Off	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PS emulation when a print job requires it, regardless of the default printer language Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On is the factory default setting. • When Off is used, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PCL emulation if PCL SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if PCL SmartSwitch is set to Off.
NPA Mode Auto Off	Sets the printer to perform the special processing required for bidirectional communication following the conventions defined by the NPA protocol Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Auto is the factory default setting. • Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.

Menu item	Description
Network Buffer Auto 3KB to [maximum size allowed]	<p>Sets the size of the network input buffer</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Auto is the factory default setting. • The value can be changed in 1-KB increments. • The maximum size allowed depends on the amount of memory in the printer, the size of the other link buffers, and whether Resource Save is set to On or Off. • To increase the maximum size range for the Network Buffer, disable or reduce the size of the parallel, serial, and USB buffers. • Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.
Job Buffering Off On Auto	<p>Temporarily stores print jobs on the printer hard disk before printing. This menu only appears if a formatted disk is installed.</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off is the factory default setting. • On buffers print jobs on the printer hard disk. • Auto buffers print jobs only if the printer is busy processing data from another input port. • Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.
Mac Binary PS Auto On Off	<p>Sets the printer to process Macintosh binary PostScript print jobs</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Auto is the factory default setting. • Off filters print jobs using the standard protocol. • On processes raw binary PostScript print jobs.
Standard Network Setup Reports Network Card TCP/IP IPv6 Wireless AppleTalk	<p>Displays and sets the printer network settings.</p> <p>Note: The Wireless menu appears only when the printer is connected to a wireless network.</p>
Network [x] Setup Reports Network Card TCP/IP IPv6 Wireless AppleTalk	

Network Reports menu

This menu is available from the Network/Ports menu:

Network/Ports > Standard Network or Network [x] > Standard Network Setup or Network Setup > Reports or Network Reports

Menu item	Description
Print Setup Page	Prints a report containing information about the network printer settings, such as the TCP/IP address

Network Card menu

This menu is available from the Network/Ports menu:

Network/Ports > Standard Network or Network [x] > Standard Network Setup or Network [x] Setup > Network Card

Menu item	Description
View Card Status	Lets you view the connection status of the Network Card
Connected	
Disconnected	
View Card Speed	Lets you view the speed of a currently active network card
Network Address	Lets you view the network addresses
UAA	
LAA	
Job Timeout	Sets the amount of time in seconds before a network print job is canceled
0	Note: 90 seconds is the factory default setting.
10–225	
Banner Page	Allows the printer to print a banner page
Off	Note: Off is the factory default setting.
On	

TCP/IP menu

This menu is available from the Network/Ports menu:

Network/Ports > Standard Network or Network [x] > Standard Network Setup or Network [x] Setup > TCP/IP

Note: This menu is available only in network models or printers attached to print servers.

Menu item	Description
Activate	Activates TCP/IP
On	Note: On is the factory default setting.
Off	
Set Hostname	Lets you set the current TCP/IP hostname
	Note: This can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.

Menu item	Description
IP Address	Lets you view or change the current TCP/IP address Note: Manually setting the IP address sets the Enable DHCP and Enable Auto IP settings to Off. It also sets Enable BOOTP and Enable RARP to Off on systems that support BOOTP and RARP.
Netmask	Lets you view or change the current TCP/IP netmask
Gateway	Lets you view or change the current TCP/IP gateway
Enable DHCP	Specifies the DHCP address and parameter assignment setting On Off Note: On is the factory default setting.
Enable RARP	Specifies the RARP address assignment setting On Off Note: On is the factory default setting.
Enable BOOTP	Specifies the BOOTP address assignment setting On Off Note: On is the factory default setting.
Enable AutoIP	Specifies the Zero Configuration Networking setting Yes No Note: Yes is the factory default setting.
Enable FTP/TFTP	Enables the built-in FTP server, which allows you to send files to the printer using File Transfer Protocol. Note: Yes is the factory default setting.
Enable HTTP Server	Enables the built-in web server (Embedded Web Server). When enabled, the printer can be monitored and managed remotely using a web browser. Note: Yes is the factory default setting.
WINS Server Address	Lets you view or change the current WINS server address
Enable DDNS	Lets you view or change the current DDNS setting Yes No Note: Yes is the factory default setting.
Enable mDNS	Lets you view or change the current mDNS setting Yes No Note: Yes is the factory default setting.
DNS Server Address	Lets you view or change the current DNS server address
Enable HTTPS	Lets you view or change the current HTTPS setting Yes No Note: Yes is the factory default setting.

IPv6 menu

This menu is available from the Network/Ports menu:

Network/Ports > Standard Network or Network [x] > Standard Network Setup or Network [x] Setup > IPv6

Note: This menu is available only for network models or printers attached to print servers.

Menu item	Description
Enable IPv6 On Off	Enables IPv6 in the printer Note: On is the factory default setting.
Auto Configuration On Off	Specifies whether the network adapter accepts the automatic IPv6 address configuration entries provided by a router Note: On is the factory default setting.
Set Hostname	Lets you set the hostname
View Address	Note: These settings can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.
View Router Address	
Enable DHCPv6 On Off	Enables DHCPv6 in the printer Note: On is the factory default setting.

Wireless menu

Use the following menu items to view or configure the wireless internal print server settings.

Note: This menu is available only for models connected to a wireless network.

The Wireless menu is available from the Network/Ports menu:

Network/Ports > Standard Network or Network [x] > Standard Network Setup or Network [x] Setup > Wireless

Menu item	Description
WPS PBC Mode	Lets you connect the printer to a wireless network by pressing buttons on both the printer and the access point (wireless router) within a given period of time
WPS PIN Mode	Lets you connect the printer to a wireless network by using a PIN on the printer and entering it into the wireless settings of the access point
WPS Auto Detect Disable Enable	Automatically detects the connection method that an access point with WPS uses— WPS Push Button Configuration (PBC) or WPS Personal Identification Number (PIN) Note: Disable is the factory default setting.
Network Mode Ad hoc Infrastructure	Specifies the network mode Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ad hoc is the factory default setting. This configures wireless connection directly between the printer and a computer. • Infrastructure lets the printer access a network using an access point.

Menu item	Description
Compatibility 802.11b/g/n 802.11n 802.11b/g	Specifies the wireless standard for the wireless network Note: The 802.11b/g/n is the factory default setting.
Choose Network [list of available networks]	Lets you select an available network for the printer to use
View Signal Quality	Lets you view the quality of the wireless connection
View Security Mode	Lets you view the encryption method that a wireless network uses

Note: *Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS)* is a simple and secure configuration that allows you to establish a wireless network and enable network security without requiring prior knowledge of Wi-Fi technology. It is no longer necessary to configure the network name (SSID) and WEP key or WPA passphrase for network devices.

AppleTalk menu

This menu is available from the Network/Ports menu:

Network/Ports > Standard Network or Network [x] > Standard Network Setup or Network [x] Setup > AppleTalk

Menu item	Description
Activate Yes No	Activates AppleTalk support Note: Yes is the factory default setting.
View Name	Shows the assigned AppleTalk name Note: The name can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.
View Address	Shows the assigned AppleTalk address Note: The address can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.
Set Zone [default] [list of zones available on the network]	Provides a list of AppleTalk zones available on the network Note: When “default” is selected, the printer uses the AppleTalk zone that the router identifies as the default zone for the network. If no default zone exists, then the zone marked with an * is the default setting.

Standard USB menu

Menu item	Description
PCL SmartSwitch On Off	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PCL emulation when a print job received through a USB port requires it, regardless of the default printer language Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On is the factory default setting. • When set to Off, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PostScript emulation if the PS SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if the PS SmartSwitch is set to Off.

Menu item	Description
PS SmartSwitch On Off	<p>Sets the printer to automatically switch to PS emulation when a print job received through a USB port requires it, regardless of the default printer language</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On is the factory default setting. • When set to Off, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PCL emulation if the PCL SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if the PCL SmartSwitch is set to Off.
NPA Mode Auto On Off	<p>Sets the printer to perform the special processing required for bidirectional communication following the conventions defined by the NPA protocol</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Auto is the factory default setting. Auto sets the printer to examine data, determine the format, and then process it appropriately. • Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.
USB Buffer Auto 3KB to [maximum size allowed] Disabled	<p>Sets the size of the USB input buffer</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Auto is the factory default setting. • Disabled turns off job buffering. Any jobs already buffered on the printer hard disk are printed before normal processing resumes. • The USB buffer size value can be changed in 1-KB increments. • The maximum size allowed depends on the amount of memory in the printer, the size of the other link buffers, and whether Resource Save is set to On or Off. • To increase the maximum size range for the USB Buffer, disable or reduce the size of the parallel, serial, and network buffers. • Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.
Job Buffering Off On Auto	<p>Temporarily stores print jobs on the printer hard disk before printing</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off is the factory default setting. • On buffers jobs on the printer hard disk. • Auto buffers print jobs only if the printer is busy processing data from another input port. • Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.
Mac Binary PS Auto On Off	<p>Sets the printer to process Macintosh binary PostScript print jobs</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Auto is the factory default setting. • On processes raw binary PostScript print jobs. • Off filters print jobs using the standard protocol.

Menu item	Description
ENA Address yyy.yyy.yyy.yyy	Sets the network address information for an external print server Note: This menu item is available only if the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.
ENA Netmask yyy.yyy.yyy.yyy	Sets the netmask information for an external print server Note: This menu item is available only if the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.
ENA Gateway yyy.yyy.yyy.yyy	Sets the gateway information for an external print server Note: This menu item is available only if the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.

Parallel [x] menu

Menu item	Description
PCL SmartSwitch On Off	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PCL emulation when a print job received through a serial port requires it, regardless of the default printer language Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On is the factory default setting. • When set to Off, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PostScript emulation if PS SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if PS SmartSwitch is set to Off.
PS SmartSwitch On Off	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PS emulation when a print job received through a serial port requires it, regardless of the default printer language Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On is the factory default setting. • When set to Off, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PCL emulation if PCL SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if PCL SmartSwitch is set to Off.
NPA Mode Auto On Off	Sets the printer to perform the special processing required for bidirectional communication following the conventions defined by the NPA protocol Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Auto is the factory default setting. • Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.

Menu item	Description
Parallel Buffer Auto 3KB to [maximum size allowed] Disabled	<p>Sets the size of the parallel input buffer</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Auto is the factory default setting. • Disabled turns off job buffering. Any print jobs already buffered on the printer hard disk are printed before normal processing resumes. • The parallel buffer size setting can be changed in 1-KB increments. • The maximum size allowed depends on the amount of memory in the printer, the size of the other link buffers, and whether Resource Save is set to On or Off. • To increase the maximum size range for the Parallel Buffer, disable or reduce the size of the USB, serial, and network buffers. • Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.
Job Buffering Off On Auto	<p>Temporarily stores print jobs on the printer hard disk before printing</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off is the factory default setting. • On buffers print jobs on the printer hard disk. • Auto buffers print jobs only if the printer is busy processing data from another input port. • Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.
Advanced Status On Off	<p>Enables bidirectional communication through the parallel port</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On is the factory default setting. • Off disables parallel port negotiation.
Protocol Fastbytes Standard	<p>Specifies the parallel port protocol</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fastbytes is the factory default setting. It provides compatibility with most existing parallel ports and is the recommended setting. • Standard tries to resolve parallel port communication problems.
Honor Init Off On	<p>Determines if the printer honors printer hardware initialization requests from the computer</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off is the factory default setting. • The computer requests initialization by activating the Init signal from the parallel port. Many personal computers activate the Init signal each time the computer is turned on.
Parallel Mode 2 On Off	<p>Determines if the parallel port data is sampled on the leading or trailing edge of a strobe</p> <p>Note: On is the factory default setting.</p>

Menu item	Description
Mac Binary PS Auto On Off	Sets the printer to process Macintosh binary PostScript print jobs Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Auto is the factory default setting. • Off filters print jobs using the standard protocol. • On processes raw binary PostScript print jobs.
ENA Address yyyy.yyyy.yyyy.yyyy	Sets the network address information for an external print server Note: This menu item is available only if the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.
ENA Netmask yyyy.yyyy.yyyy.yyyy	Sets the netmask information for an external print server Note: This menu item is available only if the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.
ENA gateway yyyy.yyyy.yyyy.yyyy	Sets the gateway information for an external print server Note: This menu item is available only if the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.

Serial [x] menu

Menu item	Description
PCL SmartSwitch On Off	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PCL emulation when a print job received through a serial port requires it, regardless of the default printer language Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On is the factory default setting. • When set to Off, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PostScript emulation if PS SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if PS SmartSwitch is set to Off.
PS SmartSwitch On Off	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PS emulation when a print job received through a serial port requires it, regardless of the default printer language Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On is the factory default setting. • When set to Off, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PCL emulation if PCL SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if PCL SmartSwitch is set to Off.

Menu item	Description
NPA Mode Auto On Off	<p>Sets the printer to perform the special processing required for bidirectional communication following the conventions defined by the NPA protocol</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Auto is the factory default setting. Auto sets the printer to examine data, determine the format, and then processes it appropriately. • When set to On, the printer performs NPA processing. If the data is not in NPA format, it is rejected as bad data. • When set to Off, the printer does not perform NPA processing. • Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.
Serial Buffer Auto 3KB to [maximum size allowed] Disabled	<p>Sets the size of the serial input buffer</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Auto is the factory default setting. • Disabled turns off job buffering. Any jobs already buffered on the disk are printed before normal processing is resumed. • The serial buffer size setting can be changed in 1-KB increments. • The maximum size allowed depends on the amount of memory in the printer, the size of the other link buffers, and whether Resource Save is set to On or Off. • To increase the maximum size range for the Serial Buffer, disable or reduce the size of the parallel, serial, and network buffers. • Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.
Job Buffering Off On Auto	<p>Temporarily stores print jobs on the printer hard disk before printing</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off is the factory default setting. The printer does not buffer print jobs on the printer hard disk. • On buffers print jobs on the printer hard disk. • Auto buffers print jobs only if the printer is busy processing data from another input port. • Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.
Protocol DTR DTR/DSR XON/XOFF XON/XOFF/DTR XONXOFF/DTRDSR	<p>Selects the hardware and software handshaking settings for the serial port</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DTR is the factory default setting. • DTR/DSR is a hardware handshaking setting. • XON/XOFF is a software handshaking setting. • XON/XOFF/DTR and XON/XOFF/DTR/DSR are combined hardware and software handshaking settings.

Menu item	Description
Robust XON Off On	Determines whether the printer communicates availability to the computer Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off is the factory default setting. This menu item applies only to the serial port if Serial Protocol is set to XON/XOFF.
Baud 9600 19200 38400 57600 115200 138200 172800 230400 345600 1200 2400 4800	Specifies the rate at which data can be received through the serial port Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 9600 is the factory default setting. 138200, 172800, 230400, and 345600 baud rates are only displayed in the Standard Serial menu. These settings do not appear in the Serial Option 1, Serial Option 2, or Serial Option 3 menus.
Data Bits 8 7	Specifies the number of data bits sent in each transmission frame Note: 8 is the factory default setting.
Parity None Ignore Even Odd	Sets the parity for serial input and output data frames Note: None is the factory default setting.
Honor DSR Off On	Determines whether the printer uses the DSR Signal Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off is the factory default setting. DSR is a handshaking signal used by most serial cables. The serial port uses DSR to distinguish data sent by the computer from data created by electrical noise in the serial cable. The electrical noise can cause stray characters to print. Set this to On to prevent stray characters from printing.

SMTP Setup menu

Menu item	Description
Primary SMTP Gateway	Specifies SMTP server gateway and port information
Primary SMTP Gateway Port	Note: 25 is the default SMTP gateway port.
Secondary SMTP Gateway	
Secondary SMTP Gateway Port	

Menu item	Description
SMTP Timeout 5–30	Specifies the amount of time in seconds before the server stops trying to send an e-mail Note: 30 seconds is the factory default setting.
Reply Address	Specifies a reply address of up to 128 characters in the e-mail sent by the printer
Use SSL Disabled Negotiate Required	Sets the printer to use SSL for increased security when connecting to the SMTP server Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disabled is the factory default setting. • When the Negotiate setting is used, the SMTP server determines if SSL will be used.
SMTP Server Authentication No authentication required Login/Plain CRAM-MD5 Digest-MD5 NTLM Kerberos 5	Specifies the type of user authentication required for scan to e-mail privileges Note: "No authentication required" is the factory default setting.
Device-Initiated E-mail None Use Device SMTP Credentials	Specifies what credentials will be used when communicating to the SMTP server. Some SMTP servers require credentials to send an e-mail. Notes:
User-Initiated E-mail None Use Device SMTP Credentials Use Session User ID & Password Use Session E-mail address & Password Prompt User	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None is the factory default setting for Device and User-Initiated E-mail. • Device Userid and Device Password are used to log in to the SMTP server when Use Device SMTP Credentials is selected.
Device Userid	
Device Password	
Kerberos 5 Realm	
NTLM Domain	

Security menu

Editing Security Setups menu

Menu item	Description
Edit Backup Password	Creates a backup password Note: This menu item will only appear if a backup password exists.

Menu item	Description
Edit Building Blocks	Edits the Internal Accounts, NTLM, various Setups, Password, and PIN
Edit Security Templates	Adds or edits a Security Template
Edit Access Controls	Controls access to printer menus, firmware updates, held jobs, and other access points

Miscellaneous Security Settings menu

Menu item	Description
Login Restrictions Login failures Failure time frame Lockout time Panel Login Timeout Remote Login Timeout	<p>Limits the number and time frames of failed login attempts from the printer control panel before <i>all</i> users are locked out</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Login failures” specifies the number of failed login attempts before users are locked out. Settings range from 1–10 attempts is the factory default setting. “Failure time frame” specifies the time frame during which failed login attempts can be made before users are locked out. Settings range from 1–60 minutes. 5 minutes is the factory default setting. “Lockout time” specifies how long users are locked out after exceeding the login failures limit. Settings range from 1–60 minutes. 5 minutes is the factory default setting. 1indicates the printer does not impose a lockout time. “Panel Login Timeout” specifies how long the printer remains idle on the Home screen before automatically logging the user off. Settings range from 1–900 seconds. 30 seconds is the factory default setting. “Remote Login Timeout” specifies how long a remote interface remains idle before automatically logging the user off. Settings range from 1–120 seconds. 10 minutes is the factory default setting.
Security Reset Jumper Access controls="No Security" No Effect Reset factory security defaults	<p>Changes the value of the security settings</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Access controls="No Security" retains all the security information that the user has defined. “No Security” is the factory default setting. “No Effect” means the reset has no effect on the device’s security configuration. “Reset factory security defaults” deletes all security information that the user has defined, and assigns the factory default value to each setting in the Miscellaneous Security Settings section of both the panel and the Web page.

Menu item	Description
LDAP Certificate Verification Demand Try Allow Never	Allows the user to request a server certificate Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Demand” means a server certificate is requested. If a bad certificate is provided or if no certificate is provided, the session is terminated immediately. “Demand” is the factory default setting. “Try” means a server certificate is requested. If no certificate is provided, the session proceeds normally. If a bad certificate is provided, the session is terminated immediately. “Allow” means a server certificate is requested. If no certificate is provided, the session proceeds normally. If a bad certificate is provided, it will be ignored and the session proceeds normally. “Never” means no server certificate is requested.
Minimum PIN Length 1–16	Limits the digit length of the PIN. Note: 4 is the factory default setting.

Confidential Print menu

Menu item	Description
Max Invalid PIN Off 2–10	Limits the number of times an invalid PIN can be entered Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> This menu appears only if a formatted, non-defective printer hard disk is installed. Once the limit is reached, the print job for that user name and that PIN are deleted.
Confidential Job Expiration Off 1 hour 4 hours 24 hours 1 week	Limits the amount of time a confidential print job stays in the printer before it is deleted Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the Job Expiration setting is changed while confidential print jobs reside on the printer RAM or printer hard disk, then the expiration time for those print jobs does not change to the new default value. If the printer is turned off, then all confidential jobs held in printer RAM are deleted.
Repeat Job Expiration Off 1 hour 4 hours 24 hours 1 week	Sets a time limit on how long the printer stores print jobs
Verify Job Expiration Off 1 hour 4 hours 24 hours 1 week	Sets a time limit on how long the printer stores print jobs needing verification
Note: Off is the factory default setting.	

Menu item	Description
Reserve Job Expiration Off 1 hour 4 hours 24 hours 1 week	Sets a time limit on how long the printer stores print jobs for printing at a later time

Note: Off is the factory default setting.

Disk Wiping menu

Disk Wiping erases *only* print job data on the printer hard disk that *are not* currently in use by the file system. All permanent data on the printer hard disk are preserved, such as downloaded fonts, macros, and held jobs.

Note: This menu appears only when a formatted, non-defective printer hard disk is installed.

Menu item	Description
Wiping Mode Auto Manual Off	Specifies the mode for disk wiping Note: Auto is the factory default setting. The printer determines when to initiate a disk wipe.
Scheduled Wiping Time Day	Sets the schedule for disk wiping Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Time is used to set the time for scheduled wiping. Day is used to set the specific day or period for scheduled wiping. Values are Sunday to Friday, Everyday, Weekdays, and Weekends. Scheduled wipes are initiated <i>without</i> displaying a user warning or confirmation message. Both manual and scheduled wiping allow the file system to reuse marked disk space without first having to wipe it.
Manual Wiping Do not start now Start now	Overwrites all disk space that has been used to hold data from a print job that has been processed (printed). This type of wipe <i>does not</i> erase any information related to an unprocessed print job. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Do not start now” is the factory default setting. If the Disk Wiping access control is activated, then a user must successfully authenticate and have the required authorization in order to initiate the disk wipe.

Menu item	Description
Automatic Method Single pass Multiple pass	Marks all disk space used by a previous print job and does not permit the file system to reuse this space until it has been cleared Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Single pass” is the factory default setting. Only automatic wiping enables users to activate disk wiping without having to turn the printer off for an extended amount of time. Highly confidential information should be wiped using <i>only</i> the Multiple pass method.
Manual Method Single pass Multiple pass	Allows the file system to reuse marked disk space without having to wipe it first Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Single pass” is the factory default setting. Highly confidential information should be wiped using the Multiple pass method <i>only</i>.
Scheduled Method Single pass Multiple pass	Allows the file system to reuse marked disk space without having to wipe it first Note: “Single pass” is the factory default setting.

Security Audit Log menu

Menu item	Description
Export Log	Enables an authorized user to export the security log Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To export the log from the printer control panel, a flash drive must be attached to the printer. From the Embedded Web Server, the log can be downloaded to a computer.
Delete Log Yes No	Specifies whether audit logs are deleted Note: Yes is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Configure Log Enable Audit Enable Remote Syslog Remote Syslog Server Remote Syslog Port Remote Syslog Method Remote Syslog Facility Log full behavior Admin's e-mail address Digitally sign exports Severity of events to log Remote Syslog non-logged events E-mail log cleared alert E-mail log wrapped alert E-mail % full alert % full alert level E-mail log exported alert E-mail log settings changed alert Log line endings	Specifies whether and how the audit logs are created Note: Factory default settings enable the security audit log.

Set Date and Time menu

Menu item	Description
Current Date and Time	Lets you view the current date and time settings for the printer
Manually Set Date and Time	Note: Date/Time is set in YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM:SS format.
Time Zone	Note: GMT is the factory default setting.
Automatically Observe DST On Off	Note: On is the factory default setting and uses the applicable Daylight Saving Time associated with the Time Zone setting.
Custom Time Zone Setup DST Start Week DST Start DayOff DST Start Month DST Start Time DST End Week DST End Day DST End Month DST End Time DST Offset	Enables the user to set up the time zone
Enable NTP On Off	Enables Network Time Protocol, which synchronizes the clocks of devices on a network Note: On is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
NTP Server	Lets you view the NTP Server Address
Enable Authentication	Lets you change the authentication setting to on or off
Off	Note: Off is the factory default setting.
On	

Settings menu

General Settings menu

Menu item	Description
Display Language English Francais Deutsch Italiano Espanol Dansk Norsk Nederlands Svenska Portuguese Suomi Russian Polski Greek Magyar Turkce Cesky Simplified Chinese Traditional Chinese Korean Japanese	Sets the language of the text appearing on the display Note: Some languages may not be available for all printers.

Menu item	Description
Eco-Mode Off Energy Energy/Paper Paper	Minimizes the use of energy, paper, or specialty media Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off is the factory default setting. Off resets the printer to its factory default settings. Energy minimizes the power used by the printer. Performance may be affected, but print quality is not. Energy/Paper minimizes the use of power, and of paper and specialty media. Paper minimizes the amount of paper and specialty media needed for a print job. Performance may be affected, but print quality is not.
ADF Loaded Beep Enabled Disabled	Specifies whether the ADF sounds a beep when paper is loaded Note: Enabled is the factory default setting.
Quiet Mode Off On	Reduces the amount of noise produced by the printer Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off is the factory default setting. This setting supports the performance specifications of your printer. On configures the printer to produce as little noise as possible. This setting is best suited for printing text and line art. For optimal printing of color-rich documents, set Quiet Mode to Off. Selecting Photo from the printer driver may disable Quiet Mode. This setting will provide better print quality and full speed printing.
Run Initial setup Yes No	Instructs the printer to run the setup wizard Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Yes is the factory default setting. After completing the setup wizard by selecting Done at the country or region selection screen, the default becomes No.

Menu item	Description
Keyboard Keyboard Type English Francais Francais Canadien Deutsch Italiano Espanol Greek Dansk Norsk Nederlands Svenska Suomi Portuguese Russian Polski Swiss German Swiss French Korean Magyar Turkish Czech Simplified Chinese Traditional Chinese Japanese Custom Key [x]	Specifies a language for the printer control panel virtual keyboard
Paper Sizes US Metric	Specifies the default paper measurements Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Initial setting is determined by your country or region selection in the initial setup wizard. Changing this setting also changes the default for each input source in the Paper Size/Type menu.
Scan to PC Port Range [port range]	Specifies a valid port range for printers behind a port blocking firewall. The valid ports are specified by two sets of numbers separated by a semicolon. Note: 9751:12000 is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Displayed Information Left side Right side Custom Text [x] [x] Toner [x] Imaging Unit Fuser Transfer Module	<p>Specifies what is displayed on the upper left and right corners of the home screen</p> <p>For the Left side and Right side menus, select from the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">NoneIP AddressHostnameContact NameLocationDate/TimemDNS/DDNS Service NameZero Configuration NameCustom Text [x]Model Name <p>For the [x] Toner, [x] Imaging Unit, Fuser, and Transfer Module menus, choose from the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">When to display<ul style="list-style-type: none">Do not displayDisplayMessage to Display<ul style="list-style-type: none">DefaultAlternateDefault<ul style="list-style-type: none">[text entry]Alternate<ul style="list-style-type: none">[text entry] <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• IP Address is the factory default setting for “Left side.”• Date/Time is the factory default setting for “Right side.”• “Do not display” is the factory default setting for “When to display.”• Default is the factory default setting for Message to Display.

Menu item	Description
Displayed Information <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Waste Toner Bottle Paper Jam Load Paper Service Errors 	<p>Specifies what is displayed for Waste Toner Bottle, Paper Jam, Load Paper, and Service Errors. Available options for each button are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Display No Yes <p>Message to Display</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Default Alternate <p>Default</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> [text entry] <p>Alternate</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> [text entry] <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No is the factory default setting for Display. • Default is the factory default setting for Message to Display.
Home screen customization <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Change Language Copy Copy shortcuts Fax Fax Shortcuts E-mail E-mail Shortcuts FTP FTP Shortcuts Search Held Jobs Held Jobs USB Drive Profiles and Solutions Bookmarks Jobs by user Forms and Favorites 	<p>Lets you add or remove icons and buttons that appear on the home screen</p> <p>Available selections for each icon or button are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Do not display Display
Date Format <ul style="list-style-type: none"> MM-DD-YYYY DD-MM-YYYY YYYY-MM-DD 	<p>Specifies the format for the printer date</p>
Time Format <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 12 hour A.M./P.M. 24 hour clock 	<p>Specifies the format for the printer time</p> <p>Note: 12 hour is the factory default setting.</p>
Screen Brightness <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 20–100 	<p>Specifies the brightness of the printer control panel display</p> <p>Note: 100 is the factory default setting.</p>

Menu item	Description
One Page Copy Off On	Sets copying from the scanner glass to only one page at a time Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Audio Feedback Button Feedback On Off Volume 1–10	Sets the audio volume for the buttons Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> On is the factory default setting for Button Feedback. 5 is the factory default setting for Volume.
Tactile Touchscreen Feedback On Off	Provides touch screen sensation feedback Note: On is the factory default setting.
Show Bookmarks Yes No	Specifies whether bookmarks are displayed from the Held Jobs area Note: Yes is the factory default setting.
Allow Background Removal On Off	Specifies whether image background is removed in copy, fax, e-mail, FTP, or scan-to-USB jobs Note: On is the factory default setting.
Allow Custom Job Scans On Off	Lets you scan multiple documents into one file Note: On is the factory default setting. If On is selected, the Allow Custom Job Scans setting can be enabled for specific jobs.
Scanner Jam Recovery Job level Page level	Specifies how a scan job should be reloaded if a paper jam occurs in the ADF Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If “Job level” is selected, then the entire scan job must be scanned again if a paper jam occurs. If “Page level” is selected, then only the jammed page forward must be scanned again.
Web Page Refresh Rate 30–300	Specifies the number of seconds between Embedded Web Server refreshes Note: 120 seconds is the factory default setting.
Contact Name	Specifies a contact name for the printer Note: The contact name will be stored on the Embedded Web Server.
Location	Specifies the location of the printer Note: The location will be stored on the Embedded Web Server.

Menu item	Description
Alarms <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alarm Control Cartridge Alarm 	<p>Sets an alarm to sound when the printer requires operator intervention</p> <p>Available options for each alarm type are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Single Continuous Off <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Single is the factory default setting. Single sounds three quick beeps. • Continuous repeats three beeps every 10 seconds. • Off means no alarm will sound.
Timeouts <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Standby Mode 1–240 Disabled 	<p>Specifies the number of minutes of inactivity before the system enters a lower power state</p> <p>Note: 15 minutes is the factory default setting.</p>
Timeouts <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Sleep Mode Disabled 1–240 min 	<p>Sets the amount of time the printer waits, after a print job is finished, before it goes into a reduced power state</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 5 minutes is the factory default setting. • Lower settings conserve more energy, but may require longer warm-up times. • Select the lowest setting if the printer shares an electrical circuit with room lighting. • Select a high setting if the printer is in constant use. Under most circumstances, this keeps the printer ready to print with minimum warm-up time.
Timeouts <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Screen Timeout 15–300 sec 	<p>Sets the amount of time in seconds the printer waits before the printer displays Ready</p> <p>Note: 30 seconds is the factory default setting.</p>
Timeouts <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Print Timeout Disabled 1–255 sec 	<p>Sets the amount of time in seconds the printer waits to receive an end-of-job message before canceling the remainder of the print job</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 90 seconds is the factory default setting. • When the timer expires, any partially printed page still in the printer is printed, and then the printer checks to see if any new print jobs are waiting. • Print Timeout is available only when using PCL emulation. This setting has no effect on PostScript emulation print jobs.

Menu item	Description
Timeouts Wait Timeout Disabled 15–65535 sec	<p>Sets the amount of time in seconds the printer waits for additional data before canceling a print job</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 40 seconds is the factory default setting. • Wait Timeout is available only when the printer is using PostScript emulation. This setting has no effect on PCL emulation print jobs.
Timeouts Job Hold Timeout 5–255 sec	<p>Sets the amount of time the printer waits for user intervention before it holds jobs that require unavailable resources and continues to process print jobs in the print queue</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 30 seconds is the factory default setting. • This menu appears only when a printer hard disk is installed.
Print Recovery Auto Continue Disabled 5–255	<p>Lets the printer automatically continue printing from certain offline situations when not resolved within the specified time period</p> <p>Note: Disabled is the factory default setting.</p>
Print Recovery Jam Recovery Auto On Off	<p>Specifies whether the printer reprints jammed pages</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Auto is the factory default setting. The printer reprints jammed pages unless the memory required to hold the pages is needed for other printer tasks. • On sets the printer to always reprint jammed pages. • Off sets the printer to never reprint jammed pages.
Print Recovery Page Protect Off On	<p>Lets the printer successfully print a page that may not have printed otherwise</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off is the factory default setting. Off prints a partial page when there is not enough memory to print the whole page. • On sets the printer to process the whole page so that the entire page prints.

Menu item	Description
Press Sleep Button <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Sleep Hibernate Do Nothing 	<p>Determines how the printer responds when pressing the Sleep button in Idle state</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sleep is the factory default setting for Press Sleep Button. • Sleep or Hibernate sets the printer to operate at a lower power configuration. • If the printer is in Sleep Mode, then the touch screen appears off and the Sleep button turns amber in color. • Touch anywhere on the touch screen or press a button on the printer control panel to exit Sleep Mode. • If the printer is in Hibernate mode, then the touch screen is completely off and the Sleep button turns amber in color and blinks.
Press and Hold Sleep Button <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Do Nothing Sleep Hibernate 	<p>Determines how the printer responds when pressing the Sleep button when the printer is idle</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Do Nothing is the factory default setting. • Sleep or Hibernate sets the printer to operate at a lower power configuration. • If the printer is in Sleep Mode, then the touch screen appears off and the Sleep button turns amber in color. • Press and hold the Sleep button for 3 seconds or longer to enter Hibernate mode. • Touch anywhere on the touch screen or press a button on the printer control panel to exit Sleep Mode.
Factory Defaults <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Do Not Restore Restore Now 	<p>Returns the printer settings to the factory default settings</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Do Not Restore is the factory default setting. It keeps the user-defined settings. • Restore Now returns all printer settings to the factory default settings except Network/Ports menu settings. All downloads stored in RAM are deleted. Downloads stored in flash memory or on a printer hard disk are not affected.

Copy Settings menu

Menu item	Description
Content Type Text/Photo Photo Text Graphics	Specifies the content of the original document Note: Text/Photo is the factory default setting.
Content Source Color Laser Inkjet Photo/Film Magazine Newspaper Press Other Black and White Laser	Specifies how the original document was produced Note: Color Laser is the factory default setting.
Color On Off	Specifies whether or not copies are printed in color Note: On is the factory default setting.
Allow color copies On Off	Lets you enable or disable color in copying Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> On is the factory default setting. Off will hide all color-specific menus. This setting overrides the Color setting.
Sides (Duplex) 1 sided to 1 sided 1 sided to 2 sided 2 sided to 1 sided 2 sided to 2 sided	Specifies whether an original document is duplex (two-sided) or simplex (one-sided), and then specifies whether the copy should be duplex or simplex Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 sided to 1 sided—The original page has printing on one side and the copied page will also have printing on one side. 1 sided to 2 sided—The original page has printing on one side while the copied page will have printing on both sides. For example, if the original document is six sheets, the copy is three sheets with printing on both sides. 2 sided to 1 sided—The original page has printing on both sides while the copied page will have printing on only one side. For example, if the original document is three sheets with an image on each side of each sheet, then the copy is six sheets with only one image on one side of each sheet. 2 sided to 2 sided—The original page has printing on both sides and the copy mimics the original exactly.

Menu item	Description
Paper Saver Off 2 on 1 Portrait 2 on 1 Landscape 4 on 1 Portrait 4 on 1 Landscape	Allows copying two or four sheets of a document on one page Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Print Page Borders Off On	Specifies whether or not a border is printed on the page Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Collate On [1,2,1,2,1,2] Off [1,1,1,2,2,2]	Keeps the pages of a print job stacked in sequence when printing multiple copies Note: On is the factory default setting.
Original Size Letter Legal Executive Tabloid Folio Statement Universal 4 x 6 in. 3 x 5 in. Business Card ID Card Custom Scan Size [x] A3 A4 A5 Oficio (Mexico) A6 JIS B4 JIS B5 Book Original Auto Size Sense Mixed Sizes	Specifies the paper size of the original document Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Letter is the US factory default setting. • A4 is the international factory default setting.
Copy To Source Tray [x] Auto Size Match Manual Feeder	Specifies the paper source for copy jobs Note: Tray 1 is the factory default setting.
Transparency Separators On Off	Places a sheet of paper between transparencies Note: On is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Separator Sheets Off Between Copies Between Jobs Between Pages	Places a sheet of paper between pages, copies, or jobs Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Separator Sheet Source Tray [x] Manual Feeder	Specifies the separator sheet source Note: Tray 1 is the factory default setting.
Darkness 1–9	Specifies the level of darkness for the copy job Note: 5 is the factory default setting.
Number of Copies 1–999	Specifies the number of copies for the copy job Note: 1 is the factory default setting.
Header/Footer [Location] Off Date/Time Page number Custom text Print on All pages First page only All but first page Custom text	Specifies header/footer information and its location on the page For the location, choose from the following options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Top left • Top middle • Top right • Bottom left • Bottom middle • Bottom right Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off is the factory default setting for [Location]. • “All pages” is the factory default setting for “Print on.”
Overlay Off Confidential Copy Draft Urgent Custom	Specifies the type of overlay printed on each page of the copy job Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Custom Overlay	Specifies the custom overlay text Note: A maximum of 64 characters is allowed.
Allow priority copies On Off	Allows interruption of a print job to copy a page or document Note: On is the factory default setting.
Custom Job scanning Off On	Lets you copy, in a single copy job, a document that contains mixed paper sizes Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off is the factory default setting. • This menu appears only if a valid printer hard drive is installed.

Menu item	Description
Allow Save as Shortcut On Off	Lets you save custom copy settings as shortcuts Note: On is the factory default setting.
Background Removal -4 to 4	Adjusts the amount of background visible on a copy Note: 0 is the factory default setting.
Auto Center Off On	Lets you automatically center the content on the page Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Color Balance Cyan - Red Magenta - Green Yellow - Blue	Enables an equal balance of colors in the output
Color Dropout Color Dropout None Red Green Blue Default Red Threshold 0–255 Default Green Threshold 0–255 Default Blue Threshold 0–255	Specifies which color to drop during copies, and how much to increase or decrease the dropout Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> None is the factory default setting for Color Dropout. 128 is the factory default setting for each color threshold.
Contrast Best for content 0–5	Specifies the contrast used for the copy job Note: Best for content is the factory default setting.
Mirror Image Off On	Creates a mirror image of the original document Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Negative Image Off On	Creates a negative image of the original document Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Shadow Detail -4 to 4	Adjusts the amount of shadow detail visible on a copy Note: 0 is the factory default setting.
ADF Skew Fix Off On	Corrects slight skew in the scanned image Note: Off is the factory default setting
Scan edge to edge Off On	Specifies if the original document is scanned edge-to-edge Note: Off is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Sharpness 1–5	Adjusts the amount of sharpness of a copy Note: 3 is the factory default setting.
Temperature -4 to 4	Enables the user to specify “warm” or “cool” outputs. “Cool” values generate a bluer output than the default, while “warm” values generate a redder output than the default.
Sample Copy Off On	Creates a sample copy of the original document Note: Off is the factory default setting.

Fax Settings menu

Fax Mode (Analog Fax Setup) menu

Analog Fax Setup mode sends the fax job by way of a telephone line.

General Fax Settings

Menu item	Description
Fax Name or Station Name	Specifies the name of the fax in the printer
Fax Number or Station Number	Specifies the number assigned to the fax
Station ID Fax Name or Station Name Fax Number or Station Number	Specifies how the fax is identified
Enable Manual Fax Off On	Sets the printer to fax manually only, which requires a line splitter and a telephone handset Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use a regular telephone to answer an incoming fax job and to dial a fax number. Touch #, and then 0 on the numeric keypad to go directly to the Manual Fax function.
Memory Use Equal Mostly sent All send All receive Mostly receive	Defines the allocation of non-volatile memory between sending and receiving fax jobs Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Equal is the factory default setting. Equal splits the memory for sending and receiving fax jobs into equal amounts. Mostly sent specifies that most of the memory is set to send fax jobs. All send specifies that all the memory is set to send fax jobs. All receive specifies that all the memory is set to receive fax jobs. Mostly receive specifies that most of the memory is set to receive fax jobs.
Cancel Faxes Allow Don't Allow	Specifies whether or not the printer cancels fax jobs

Menu item	Description
Caller ID On Off Alternate	Specifies type of caller ID being used
Fax number masking Off From left From right	Specifies the direction from where digits are masked in an outgoing fax number Note: The number of characters masked is determined by the “Digits to mask” setting.
Digits to mask 0–58	Specifies the number of digits to mask in an outgoing fax number
Fax Cover Page Fax Cover Page Off by default On by default Never use Always use Include to field On Off Include from field Off On From Include Message field Off On Message Include Logo Off On Include Footer [x] Footer [x]	Configures the fax cover page Note: “Off by default” is the factory default setting for all Fax Cover Page options.

Fax Send Settings

Menu item	Description
Resolution Standard Fine 200 dpi Super Fine 300 dpi Ultra Fine 600 dpi	Specifies quality in dots per inch (dpi). A higher resolution gives greater print quality, but increases the fax transmission time for outgoing faxes. Note: Standard is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Original Size Mixed Sizes Letter Legal Executive Tabloid Folio Statement Universal 4 x 6 in. 3 x 5 in. Business Card Custom Scan Size [x] A3 A4 A5 Oficio (Mexico) A6 JIS B4 JIS B5 Book Original Auto Size Sense Mixed Sizes	Specifies the paper size of the original document Note: Mixed Sizes is the US factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting.
Sides (Duplex) Off Long edge Short edge	Specifies how text and graphics are oriented on a page Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off is the factory default setting. Long edge assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait and top edge for landscape). Short edge assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait and left edge for landscape).
Content Type Text Graphics Text/Photo Photo	Specifies the content of the original document Note: Text is the factory default setting.
Content Source Color Laser Inkjet Photo Film Magazine Newspaper Press Other Black and White Laser	Specifies how the original document was produced Note: Color Laser is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Darkness 1–9	Lightens or darkens the output Note: 5 is the factory default setting.
Dial Prefix	Lets you enter a dialing prefix, such as 99. A numeric entry field is provided.
Dialing Prefix Rules Prefix Rule [x]	Establishes a dialing prefix rule
Automatic Redial 0–9	Specifies the number of times the printer tries to send the fax to a specified number Note: 5 is the factory default setting.
Redial Frequency 1–200	Specifies the number of minutes between redials
Behind a PABX No Yes	Enables switchboard blind dialing without a dial tone
Enable ECM Yes No	Enables Error Correction Mode for fax jobs
Enable Fax Scans On Off	Lets you fax files that are scanned at the printer
Driver to fax Yes No	Allows the printer driver to send fax jobs
Allow Save as Shortcut On Off	Lets you save fax numbers as shortcuts in the printer
Dial Mode Tone Pulse	Specifies the dialing sound, either as a tone or a pulse
Max Speed 33600 2400 4800 9600 14400	Specifies the maximum speed in baud at which faxes are sent
Custom Job scanning Off On	Lets you scan a document that contains mixed paper sizes into a single file
Scan Preview Off On	Specifies whether a preview will appear on the display for scan jobs

Menu item	Description
Background Removal -4 to 4	Adjusts the amount of background visible on a scanned image Note: 0 is the factory default setting.
Color Balance Cyan - Red Magenta - Green Yellow - Blue	Enables an equal balance of colors in the scanned image
Color Dropout Color Dropout None Red Green Blue Default Red Threshold 0–255 Default Green Threshold 0–255 Default Blue Threshold 0–255	Specifies which color to drop, and how much to increase or decrease the dropout Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None is the factory default setting for Color Dropout. • 128 is the factory default setting for each color threshold.
Contrast Best for content 0–5	Specifies the contrast in the scanned image Note: "Best for content" is the factory default setting.
Mirror Image Off On	Creates a mirror image of the original document Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Negative Image Off On	Creates a negative image of the original document Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Shadow Detail -4 to 4	Adjusts the amount of shadow detail visible Note: 0 is the factory default setting.
ADF Skew Fix Off On	Corrects slight skew in the scanned image Note: Off is the factory default setting
Scan edge to edge Off On	Specifies if the original document is scanned edge-to-edge prior to faxing Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Sharpness 0–5	Adjusts the sharpness of a fax Note: 3 is the factory default setting.
Temperature -4 to 4	Enables the user to specify "warm" or "cool" outputs. "Cool" values generate a bluer output than the default while "warm" values generate a redder output than the default.

Menu item	Description
Enable Color Fax Scans Off by default On by default Never use Always use	Enables color faxing Note: "Off by default" is the factory default setting.
Auto Convert Color Faxes to Mono Faxes On Off	Converts all outgoing faxes to black and white Note: On is the factory default setting.

Fax Receive Settings

Menu item	Description
Enable Fax Receive On Off	Allows fax jobs to be received by the printer Note: On is the factory default setting.
Fax Job Waiting None Toner Toner and Supplies	Removes fax jobs that request specific unavailable resources from the print queue Note: None is the factory default setting.
Rings to Answer 1–25	Specifies the number of rings before answering an incoming fax job Note: 3 is the factory default setting.
Auto Reduction On Off	Scales an incoming fax job so that it fits the size of the paper loaded in the designated fax source Note: On is the factory default setting.
Paper Source Auto Tray [x] Multi-Purpose Feeder	Specifies the paper source selected to supply paper for the printer to print an incoming fax
Sides (Duplex) Off On	Enables duplex printing (two-sided printing) for incoming fax jobs
Separator Sheets Off Before Job After Job	Enables the printer to include separator sheets for incoming fax jobs
Separator Sheet Source Tray [x] Manual Feeder	Specifies where the printer will pick the separator sheet
Fax Footer Off On	Prints the transmission information at the bottom of each page from a received fax Note: Off is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Max Speed 33600 2400 4800 9600 14400	Specifies the maximum speed in baud at which faxes are received
Fax Forwarding Print Print and Forward Forward	Enables forwarding of received faxes to another recipient
Forward to Fax E-mail FTP LDSS eSF	Specifies the type of recipient to which faxes will be forwarded Note: This menu is available only from the printer Embedded Web Server.
Forward to Shortcut	Lets you enter the shortcut number which matches the recipient type (Fax, E-mail, FTP, LDSS, or eSF)
Block No Name Fax Off On	Enables blocking of incoming faxes sent from devices with no station ID specified
Banned Fax List	Enables the list of banned fax numbers stored in the printer
Holding Faxes Held Fax Mode Off Always On Manual Scheduled Fax Holding Schedule	Enables fax holding all of the time or according to set schedule Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Enable Color Fax Receive On Off	Enables the device to receive fax in color

Fax Log Settings

Menu item	Description
Transmission Log Print log Do not print log Print only for error	Enables printing of a transmission log after each fax job
Receive Error Log Print Never Print on Error	Enables printing of a receive error log following a receive error

Menu item	Description
Auto Print Logs On Off	Enables automatic printing of fax logs Note: Logs print after every 200 fax jobs.
Log Paper Source Tray [x] Manual Feeder	Specifies the source of the paper used for printing logs
Logs Display Remote Fax Name or Remote Station Name Dialed Number	Specifies whether printed logs display the dialed number or the station name returned
Enable Job Log On Off	Enables access to the Fax Job log
Enable Call Log On Off	Enables access to the Fax Call log

Speaker Settings

Menu item	Description
Speaker Mode On until Connected Always On Always Off	Specifies the mode of the speaker. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> “On until Connected” is the factory default setting. A sound is issued until the fax connection is made. Always On turns the speaker on. Always Off turns the speaker off.
Speaker Volume High Low	Controls the volume setting Note: High is the factory default setting.
Ringer Volume On Off	Controls the fax speaker ringer volume Note: On is the factory default setting.

Answer On

Menu item	Description
All Rings Single Ring Only Double Ring Only Triple Ring Only Single or Double Rings Only Single or Triple Rings Only Double or Triple Rings Only	Specifies ring patterns when device is answering calls Note: All Rings is the factory default setting.

Fax Mode (Fax Server Setup) menu

Fax Server mode sends the fax job to a fax server for transmission.

Fax Server Setup

Menu item	Description
To Format	Lets you enter the information using the virtual keyboard on the printer touch screen
Reply Address	
Subject	
Message	
SMTP Setup	Specifies SMTP setup information
Primary SMTP Gateway	Specifies SMTP server port information
Secondary SMTP Gateway	
Image Format PDF (.pdf) XPS (.xps) TIFF (.tif)	Specifies the image type for scan to fax
Content Type Text Text/Photo Graphics Photo	Specifies the content of the original document Note: Text is the factory default setting.
Content Source Color Laser Inkjet Photo/Film Magazine Newspaper Press Other	Specifies how the original document was produced Note: Color Laser is the factory default setting.
Fax Resolution Standard Fine 200 dpi Super Fine 300 dpi Ultra Fine 600 dpi	Specifies the resolution level for scan to fax
Darkness 1–9	Lightens or darkens the output Note: 5 factory default setting.
Orientation Portrait Landscape	Specifies the orientation of the scanned image

Menu item	Description
Original Size Letter Legal Executive Tabloid Folio Statement Universal 4 x 6 in. 3 x 5 in. Business Card Custom Scan Size [x] A3 A4 A5 Oficio (Mexico) JIS B4 JIS B5 Book Original Auto Size Sense Mixed Sizes	Specifies the paper size of the document that is being scanned Note: Letter is the US factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting.
Use Multi-Page TIFF On Off	Provides a choice between single-page TIFF files and multiple-page TIFF files. For a multiple-page scan to fax job, either one TIFF file is created containing all the pages, or multiple TIFF files are created with one file for each page of the job. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On is the factory default setting. • This menu item applies to all scan functions.
Enable Analog Receive Off On	Enables analog fax receive Note: Off is the factory default setting.

E-mail Settings menu

Menu item	Description
E-mail Server Setup Subject Message Base file name	Specifies e-mail server information Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The subject is limited to 255 characters. • The message is limited 512 characters.

Menu item	Description
E-mail Server Setup Send me a copy Never appears On by default Off by default Always On	Sends a copy of the e-mail back to the sender Note: "Never appears" is the factory default setting.
E-mail Server Setup Max E-mail size 0–65535 KB	Specifies the maximum e-mail size in kilobytes Note: E-mails above the specified size are not sent.
E-mail Server Setup Size error message	Sends a message when an e-mail is larger than the configured size limit
E-mail Server Setup Limit destinations	Specifies a domain name, such as a company domain name, and then limits e-mail destinations to that domain name only Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • E-mail can be sent only to the specified domain. • The limit is one domain.
E-mail Server Setup Web Link Setup Server Login Password Path Base file name Web Link	Defines the e-mail server path name; for example: /directory/path Note: The characters * : ? < > are invalid entries for a path name.
Format PDF (.pdf) Secure PDF TIFF (.tif) JPEG (.jpg) XPS (.xps)	Specifies the format of the scanned file Note: PDF (.pdf) is the factory default setting.
PDF Version 1.2–1.6 A–1a	Sets the version of the PDF file that will be scanned for e-mailing Note: 1.5 is the factory default setting.
Content Type Text/Photo Photo Text Graphics	Specifies the content of the original document Note: Text/Photo is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Content Source Color Laser Inkjet Photo/Film Magazine Newspaper Press Other Black/White Laser	Specifies how the original document is produced Note: Color Laser is the factory default setting.
Color On Off	Specifies whether or not copies are printed in color Note: On is the factory default setting.
Resolution 150 dpi 200 dpi 300 dpi 400 dpi 600 dpi 75 dpi	Specifies the resolution of the scan in dots per inch Note: 150 dpi is the factory default setting.
Darkness 1–9	Lightens or darkens the output Note: 5 is the factory default setting.
Orientation Portrait Landscape	Specifies the orientation of the scanned image Note: Portrait is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Original Size Letter Legal Executive Tabloid Folio Statement Universal 4 x 6 in. 3 x 5 in. Business Card Custom Scan Size [x] A3 A4 A5 Oficio (Mexico) A6 JIS B4 JIS B5 Book Original Auto Size Sense Mixed Sizes	<p>Specifies the paper size of the original document</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A4 is the international factory default setting. • Letter is the US factory default setting.
Sides (Duplex) Off Long edge Short edge	<p>Specifies how the text and graphics are oriented on the page</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off is the factory default setting. • Long edge assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait and top edge for landscape). • Short edge assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait and left edge for landscape).
JPEG Quality Best for content 5–90	<p>Sets the quality of a JPEG photo image in relation to file size and quality of the image</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Best for content” is the factory default setting. • 5 reduces the file size and quality of the image. • 90 provides the best image quality, but the file size is very large. • This menu setting applies to all scan functions.
Text Default 5–90	<p>Sets the quality of a text image in relation to file size and quality of the image</p> <p>Note: 75 is the factory default setting.</p>
Text/Photo Default 5–90	<p>Sets the quality of a text or photo image in relation to file size and the quality of the image</p> <p>Note: 75 is the factory default setting.</p>
Photo Default 5–90	<p>Sets the quality of a photo image in relation to file size and the quality of the image</p> <p>Note: 50 is the factory default setting.</p>

Menu item	Description
E-mail images sent as Attachment Web Link	Specifies how the images will be sent Note: Attachment is the factory default setting.
Use Multi-Page TIFF On Off	Provides a choice between single-page TIFF files and multiple-page TIFF files. For a multiple-page scan-to-e-mail job, either one TIFF file is created containing all the pages, or multiple TIFF files are created with one file for each page of the job. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On is the factory default setting. • This menu setting applies to all scan functions.
Transmission Log Print log Do not print log Print only for error	Specifies whether or not the transmission log prints Note: Print log is the factory default setting.
Log Paper Source Tray [x] Manual Feeder	Specifies the paper source for printing e-mail logs Note: Tray 1 is the factory default setting.
E-mail Bit Depth 8 bit 1 bit	Enables the Text/Photo mode to produce smaller file sizes by using 1-bit images when Color is set to Off Note: 8 bit is the factory default setting.
Custom Job scanning Off On	Lets you copy, in a single copy job, a document that contains mixed paper sizes Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Scan Preview Off On	Specifies whether or not a preview will appear on the display for scan jobs Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Allow Save as Shortcut On Off	Lets you save e-mail addresses as shortcuts Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On is the factory default setting. • When set to Off, the Save as Shortcut button does not appear on the e-mail Destination screen.
Background Removal -4 to 4	Adjusts the amount of background visible on a scanned image Note: 0 is the factory default setting.
Color Balance Cyan - Red Magenta - Green Yellow - Blue	Enables an equal balance of colors in the output

Menu item	Description
Color Dropout Color Dropout None Red Green Blue Default Red Threshold 0–255 Default Green Threshold 0–255 Default Blue Threshold 0–255	Specifies which color to drop during scanning, and how much to increase or decrease the dropout Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None is the factory default setting for Color Dropout. • 128 is the factory default setting for each color threshold.
Contrast Best for content 0–5	Specifies the contrast of the output Note: “Best for content” is the factory default setting.
Mirror Image Off On	Creates a mirror image of the original document Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Negative Image Off On	Creates a negative image of the original document Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Shadow Detail -4 to 4	Adjusts the amount of shadow detail visible on a scanned image Note: 0 is the factory default setting.
ADF Skew Fix Off On	Corrects slight skew in the scanned image Note: Off is the factory default setting
Scan edge to edge Off On	Specifies whether the original document is scanned edge-to-edge Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Sharpness 1–5	Adjusts the amount of sharpness on a scanned image Note: 3 is the factory default setting.
Temperature -4 to 4	Enables the user to specify “warm” or “cool” outputs. “Cool” values generate a bluer output than the default while “warm” values generate a redder output than the default.
Use cc:/bcc: Off On	Enables the use of the cc: and bcc: fields Note: Off is the factory default setting.

FTP Settings menu

Menu item	Description
Format <ul style="list-style-type: none"> PDF (.pdf) Secure PDF (.pdf) TIFF (.tif) JPEG (.jpg) XPS (.xps) 	Specifies the format of the FTP file Note: PDF (.pdf) is the factory default setting.
PDF Version <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1.2–1.6 A-1a 	Sets the version level of the PDF file for FTP Note: 1.5 is the factory default setting.
Content Type <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Text/Photo Photo Text Graphics 	Specifies the content of the original document Note: Text/Photo is the factory default setting.
Content Source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Color Laser Inkjet Photo/Film Magazine Newspaper Press Other Black and White Laser 	Specifies how the original document was produced Note: Color Laser is the factory default setting.
Color <ul style="list-style-type: none"> On Off 	Specifies whether or not copies are printed in color Note: On is the factory default setting.
Resolution <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 150 dpi 200 dpi 300 dpi 400 dpi 600 dpi 75 dpi 	Specifies the quality of scanned images in dots per inch (dpi). Note: 150 dpi is the factory default setting.
Darkness <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1–9 	Lightens or darkens the output Note: 5 is the factory default setting.
Orientation <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Portrait Landscape 	Specifies the orientation of the scanned image Note: Portrait is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Original Size Letter Legal Executive Tabloid Folio Statement Universal 4 x 6 in. 3 x 5 in. Business Card Custom Scan Size [x] A3 A4 A5 Oficio (Mexico) A6 JIS B4 JIS B5 Book Original Auto Size Sense Mixed Sizes	<p>Specifies the paper size of the original document</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A4 is the international factory default setting. • Letter is the US factory default setting.
Sides (Duplex) Off Long edge Short edge	<p>Specifies how the text and graphics are oriented on the page</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off is the factory default setting. • Long edge assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait and top edge for landscape). • Short edge assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait and left edge for landscape).
JPEG Quality Best for content 5–90	<p>Sets the quality of a JPEG photo image in relation to file size and the quality of the image</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Best for content” is the factory default setting. • 5 reduces the file size, but the quality of the image is lessened. • 90 provides the best image quality, but the file size is very large. • This menu setting applies to all scan functions.
Text Default 5–90	<p>Sets the quality of the text in relation to file size and the quality of the image</p> <p>Note: 75 is the factory default setting.</p>
Text/Photo Default 5–90	<p>Sets the quality of a text/photo image in relation to file size and the quality of the image</p> <p>Note: 75 is the factory default setting.</p>

Menu item	Description
Photo Default 5-90	Sets the quality of a photo image in relation to file size and the quality of the image Note: 50 is the factory default setting.
Use Multi-Page TIFF On Off	Provides a choice between single-page TIFF files and multiple-page TIFF files. For a multiple-page scan-to-FTP job, either one TIFF file is created containing all the pages, or multiple TIFF files are created with one file for each page of the job. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On is the factory default setting. • This menu setting applies to all scan functions.
Transmission Log Print log Do not print log Print only for error	Specifies whether the transmission log prints Note: "Print log" is the factory default setting.
Log Paper Source Tray [x] Manual Feeder	Specifies a paper source when printing FTP logs Note: Tray 1 is the factory default setting.
FTP bit Depth 8 bit 1 bit	Enables the Text/Photo mode to have smaller file sizes by using 1-bit images when Color is set to Off Note: 8 bit is the factory default setting.
Base File Name	Lets you enter a base file name Note: The limitation is 53 characters.
Custom Job Scanning Off On	Lets you copy a document that contains mixed paper sizes into a single scan job Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Scan Preview Off On	Specifies whether a preview will appear on the display for scan jobs Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Allow Save as Shortcut On Off	Enables shortcut creation for FTP addresses Note: On is the factory default setting.
Background Removal -4 to 4	Adjusts the amount of background visible on a copy Note: 0 is the factory default setting.
Color Balance Cyan - Red Magenta - Green Yellow - Blue	Enables an equal balance of colors in the output

Menu item	Description
Color Dropout Color Dropout None Red Green Blue Default Red Threshold 0–255 Default Green Threshold 0–255 Default Blue Threshold 0–255	Specifies which color to drop during scanning, and how much to increase or decrease the dropout Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None is the factory default setting for Color Dropout. • 128 is the factory default setting for each color threshold.
Contrast 0–5 Best for content	Specifies the contrast of the output Note: “Best for content” is the factory default setting.
Mirror Image Off On	Creates a mirror image of the original document Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Negative Image Off On	Creates a negative image of the original document Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Shadow Detail -4 to 4	Adjusts the amount of shadow detail visible on a scanned image Note: 0 is the factory default setting.
ADF Skew Fix Off On	Corrects slight skew in the scanned image Note: Off is the factory default setting
Scan edge to edge Off On	Specifies whether the original document is scanned edge-to-edge Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Sharpness 1–5	Adjusts the amount of sharpness of a scanned image Note: 3 is the factory default setting.
Temperature -4 to 4	Enables the user to specify “warm” or “cool” outputs. “Cool” values generate a bluer output than the default while “warm” values generate a redder output than the default.

Flash Drive menu

Scan Settings

Menu item	Description
Format PDF (.pdf) Secure PDF TIFF (.tif) JPEG (.jpg) XPS (.xps)	Specifies the format of the file to be sent through FTP Note: PDF (.pdf) is the factory default setting.
PDF Version 1.2–1.6 A-1a	Sets the version of the PDF file to be sent through FTP Note: 1.5 is the factory default setting.
Content Type Text/Photo Photo Text Graphics	Specifies the content of the original document Note: Text/Photo is the factory default setting.
Content Source Color Laser Inkjet Photo/Film Magazine Newspaper Press Other Black and White Laser	Specifies how the original document was produced Note: Color Laser is the factory default setting.
Color On Off	Specifies whether or not copies are printed in color Note: On is the factory default setting.
Resolution 150 dpi 200 dpi 300 dpi 400 dpi 600 dpi 75 dpi	Specifies the resolution of the scan in dots per inch (dpi) Note: 150 dpi is the factory default setting.
Darkness 1–9	Lightens or darkens the output Note: 5 is the factory default setting.
Orientation Portrait Landscape	Specifies the orientation of the scanned image Note: Portrait is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Original Size Letter Legal Executive Tabloid Folio Statement Universal 4 x 6 in. 3 x 5 in. Business Card Custom Scan Size [x] A3 A4 A5 Oficio (Mexico) A6 JIS B4 JIS B5 Book Original Auto Size Sense Mixed Sizes	Specifies the paper size of the document Note: Letter is the US factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting.
Sides (Duplex) Off Long edge Short edge	Specifies how the text and graphics are oriented on a page Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off is the factory default setting. Long edge assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait and top edge for landscape). Short edge assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait and left edge for landscape).
JPEG Quality Best for content 5–90	Sets the quality of a JPEG photo image in relation to file size and quality Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> “Best for content” is the factory default setting. 5 reduces the file size, but the quality of the image is lessened. 90 provides the best image quality, but the file size is very large. This menu applies to all scan functions.
Text Default 5–90	Sets the quality of the text in relation to file size and the quality of the image Note: 75 is the factory default setting.
Text/Photo Default 5–90	Sets the quality of a text/photo image in relation to file size and the quality Note: 75 is the factory default setting.
Photo Default 5–90	Sets the quality of a photo image in relation to file size and the quality Note: 50 is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Use Multi-Page TIFF On Off	Provides a choice between single-page TIFF files and multiple-page TIFF files. For a multiple-page scan to FTP job, either one TIFF file is created containing all the pages, or multiple TIFF files are created with one file for each page. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On is the factory default setting. • This menu applies to all scan functions.
Scan Bit Depth 8 bit 1 bit	Enables the Text/Photo mode to have smaller file sizes by using 1-bit images when Color is set to Off Note: 8 bit is the factory default setting.
File Name	Lets you enter a base file name Note: A maximum of 53 characters is allowed.
Custom Job Scanning Off On	Lets you copy a document containing mixed paper sizes in a single copy job Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Scan Preview Off On	Specifies whether a preview appears on the display for scan jobs Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Background Removal -4 to 4	Adjusts the amount of background visible on a copy Note: 0 is the factory default setting.
Color Balance Cyan - Red Magenta - Green Yellow - Blue	Enables an equal balance of colors in the scanned image
Color Dropout Color Dropout None Red Green Blue Default Red Threshold 0–255 Default Green Threshold 0–255 Default Blue Threshold 0–255	Specifies which color to drop during scanning, and how much to increase or decrease the dropout Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None is the factory default setting for Color Dropout. • 128 is the factory default setting for each color threshold.
Contrast Best for content 0–5	Specifies the contrast of the scanned image Note: “Best for content” is the factory default setting.
Mirror Image Off On	Creates a mirror image of the original document Note: Off is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Negative Image Off On	Creates a negative image of the original document Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Shadow Detail -4 to 4	Adjusts the amount of shadow detail visible on a scanned image Note: 0 is the factory default setting.
ADF Skew Fix Off On	Specifies whether or not to fix slight skew on the scanned image Note: Off is the factory default setting
Scan edge to edge Off On	Specifies whether the original document is scanned edge-to-edge Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Sharpness 1–5	Adjusts the amount of sharpness on a scanned image Note: 3 is the factory default setting.
Temperature -4 to 4	Enables the user to specify “warm” or “cool” outputs. “Cool” values generate a bluer output than the default while “warm” values generate a redder output than the default.

Print Settings

Copies 1–999	Specifies a default number of copies for each print job Note: 1 is the factory default setting.
Paper Source Tray [x] MP Feeder Manual Paper Manual Envelope	Sets a default paper source for all print jobs Note: Tray 1 is the factory default setting.
Color Color Black Only	Generates color print jobs output Note: Color is the factory default setting.
Collate On (1,2,1,2,1,2) Off (1,1,1,2,2,2)	Stacks the pages of a print job in sequence when printing multiple copies Note: On is the factory default setting.
Sides (Duplex) 1 sided 2 sided	Specifies whether prints are on one side or on both sides of the page Note: 1 sided is the factory default setting.
Duplex Binding Long Edge Short Edge	Defines the way duplexed pages are bound and how the printing on the back of the page is oriented in relation to the printing on the front of the page Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Long edge assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait and top edge for landscape). • Short edge assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait and left edge for landscape).

Paper Saver Orientation	Specifies the orientation of a multiple-page document Note: Auto is the factory default setting. The printer chooses between portrait and landscape
Paper Saver	Specifies that multiple-page images be printed on one side of a paper Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off is the factory default setting. • The number selected is the number of page images that will print per side.
Paper Saver Border	Prints a border on each page image Note: None is the factory default setting.
Paper Saver Ordering	Specifies the positioning of multiple-page images Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Horizontal is the factory default setting. • Positioning depends on the number of page images and whether they are in portrait or landscape orientation.
Separator Sheets	Specifies whether blank separator sheets are inserted Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off is the factory default setting. • Between Copies inserts a blank sheet between each copy of a print job if Collate is set to On. If Collate is set to Off, then a blank page is inserted between each set of printed pages, such as after all page 1's and after all page 2's. • Between Jobs inserts a blank sheet between print jobs. • Between Pages inserts a blank sheet between each page of the print job. This setting is useful when printing transparencies or when inserting blank pages in a document for notes.
Separator Sheet Source	Specifies the paper source for separator sheets Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tray 1 is the factory default setting. • From the Paper menu, Configure MP must be set to Cassette in order for the Manual Feeder to appear as a menu setting.
Blank Pages	Specifies whether blank pages are inserted in a print job Note: Do Not Print is the factory default setting.

Print Settings

Setup menu

Menu item	Description
Printer Language PS Emulation PCL Emulation	Sets the default printer language Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PS Emulation is the factory default printer language. • Setting a printer language as the default does not prevent a software program from sending print jobs that use another printer language.
Job Waiting Off On	Specifies that print jobs be removed from the print queue if they require unavailable printer options or custom settings. They are stored in a separate print queue, so other jobs print normally. When the missing information and/or options are obtained, the stored jobs print. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off is the factory default setting. • This menu appears only when a non-read-only printer hard disk is installed. This requirement ensures that stored jobs are not deleted if the printer loses power.
Print Area Normal Whole Page	Sets the logical and physical printable area Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Normal is the factory default setting. When attempting to print data in the non-printable area defined by the Normal setting, the printer clips the image at the boundary. • Whole Page allows the image to be moved into the non-printable area defined by the Normal setting, but the printer will clip the image at the Normal setting boundary. Whole Page only affects pages printed using a PCL 5e interpreter. This setting has no effect on pages printed using the PCL XL or PostScript interpreter.
Printer Usage Max Speed Max Yield	Sets color toner use in printing Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Max Speed is the default printer setting. • The printer driver is capable of overriding this setting
Black Only Mode Off On	Sets the printer to print text and graphics using only the black print cartridge Note: Off is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Download Target RAM Flash Disk	Sets the storage location for downloads Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> RAM is the factory default setting. Storing downloads in RAM is temporary. Storing downloads in flash memory or on a printer hard disk places them in permanent storage. Downloads remain in flash memory or on the printer hard disk even when the printer is turned off. This menu appears only when a flash and/or disk option is installed.
Resource Save Off On	Specifies how the printer handles temporary downloads, such as fonts and macros stored in RAM, when the printer receives a job that requires more memory than is available Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off is the factory default setting. Off sets the printer to retain the downloads only until memory is needed. Downloads are deleted in order to process print jobs. On retains the downloads during language changes and printer resets. If the printer runs out of memory, then 38 Memory Full appears, and downloads are not deleted.
Print All Order Alphabetical Oldest First Newest First	Specifies the order in which held and confidential jobs are printed when Print All is selected Note: Alphabetical is the factory default setting. Print jobs always appear in alphabetical order on the printer control panel.

Job Accounting menu

Note: This menu item appears only if a formatted, non-defective printer hard disk is installed. The printer hard disk cannot be read/write- or write-protected.

Menu item	Description
Job Accounting Log Off On	Determines if the printer creates a log of the print jobs it receives Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Job Accounting Utilities	Lets you print and delete log files or export them to a flash drive
Accounting Log Frequency Monthly Weekly	Determines how often a log file is created Note: Monthly is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Log Action at End of Frequency None E-mail Current Log E-mail & Delete Current Log Post Current Log Post & Delete Current Log	Determines how the printer responds when the frequency threshold expires Note: None is the factory default setting.
Disk Near Full Level 1–99 Off	Specifies the maximum size of the log file before the printer executes the Disk Near Full Action Note: 5MB is the factory default setting.
Disk Near Full Action None E-mail Current Log E-mail & Delete Current Log E-mail & Delete Oldest Log Post Current Log Post & Delete Current Log Post & Delete Oldest Log Delete Current Log Delete Oldest Log Delete All Logs Delete All But Current	Determines how the printer responds when the printer hard disk is nearly full Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None is the factory default setting. • The value defined in Disk Near Full Level determines when this action is triggered.
Disk Full Action None E-mail & Delete Current Log E-mail & Delete Oldest Log Post & Delete Current Log Post & Delete Oldest Log Delete Current Log Delete Oldest Log Delete All Logs Delete All But Current	Determines how the printer responds when disk usage reaches the maximum limit (100MB) Note: None is the factory default setting.
URL to Post Logs	Determines where the printer posts job accounting logs
E-mail Address to Send Logs	Specifies the e-mail address to which the device sends job accounting logs
Log File Prefix	Note: The current host name defined in the TCP/IP menu is used as the default log file prefix.

Finishing menu

Menu item	Description
Sides (Duplex) 1 sided 2 sided	Specifies whether duplex (2-sided) printing is set as the default for all print jobs Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 sided is the factory default setting. You can set 2-sided printing from the software program. For Windows users, click File > Print, and then click Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup. For Macintosh users, choose File > Print, and then adjust the settings from the print dialog and pop-up menus.
Duplex Binding Long Edge Short Edge	Defines the way duplexed pages are bound and how the printing on the back of the page is oriented in relation to the printing on the front of the page Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Long Edge is the factory default setting. Long edge assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait and top edge for landscape). Short edge assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait and left edge for landscape).
Copies 1–999	Specifies a default number of copies for each print job Note: 1 is the factory default setting.
Blank Pages Do Not Print Print	Specifies whether blank pages are inserted in a print job Note: Do Not Print is the factory default setting.
Collate On (1,2,1,2,1,2) Off (1,1,1,2,2,2)	Stacks the pages of a print job in sequence when printing multiple copies Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> On is the factory default setting. No pages will be collated. The On setting stacks the print job sequentially. Both settings print the entire job the number of times specified by the Copies menu setting.
Separator Sheets Off Between Copies Between Jobs Between Pages	Specifies whether blank separator sheets are inserted Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off is the factory default setting. Between Copies inserts a blank sheet between each copy of a print job if Collate is set to On. If Collate is set to Off, then a blank page is inserted between each set of printed pages, such as after all page 1's and after all page 2's. Between Jobs inserts a blank sheet between print jobs. Between Pages inserts a blank sheet between each page of the print job. This setting is useful when printing transparencies or inserting blank pages in a document for notes.

Menu item	Description
Separator Source Tray [x] Manual Feeder	Specifies the paper source for separator sheets Note: Tray 1 (standard tray) is the factory default setting.
Paper Saver Off 2-Up 3-Up 4-Up 6-Up 9-Up 12-Up 16-Up	Specifies that multiple-page images be printed on one side of a sheet of paper Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off is the factory default setting. • The number selected is the number of page images that will print on each page.
Paper Saver Ordering Horizontal Reverse Horizontal Reverse Vertical Vertical	Specifies the positioning of multiple-page images Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Horizontal is the factory default setting. • Positioning depends on the number of images and whether the images are in portrait or landscape orientation.
Paper Saver Orientation Auto Landscape Portrait	Specifies the orientation of a multiple-page sheet Note: Auto is the factory default setting. The printer chooses between portrait and landscape.
Paper Saver Border None Solid	Prints a border on each page image Note: None is the factory default setting.

Quality menu

Menu item	Description
Print Mode Color Black Only	Specifies whether images are printed in monochrome grayscale or in color Note: Color is the factory default setting.
Color Correction Auto Off Manual	Adjusts the color output on the printed page Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Auto is the factory default setting. Auto applies different color conversion tables to each object on the printed page. • Off turns off color correction. • Manual allows customization of the color tables using the settings available from the Manual Color menu. • Due to the differences in additive and subtractive colors, certain colors that appear on computer monitors are impossible to duplicate on the printed page.

Menu item	Description
Print Resolution 1200 Image Q	Specifies the printed output resolution
Toner Darkness 1–5	<p>Lightens or darkens the printed output</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 4 is the factory default setting. • Selecting a smaller number can help conserve toner. • If Print Mode is set to Black Only, a setting of 5 increases toner density and darkness to all print jobs. • If Print Mode is set to Color, a setting of 5 is the same as a setting of 4.
Enhance Fine Lines Off On	<p>Enables a print mode preferable for files such as architectural drawings, maps, electrical circuit diagrams, and flow charts</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off is the factory default setting. • You can set this option from the software program. For Windows users, click File > Print, and then click Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup. For Macintosh users, choose File > Print, and then adjust the settings from the print dialog and pop-up menus. • To set Enhance Fine Lines using the Embedded Web Server, type the network printer IP address in the address field of your Web browser.
Color Saver Off On	<p>Reduces the amount of toner used for graphics and images. The amount of toner used for text is not reduced.</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off is the factory default setting. • On overrides Toner Darkness settings.
RGB Brightness -6 to 6	<p>Adjusts brightness in color outputs</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0 is the factory default setting. • -6 is the maximum decrease. 6 is the maximum increase. • This does not affect files where CMYK color specifications are being used.
RGB Contrast 0–5	<p>Adjusts contrast in color outputs</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0 is the factory default setting. • This does not affect files where CMYK color specifications are being used.
RGB Saturation 0–5	<p>Adjusts saturation in color outputs</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0 is the factory default setting. • This does not affect files where CMYK color specifications are being used.

Menu item	Description
Color Balance Cyan -5 to 5 Magenta -5 to 5 Yellow -5 to 5 Black -5 to 5 Reset Defaults	Adjusts color in printed output by increasing or decreasing the amount of toner being used for each color Note: 0 is the factory default setting.
Color Samples sRGB Display sRGB Vivid Display—True Black Vivid Off—RGB US CMYK Euro CMYK Vivid CMYK Off—CMYK	Prints sample pages for each of the RGB and CMYK color conversion tables used in the printer Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Selecting any setting prints the sample. • Color samples consist of a series of colored boxes along with the RGB or CMYK combination that creates the color observed. These pages can be used to help decide which combinations to use to get the desired printed output. • From a browser window, type the IP address of the printer to access a complete list of color sample pages from the Embedded Web Server.
Manual Color RGB Image Vivid sRGB Display Display True Black sRGB Vivid Off RGB Text Vivid sRGB Display Display True Black sRGB Vivid Off RGB Graphics Vivid sRGB Display Display True Black sRGB Vivid Off	Customizes the RGB color conversions Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • sRGB Display is the factory default setting for RGB Image. This applies a color conversion table to an output that matches the colors displayed on a computer monitor. • sRGB Vivid is the factory default setting for RGB Text and RGB Graphics. sRGB Vivid applies a color table that increases saturation. This is preferred for business graphics and text. • Vivid applies a color conversion table that produces brighter, more saturated colors. • Display—True Black applies a color conversion table that uses only black toner for neutral gray colors. • Off turns off color conversion.

Menu item	Description
Manual Color <ul style="list-style-type: none"> CMYK Image <ul style="list-style-type: none"> US CMYK Euro CMYK Vivid CMYK Off CMYK Text <ul style="list-style-type: none"> US CMYK Euro CMYK Vivid CMYK Off CMYK Graphics <ul style="list-style-type: none"> US CMYK Euro CMYK Vivid CMYK Off 	Customizes the CMYK color conversions <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • US CMYK is the US factory default setting. US CMYK applies a color conversion table that tries to produce output that matches SWOP color output. • Euro CMYK is the international factory default setting. Euro CMYK applies a color conversion table that tries to produce output that matches EuroScale color output. • Vivid CMYK increases color saturation for the US CMYK color conversion table. • Off turns off color conversion.
Spot Color Replacement	Provides the capability to assign specific CMYK values to named spot colors
Color Adjust	Initiates a recalibration of color conversion tables and allows the printer to make adjustments for color variations in output <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Adjusting color starts when the menu is selected. Adjusting appears on the display until the process is finished. • Color variations in output sometimes result from changeable conditions such as room temperature and humidity. Color adjustments are made on printer algorithms. Color alignment is also recalibrated in this process.

Utilities menu

Menu item	Description
Remove Held Jobs <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Confidential Held Not Restored All 	Removes confidential and held jobs from the printer hard disk <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Selecting a setting affects only print jobs that are resident in the printer. Bookmarks, print jobs on flash drives, and other types of held jobs are not affected. • Not Restored removes all Print and Hold jobs that are <i>not</i> restored from the printer hard disk or memory.

Menu item	Description
Format Flash Yes No	Formats the flash memory Warning—Potential Damage: Do not turn off the printer while the flash memory is being formatted. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Yes deletes all data stored in flash memory. • No cancels the format request. • Flash memory refers to the memory added by installing a flash memory option card in the printer. • A flash memory option card must be installed in the printer and operating properly for this menu item to be available. • The flash memory option card must not be read/write- or write-protected.
Delete Downloads on Disk Delete Now Do Not Delete	Removes downloads from the printer hard disk, including all held jobs, buffered jobs, and parked jobs Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delete Now configures the printer control panel to return to the originating screen after the deletion process is completed. • Do Not Delete sets the printer control panel to return to the main Utilities menu.
Activate Hex Trace	Assists in isolating the source of a print job problem Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When activated, all data sent to the printer is printed in hexadecimal and character representation, and control codes are not executed. • To exit or deactivate Hex Trace, turn the printer off or reset the printer.
Coverage Estimator Off On	Provides an estimate of the percentage coverage of toner on a page. The estimate is printed on a separate page at the end of each print job. Note: Off is the factory default setting.

XPS menu

Menu item	Description
Print Error Pages Off On	Prints a page containing information on errors, including XML markup errors Note: Off is the factory default setting.

PDF menu

Menu item	Description
Scale to Fit No Yes	Scales page content to fit the selected paper size Note: No is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Annotations Do Not Print Print	Prints annotations in a PDF Note: Do Not Print is the factory default setting.

PostScript menu

Menu item	Description
Print PS Error Off On	Prints a page containing the PostScript error Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Lock PS Startup Mode Off On	Enables users to disable the SysStart file Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Font Priority Resident Flash/Disk	Establishes the font search order Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Resident is the factory default setting. This menu item is available only if a formatted flash memory option card or printer hard disk is installed and operating properly. Make sure the flash memory option or printer hard disk is not read/write-, write-, or password-protected. Job Buffer Size must not be set to 100%.
Image Smoothing Off On	Enhances the contrast and sharpness of low-resolution images and smooths their color transitions Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off is the factory default setting. Image Smoothing has no effect on images that are 300 dpi or higher in resolution.

PCL Emul menu

Menu item	Description
Font Source Resident Disk Download Flash All	Specifies the set of fonts used by the Font Name menu item Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Resident is the factory default setting. Resident shows the factory default set of fonts downloaded in RAM. Flash and Disk settings show all fonts resident in that option. The Flash option must be properly formatted and cannot be read/write-, write-, or password-protected. Download shows all the fonts downloaded in RAM. All shows all fonts available to any option.

Menu item	Description
Font Name Courier 10	Identifies a specific font and the option where it is stored Note: Courier 10 is the factory default setting. Courier 10 shows the font name, font ID, and the storage location in the printer. The font source abbreviation is R for Resident, F for Flash, K for Disk, and D for download.
Symbol Set 10U PC-8 12U PC-850	Specifies the symbol set for each font name Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 10U PC-8 is the US factory default setting. 12U PC-850 is the international factory default setting. A symbol set is a set of alphabetic and numeric characters, punctuation, and special symbols. Symbol sets support the different languages or specific programs such as math symbols for scientific text. Only the supported symbol sets are shown.
PCL Emulation Settings Point Size 1.00–1008.00	Changes the point size for scalable typographic fonts Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 12 is the factory default setting. Point Size refers to the height of the characters in the font. One point equals approximately 1/72 of an inch. Point sizes can be increased or decreased in 0.25-point increments.
PCL Emulation Settings Pitch 0.08–100	Specifies the font pitch for scalable monospaced fonts Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 10 is the factory default setting. Pitch refers to the number of fixed-space characters per inch (cpi). Pitch can be increased or decreased in 0.01-cpi increments. For nonscalable monospaced fonts, the pitch appears on the display but cannot be changed.
PCL Emulation Settings Orientation Portrait Landscape	Specifies the orientation of text and graphics on the page Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Portrait is the factory default setting. Portrait prints text and graphics parallel to the short edge of the page. Landscape prints text and graphics parallel to the long edge of the page.
PCL Emulation Settings Lines per Page 1–255 60 64	Specifies the number of lines that print on each page Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 60 is the US factory default setting. 64 is the international default setting. The printer sets the amount of space between each line based on the Lines per Page, Paper Size, and Orientation settings. Select the desired Paper Size and Orientation before setting Lines per Page.

Menu item	Description
PCL Emulation Settings A4 Width 198 mm 203 mm	Sets the printer to print on A4-size paper Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 198 mm is the factory default setting. • The 203-mm setting sets the width of the page to allow the printing of eighty 10-pitch characters.
PCL Emulation Settings Auto CR after LF Off On	Specifies whether the printer automatically performs a carriage return (CR) after a line feed (LF) control command Note: Off is the factory default setting.
PCL Emulation Settings Auto LF after CR Off On	Specifies whether the printer automatically performs a line feed (LF) after a carriage return (CR) control command Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Tray Renumber Assign MP Feeder Off None 0–199 Assign Tray [x] Off None 0–199 Assign Manual Paper Off None 0–199 Assign Manual Env Off None 0–199	Configures the printer to work with printer software or programs that use different source assignments for trays, drawers, and feeders Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off is the factory default setting. • None is not an available selection. It is only displayed when it is selected by the PCL 5 interpreter. It also ignores the Select Paper Feed command. • 0–199 allows a custom setting to be assigned.
Tray Renumber View Factory Defaults None	Displays the factory default setting assigned to each tray, drawer, or feeder
Tray Renumber Restore Defaults Yes No	Returns all tray, drawer, and feeder assignments to the factory default settings

HTML menu

Menu Item	Description
Font Name	Joanna MT
Albertus MT	Letter Gothic
Antique Olive	Lubalin Graph
Apple Chancery	Marigold
Arial MT	MonaLisa Recut
Avant Garde	Monaco
Bodoni	New CenturySbk
Bookman	New York
Chicago	Optima
Clarendon	Oxford
Cooper Black	Palatino
Copperplate	StempelGaramond
Coronet	Taffy
Courier	Times
Eurostile	TimesNewRoman
Garamond	Univers
Geneva	Zapf Chancery
Gill Sans	NewSansMTCS
Goudy	NewSansMTCT
Helvetica	New SansMTJA
Hoefler Text	NewSansMTKO
Intl CG Times	
Intl Courier	
Intl Univers	

Menu item	Description
Font Size 1–255 pt	Sets the default font size for HTML documents Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 12 pt is the factory default setting. • Font size can be increased in 1-point increments.
Scale 1–400%	Scales the default font for HTML documents Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 100% is the factory default setting. • Scaling can be increased in 1% increments.
Orientation Portrait Landscape	Sets the page orientation for HTML documents Note: Portrait is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Margin Size 8–255 mm	Sets the page margin for HTML documents Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 19 mm is the factory default setting. • Margin size can be increased in 1-mm increments.
Backgrounds Print Do Not Print	Specifies whether to print backgrounds on HTML documents Note: Print is the factory default setting.

Image menu

Menu item	Description
Auto Fit On Off	Selects the optimal paper size, scaling, and orientation Note: On is the factory default setting. It overrides scaling and orientation settings for some images.
Invert Off On	Inverts bi-tonal monochrome images Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off is the factory default setting. • This setting does not apply to GIF or JPEG images.
Scaling Best Fit Anchor Center Fit Height/Width Fit Height Fit Width Anchor Top Left	Scales the image to fit the selected paper size Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Best Fit is the factory default setting. • When Auto Fit is set to On, Scaling is automatically set to Best Fit.
Orientation Portrait Landscape Rev Portrait Rev Landscape	Sets the image orientation Note: Portrait is the factory default setting.

Help menu

The Help menu consists of a series of Help pages that are stored in the multifunction printer (MFP) as PDF files. They contain information about using the printer and performing various tasks, including copying, scanning, and faxing.

English, French, German, and Spanish translations are stored in the printer.

Other translations are available on the Lexmark Web site at www.lexmark.com.

Menu item	Description
Print All Guides	Prints all the guides
Copy Guide	Provides information about making copies and changing settings
Fax Guide	Provides information about sending faxes using fax numbers, shortcut numbers, or the address book, and about changing settings
E-mail Guide	Provides information about sending e-mails using addresses, shortcut numbers, or the address book, and about changing settings
FTP Guide	Provides information about scanning documents directly to an FTP server using an FTP address, shortcut numbers, or the address book, and about changing settings
Print Defects Guide	Provides help in resolving repeating defects in copies or prints
Information Guide	Provides help in locating additional information
Supplies Guide	Provides part numbers for ordering supplies

Securing the memory before moving the printer

Statement of Volatility

Your printer contains various types of memory that are capable of storing device and network settings, information from embedded solutions, and user data. The types of memory—along with the types of data stored by each—are described below.

- **Volatile memory**—Your device utilizes standard *Random Access Memory* (RAM) to temporarily buffer user data during simple print and copy jobs.
- **Non-volatile memory**—Your device may utilize two forms of non-volatile memory: EEPROM and NAND (flash memory). Both types are used to store the operating system, device settings, network information, scanner and bookmark settings, and embedded solutions.
- **Hard disk memory**—Some devices have a hard disk drive installed. The printer hard disk is designed for device-specific functionality and cannot be used for long term storage for data that is not print-related. The hard disk does not provide the capability for users to extract information, create folders, create disk or network file shares, or FTP information directly from a client device. The hard disk can retain buffered user data from complex scan, print, copy, and fax jobs, as well as form data, and font data.

There are several circumstances under which you might wish to erase the contents of the memory devices installed in your printer. A partial list includes:

- The printer is being decommissioned
- The printer hard drive is being replaced
- The printer is being moved to a different department or location
- The printer is being serviced by someone from outside your organization
- The printer is being removed from your premises for service
- The printer is being sold to another organization

Disposing of a hard drive

Note: Not all printers have a hard disk installed.

In high-security environments, it may be necessary to take additional steps to ensure that confidential data stored on the printer hard disk cannot be accessed once the printer—or its hard disk—is removed from your premises. While most data can be erased electronically, you may want to consider one or more of the following actions before disposing of a printer or hard disk:

- **Degaussing**—Flushes the hard drive with a magnetic field that erases stored data
- **Crushing**—Physically compresses the hard disk to break component parts and render them unreadable
- **Milling**—Physically shreds the hard disk into small metal bits

Note: While most data can be erased electronically, the only way to guarantee that all data is completely erased is to physically destroy each memory device on which data could have been stored.

Erasing volatile memory

The volatile memory (RAM) installed on your printer requires a power source to retain information. To erase the buffered data, simply power down the device.

Erasing non-volatile memory

- **Individual settings, device and network settings, security settings, and embedded solutions**—Erase information and settings by selecting Wipe All Settings in the Configuration menu.
- **Fax data**—Erase fax settings and data by selecting Wipe All Settings in the Configuration menu.

1 Turn off the printer.

2 Hold down **2_{ABC}** and **6_{MNO}** while turning the printer on. Release the buttons only when the screen with the progress bar appears.

The printer performs a power-on sequence, and then the Configuration menu appears. When the printer is fully powered up, the touch screen displays a list of functions, instead of the standard home screen icons.

3 Touch **Wipe All Settings**.

The printer will reboot several times during this process.

Note: Wipe All Settings securely removes device settings, solutions, jobs, faxes, and passwords on the printer.

4 Touch **Back > Exit Config Menu**.

The printer will power-on reset, and then return to normal operating mode.

Erasing printer hard disk memory

Note: Your printer may not have a hard disk installed.

Configuring Disk Wiping in the printer menus enables you to remove residual confidential material left by scan, print, copy, and fax jobs, by securely overwriting files that have been marked for deletion.

Using the printer control panel

1 Turn off the printer.

2 Hold down **2_{ABC}** and **6_{MNO}** while turning the printer on. Release the buttons only when the screen with the progress bar appears.

The printer performs a power-on sequence, and then the Configuration menu appears. When the printer is fully powered up, the touch screen displays a list of functions, instead of the standard home screen icons.

3 Touch **Wipe Disk**, and then touch one of the following:

- **Wipe disk (fast)**—This lets you overwrite the disk with all zeroes in a single pass.
- **Wipe disk (secure)**—This lets you overwrite the disk with random bit patterns several times, followed by a verification pass. A secure overwrite is compliant with the DoD 5220.22-M standard for securely erasing data from a hard disk. Highly confidential information should be wiped using this method.

4 Touch **Yes** to proceed with disk wiping. A status bar will indicate the progress of the disk wiping task.

Note: Disk wiping can take from several minutes to more than an hour, during which the printer will be unavailable for other user tasks.

5 Touch **Back > Exit Config Menu**.

The printer will power-on reset, and then return to normal operating mode.

Configuring printer hard disk encryption

Note: Your printer may not have a hard disk installed.

Enabling hard disk encryption helps prevent the loss of sensitive data in the event your printer or its hard disk is stolen.

Using the Embedded Web Server

- 1 From the Embedded Web Server, click **Settings > Security > Disk Encryption**.

Note: Disk Encryption appears in the Security Menu only when a formatted, non-defective printer hard disk is installed.

- 2 From the Disk encryption menu, select **Enable**.

Notes:

- Enabling disk encryption will erase the content of the printer hard disk.
- Disk encryption can take from several minutes to more than an hour, during which the printer will be unavailable for other user tasks.

- 3 Click **Submit**.

Using the printer control panel

- 1 Turn off the printer.

- 2 Hold down **2_{ABC}** and **6_{MNO}** while turning the printer on. Release the buttons only when the screen with the progress bar appears.

The printer performs a power-on sequence, and then the Configuration menu appears. Once the printer is fully powered up, the touch screen displays a list of functions, instead of standard home screen icons such as Copy or Fax.

- 3 Touch **Disk Encryption > Enable**.

Note: Enabling disk encryption will erase the contents of the printer hard disk.

- 4 Touch **Yes** to proceed with disk wiping.

A status bar will indicate the progress of the disk wiping task. After the disk has been encrypted, the printer will return to the Enable/Disable screen.

Notes:

- Do not turn off the printer during the encryption process. Doing so may result in loss of data.
- Disk encryption can take from several minutes to more than an hour, during which the printer will be unavailable for other user tasks.

- 5 Touch **Back**, and then **Exit Config Menu**.

The printer will power-on reset, and then return to normal operating mode.

Maintaining the printer

Cleaning the exterior of the printer

- 1 Make sure that the printer is turned off and unplugged from the wall outlet.

 **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** To avoid the risk of electric shock when cleaning the exterior of the printer, unplug the power cord from the wall outlet and disconnect all cables to the printer before proceeding.

- 2 Remove paper from the standard exit bin.

- 3 Dampen a clean, lint-free cloth with water.

Warning—Potential Damage: Do not use household cleaners or detergents, as they may damage the finish of the printer.

- 4 Wipe only the outside of the printer, making sure to include the standard exit bin.

Warning—Potential Damage: Using a damp cloth to clean the interior may cause damage to your printer.

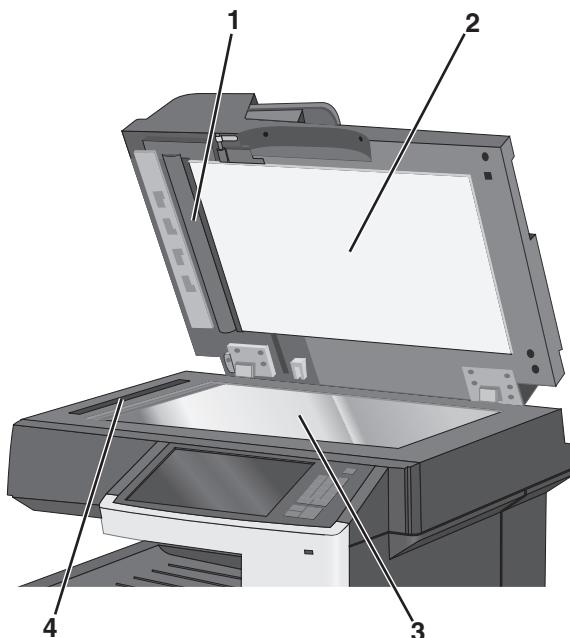
- 5 Make sure the paper support and standard exit bin are dry before beginning a new print job.

Cleaning the scanner glass

Clean the scanner glass if you encounter print quality problems, such as streaks on copied or scanned images.

- 1 Slightly dampen a soft, lint-free cloth or paper towel with water.

- 2 Open the scanner cover.



1	White underside of the ADF cover
2	White underside of the scanner cover

3	Scanner glass
4	ADF glass

3 Wipe the areas shown and let them dry.

4 Close the scanner cover.

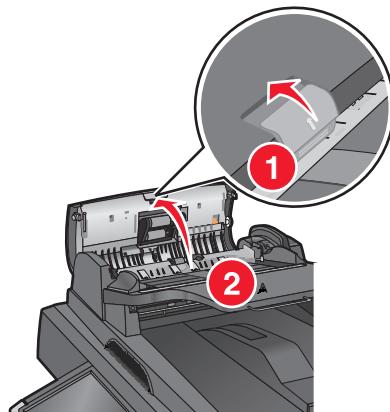
Cleaning the ADF parts

Clean the ADF parts periodically to maintain optimal printing performance. Residue on the ADF parts may cause print quality issues and false 28x paper jam messages.

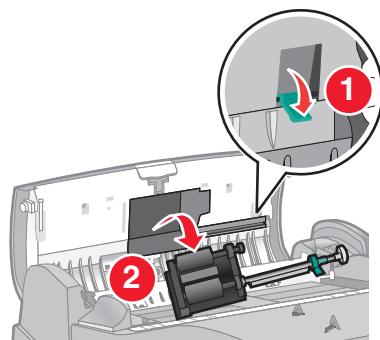
1 Turn the printer off.

2 Slightly dampen a soft, lint-free cloth with water.

3 Open the ADF cover.

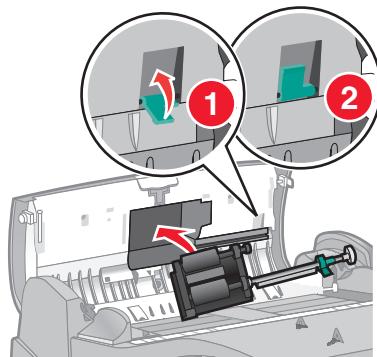


4 Remove the pick roller assembly.



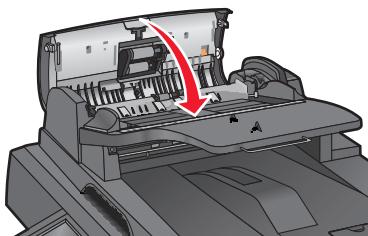
5 Wipe the surface of both pick rollers.

6 Reinsert the pick roller assembly.



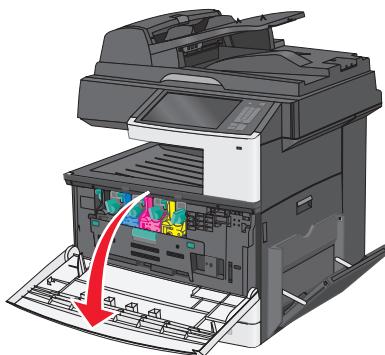
7 Wipe the entire surface under the ADF cover, including the two small white rollers.

8 Close the ADF cover.

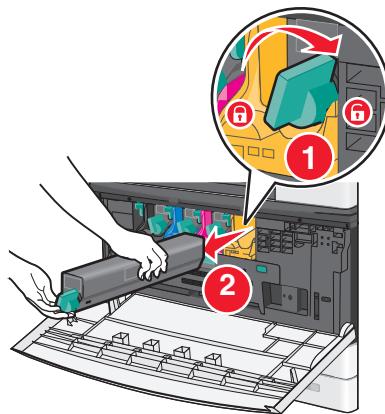


Cleaning the printhead lenses

1 Open the front door.

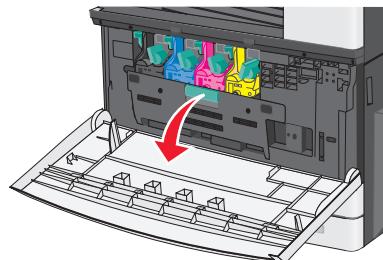


2 Turn the toner lock lever to the right and pull the toner cartridge out.

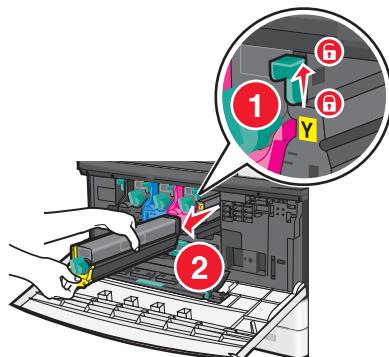


3 Remove the imaging unit:

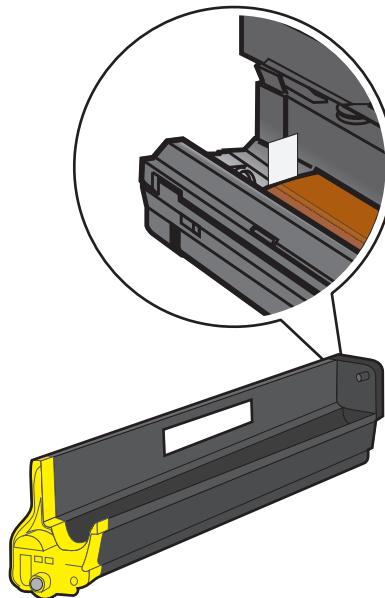
a Open the internal cover.



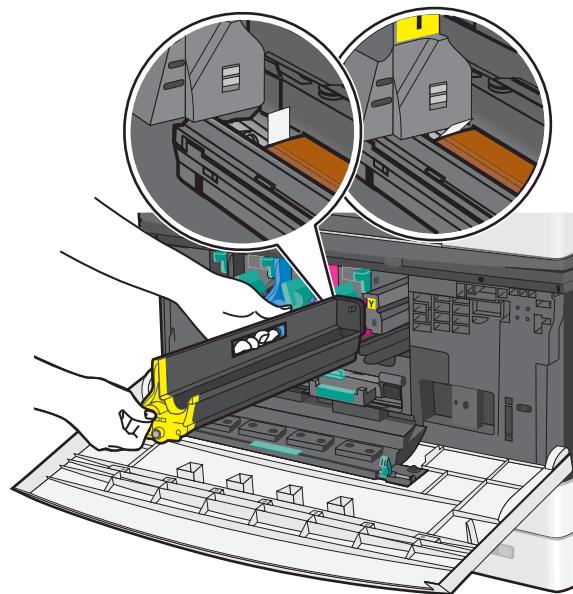
b Push the imaging unit lock lever up and pull out the imaging unit.



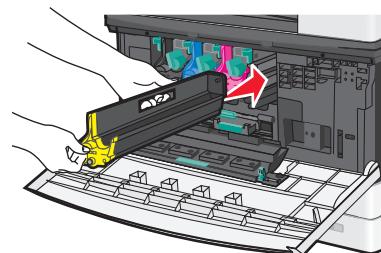
- 4 Locate the LED wipe at the end of the imaging unit. Make sure it is in the correct position.



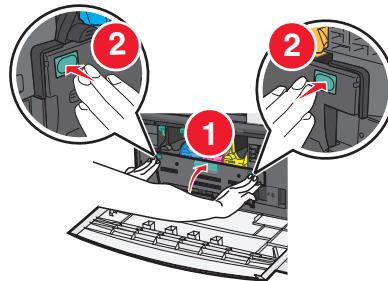
- 5 Reinstall the imaging unit. When inserted into the printer, the LED wipe will rub across the row of LEDs, thus cleaning the printhead lenses.



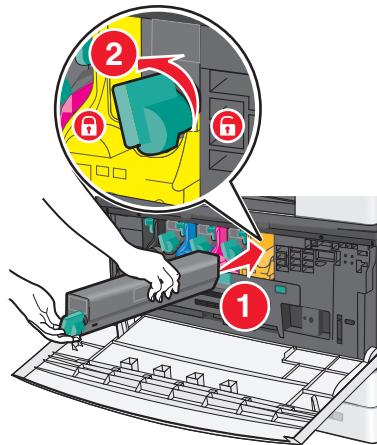
- a Insert the imaging unit into the printer until it *clicks* into place.



- b** Using both hands, push the sides of the internal cover firmly until the cover *clicks* into place.

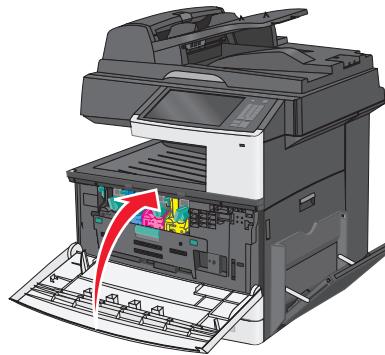


- 6** Insert the toner cartridge into the printer and then turn the toner lock lever to the left.



- 7** Repeat step 2–6 to for all imaging units.

- 8** Close the front door.



Storing supplies

Choose a cool, clean storage area for the printer supplies. Store supplies right side up in their original packing until you are ready to use them.

Do not expose supplies to:

- Direct sunlight
- Temperatures above 35°C (95°F)
- High humidity above 80%

- Salty air
- Corrosive gases
- Heavy dust

Checking the status of supplies

A message appears on the display when a replacement supply item is needed or when maintenance is required.

Checking the status of supplies from the printer control panel

From the home screen, touch **Status/Supplies > View Supplies**.

Checking the status of supplies from a network computer

Note: The computer must be connected to the same network as the printer.

- 1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

- 2 Click **Device Status**.

The Device Status page appears, displaying a summary of supply levels.

Ordering supplies

To order supplies in the U.S., contact Lexmark at 1-800-539-6275 for information about Lexmark authorized supplies dealers in your area. In other countries or regions, visit the Lexmark Web site at www.lexmark.com or contact the place where you purchased the printer.

Note: All life estimates for printer supplies assume printing on letter- or A4-size plain paper.

Ordering toner cartridges

When **88.xx [color] cartridge low**, or **88.xx [color] cartridge nearly low** appears, order a new cartridge.

When **88.2x Replace [color] cartridge** appears, replace the specified cartridge.

Estimated cartridge yield is based on the ISO/IEC 19798 standard (with about 5% coverage per color). Extremely low print coverage (less than 1.25% for a color) for extended periods of time may negatively affect actual yield for that color and may cause cartridge parts to fail prior to exhaustion of toner.

Recommended toner cartridges and part numbers

Part name	Part number
Black high-yield toner cartridge	X925H2KG
Cyan high-yield toner cartridge	X925H2CG
Magenta high-yield toner cartridge	X925H2MG
Yellow high-yield toner cartridge	X925H2YG

Ordering imaging units

When **84.xx [Color] imaging unit low**, or **84.xx [Color] imaging unit nearly low** appears, order a replacement imaging unit.

When **84.xx Replace [color] imaging unit and [color] cartridge** appears, replace the specified imaging unit and toner cartridge.

Recommended imaging units and part numbers

Part name	Part number
Black imaging unit	C925X72G
Yellow imaging unit	C925X75G
Magenta imaging unit	C925X74G
Cyan imaging unit	C925X73G

Ordering a fuser or a transfer module

When **80.xx Fuser life warning**, **80.xx Fuser near life warning**, or **83.xx Transfer module life warning** appears, order a replacement fuser or a transfer module.

When **80.xx Replace fuser** or **83.xx Replace transfer module** appears, install the new fuser or the new transfer module. For installation information, see the documentation that came with the part.

Part name	Part number
Fuser	40X6013 (110 volts) 40X6093 (220 volts)
Transfer module	40X6011

Ordering a waste toner bottle

When **82.xx Waste toner bottle nearly full** appears, order a replacement waste toner bottle.

When **82.xx Replace waste toner bottle** appears, replace the waste toner bottle.

Note: Waste toner bottle reuse is not recommended.

Part name	Part number
Waste toner bottle	C925X76G

Ordering ADF replacement parts

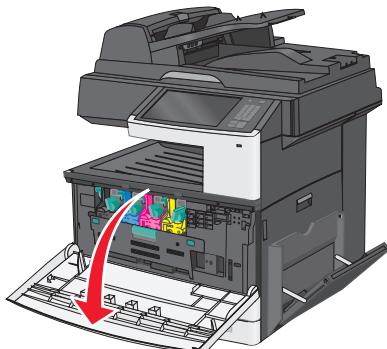
Order ADF replacement parts if you experience problems with paper double-feeding or failing to feed through the ADF.

Part name	Part number
ADF separator roll	40X6328
ADF pick roll	40X6327

Replacing Supplies

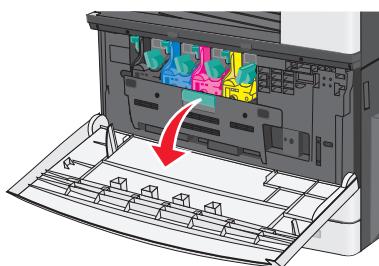
Replacing an imaging unit

- 1 Open the front door.

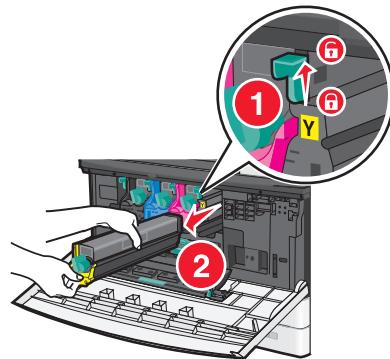


Warning—Potential Damage: To avoid overexposing the imaging units, do not leave the door open for more than 10 minutes.

- 2 Open the internal cover.

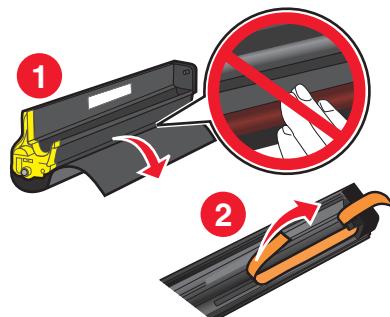


3 Push the imaging unit lock lever up and pull out the imaging unit with the toner cartridge attached to it.

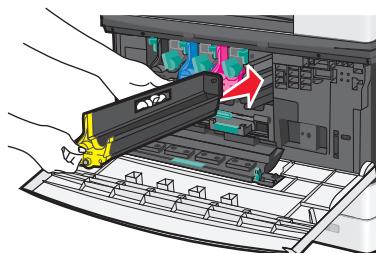


4 Unpack the replacement imaging unit.

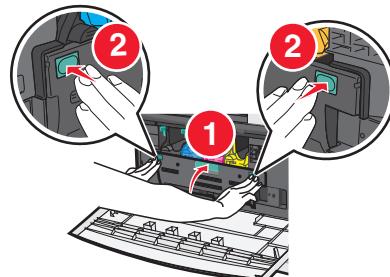
5 Peel off the black protective sheet and the toner sealing tape.



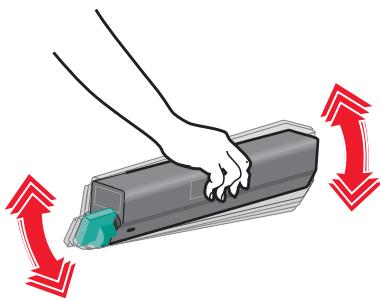
6 Insert the imaging unit into the printer until it *clicks* it into place.



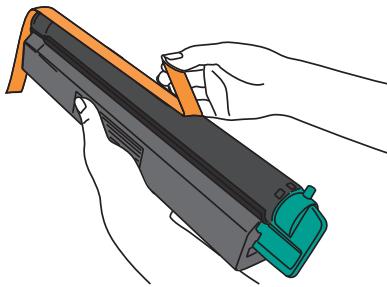
7 Using both hands, push the sides of the internal cover firmly until the cover *clicks* into place.



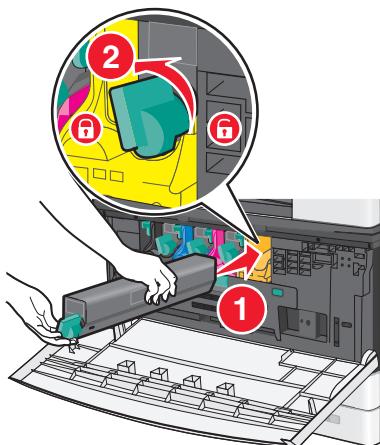
8 Unpack the toner cartridge, and then shake it to redistribute the toner.



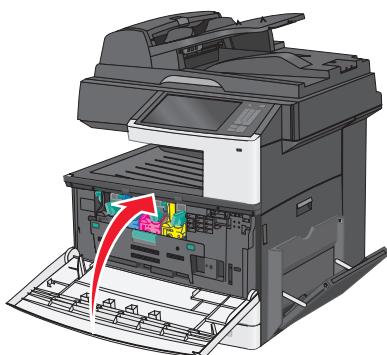
9 Peel off the toner sealing tape.



10 Insert the toner cartridge and turn the lock lever to the left.



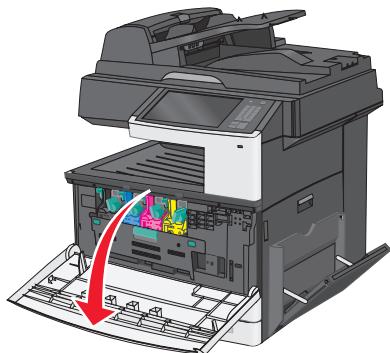
11 Close the front door.



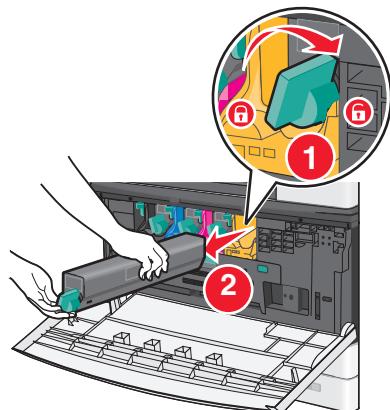
Replacing a toner cartridge

- 1 Open the front door.

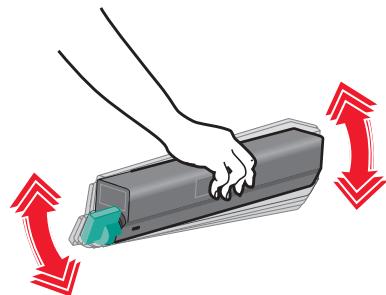
Warning—Potential Damage: To avoid overexposing the imaging units, do not leave the door open for more than 10 minutes.



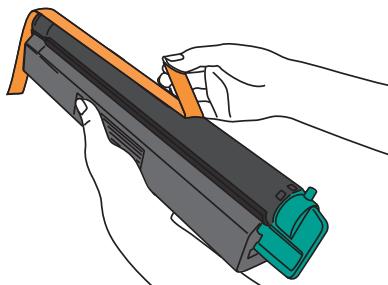
- 2 Turn the toner lock lever to the right and pull the toner cartridge out.



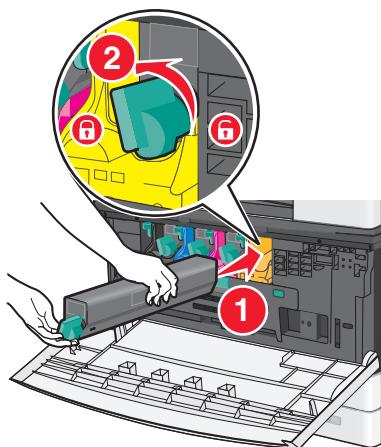
- 3 Unpack the toner cartridge, and then shake it to redistribute the toner.



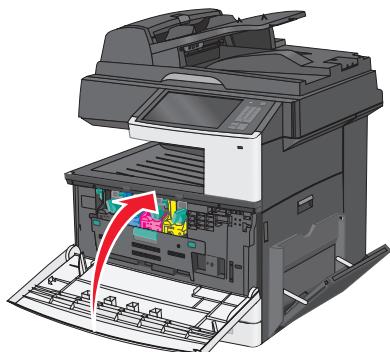
4 Peel off the toner sealing tape.



5 Insert the new cartridge into the printer and then turn the toner lock lever to the left.



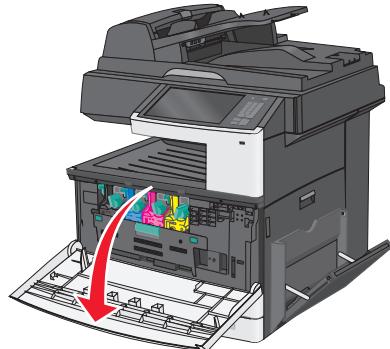
6 Close the front door.



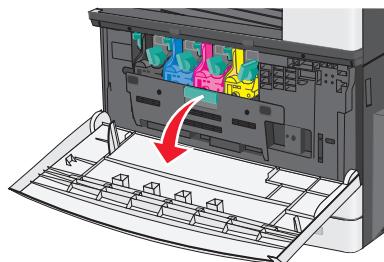
Replacing the waste toner bottle

1 Turn the printer off.

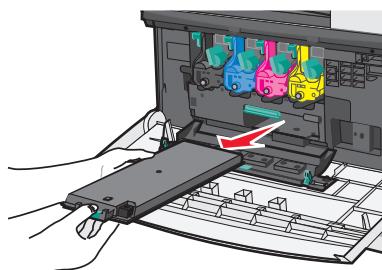
2 Open the front door.



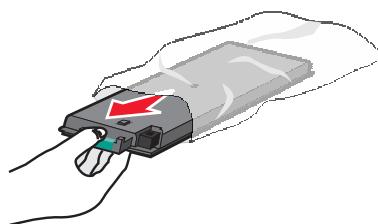
3 Open the internal cover.



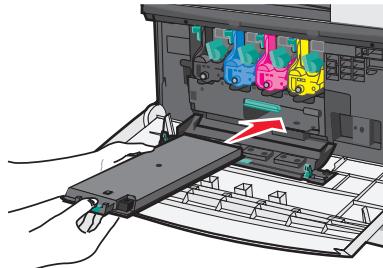
4 Pull out the used waste toner bottle.



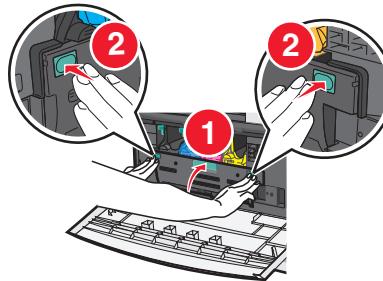
5 Unpack the new waste toner bottle.



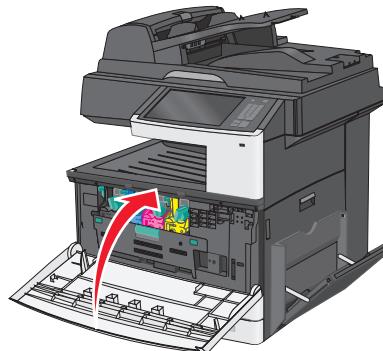
6 Insert the new waste toner bottle into the printer.



7 Using both hands, push the sides of the internal cover firmly until it *clicks* into place.



8 Close the front door.



9 From the printer control panel, reset the Waste Toner Bottle counter in the Supplies menu.

Moving the printer

Before moving the printer

⚠ CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY: The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely.

⚠ CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY: Before moving the printer, follow these guidelines to avoid personal injury or printer damage:

- Turn the printer off using the power switch, and then unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.
- Disconnect all cords and cables from the printer before moving it.

- Lift the printer off the optional tray, and then set it aside instead of trying to lift the tray and printer at the same time.

Note: Use the handholds located on both sides of the printer to lift it.

Warning—Potential Damage: Damage to the printer caused by improper moving is not covered by the printer warranty.

Moving the printer to another location

The printer and options can be safely moved to another location by following these precautions:

- Any cart used to move the printer must have a surface able to support the full footprint of the printer. Any cart used to move the options must have a surface able to support the dimensions of the options.
- Keep the printer in an upright position.
- Avoid severe jarring movements.

Shipping the printer

When shipping the printer, use the original packaging or call the place of purchase for a relocation kit.

Administrative support

Finding advanced networking and administrator information

This chapter covers basic administrative support tasks using the Embedded Web Server. For more advanced system support tasks, see the *Networking Guide* on the *Software and Documentation* CD and the *Embedded Web Server Administrator's Guide* on the Lexmark Web site at <http://support.lexmark.com>.

Using the Embedded Web Server

If the printer is installed on a network, then the Embedded Web Server is available for a range of functions including:

- Viewing a virtual display of the printer control panel
- Checking the status of the printer supplies
- Configuring printer settings
- Configuring network settings
- Viewing reports

To access the Embedded Web Server for your printer:

- 1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

Notes:

- If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then print a network setup page, and then locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Embedded Web Server correctly.

- 2 Press **Enter**.

Checking the virtual display

- 1 Open an Embedded Web Server associated with your printer.

Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

- 2 Check the virtual display that appears in the top left corner of the screen.

The virtual display works as an actual display would work on a printer control panel, showing printer messages.

Checking the status of the printer

- 1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Device Status.**

The device status shows the following:

- Paper tray settings
- Level of toner in the print cartridge
- Percentage of life remaining in the maintenance kit
- Capacity measurements of certain printer parts

Setting up e-mail alerts

You can have the printer send you an e-mail when the supplies are getting low or when the paper needs to be changed, added, or when there is a paper jam.

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings.**

3 Under Other Settings, click **E-mail Alert Setup.**

4 Select the items for notification, and type the e-mail address to receive the alerts.

5 Click **Submit.**

Note: Contact your system support person to set up the e-mail server.

Viewing reports

You can view some reports from the Embedded Web Server. These reports are useful for assessing the status of the printer, the network, and supplies.

To view reports from a network printer:

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Reports, and then click the type of report you want to view.**

Restoring factory default settings

If you want to retain a list of the current menu settings for reference, then print a menu settings page before restoring the factory default settings.

Warning—Potential Damage: Restoring factory defaults returns most printer settings to the original factory default settings. Exceptions include the display language, custom sizes and messages, and network/port menu settings. All downloads stored in RAM are deleted. Downloads stored in flash memory or on a printer hard disk are not affected.

From the home screen, navigate to:

 > **Settings** > **General Settings** > **Factory Defaults** > **Restore Now** > **Submit**

Clearing jams

By carefully selecting paper and loading it properly, you can avoid most jams. If jams do occur, follow the steps outlined in this section.

To clear a jam message and resume printing, clear the entire paper path, and then touch **Continue, jam cleared**. If Jam Recovery is set to On, then the printer prints a new copy of the page that jammed. If Jam Recovery is set to Auto, then the printer reprints the jammed page if enough printer memory is available.

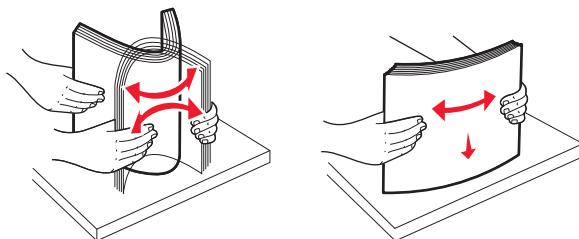
Avoiding jams

Paper tray recommendations

- Make sure the paper lies flat in the tray.
- Do not remove a tray while the printer is printing.
- Do not load a tray while the printer is printing. Load it prior to printing, or wait for a prompt to load it.
- Do not load too much paper. Make sure the stack height does not exceed the indicated maximum height.
- Make sure the guides in the tray or the multipurpose feeder are properly positioned and are not pressing too tightly against the paper or envelopes.
- Push the tray in firmly after loading paper.

Paper recommendations

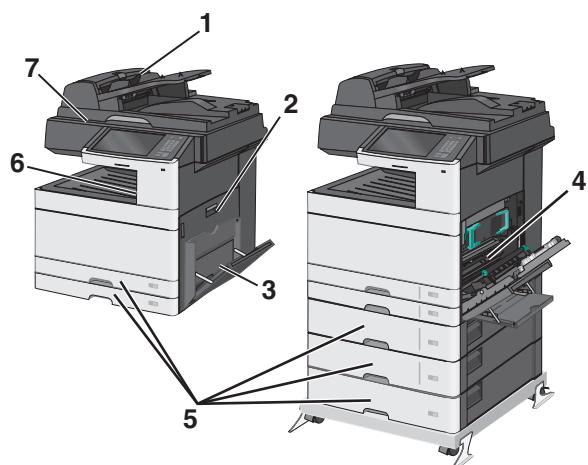
- Use only recommended paper or specialty media.
- Do not load wrinkled, creased, damp, bent, or curled paper.
- Flex and straighten paper before loading it.



- Do not use paper that has been cut or trimmed by hand.
- Do not mix paper sizes, weights, or types in the same stack.
- Make sure all sizes and types are set correctly in the printer control panel menus.
- Store paper per manufacturer recommendations.

Understanding jam numbers and locations

When a jam occurs, a message indicating the jam location appears on the display. Open doors and covers and remove trays to access jam locations. To resolve any paper jam message, you must clear all jammed paper from the paper path.



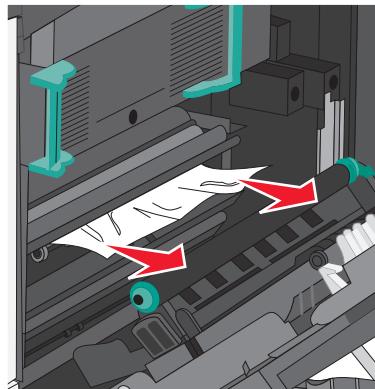
Area	Jam numbers	What to do
1	280-289	<p>1 Remove all paper from the ADF.</p> <p>2 Flex and stack the paper.</p> <p>3 Reload the ADF.</p> <p>4 Adjust the paper guide.</p> <p>5 Touch Continue, jam cleared.</p>
2	200-201	Open the side cover, and then remove any jams.
3	250	<p>1 Remove all media from the multipurpose feeder.</p> <p>2 Flex and stack the media.</p> <p>3 Reload the multipurpose feeder.</p> <p>4 Adjust the paper guide.</p> <p>5 Touch Continue, jam cleared.</p>
4	230-239	Open the side cover, lower the duplex unit, and then remove the jam.
5	24x	Open each tray, and then remove any jams.
6	203	Grasp any jammed paper visible in the standard exit bin.
7	451	Open the scan cover, and then remove any jams.

200 paper jam

1 Open the side door.

 **CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

2 Pull the jammed paper up and out to remove it from the paper path.



Notes:

- Make sure all paper fragments are removed.
- If the page is in the fuser, the fuser nip release lever should be lowered and should be switched to envelope mode.
- After removing the jammed page, return the lever to the proper position.

3 Close the side door.

4 Touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

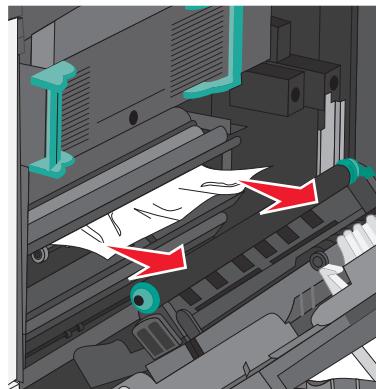
201 paper jam

1 Open the side door.

 **CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

2 Determine where the jam is located, and then remove it:

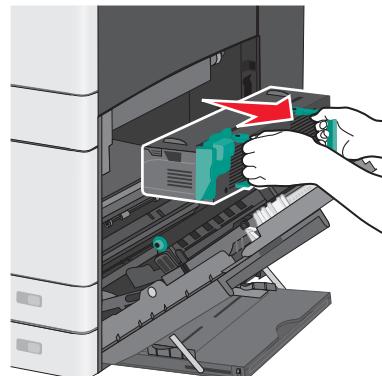
a If the paper is visible under the fuser, then grasp it on each side and pull it out.



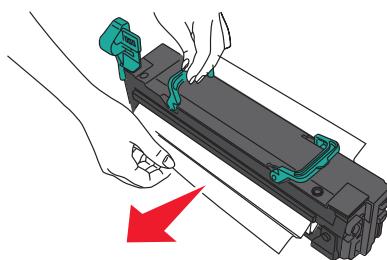
b If the paper is not visible, then you will need to remove the fuser unit.

Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch the center of the fuser unit. Doing so will damage the fuser.

1 Lift the handles on each side of the fuser, and then pull to remove the fuser unit.



2 Remove the jammed paper.

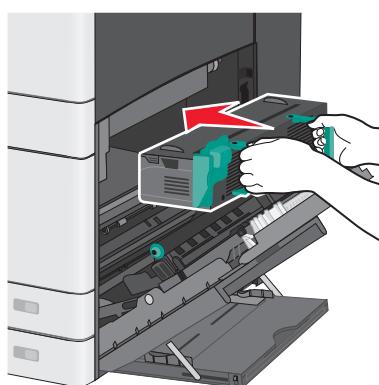


Notes:

- Make sure all paper fragments are removed.
- Pull the jammed paper downwards.

- If the paper is in the fuser, then the fuser nip release lever should be lowered and should be switched to envelope mode.
- After removing the jammed paper, return the lever to the proper position.

3 Align the fuser unit using the handles on each side, and then place it back into the printer.

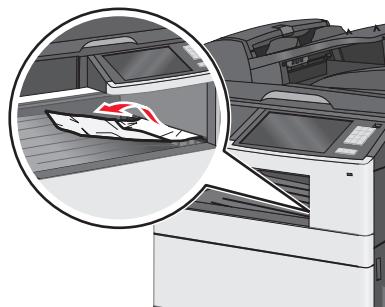


3 Close the side door.

4 Touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

203 paper jam

1 Grasp any jammed paper visible in the standard exit bin, and then gently pull it out.



Notes:

- Make sure all paper fragments are removed.
- If the page is in the fuser, then the fuser nip release lever should be lowered and should be switched to envelope mode.
- After removing the jammed page, return the lever to the proper position.

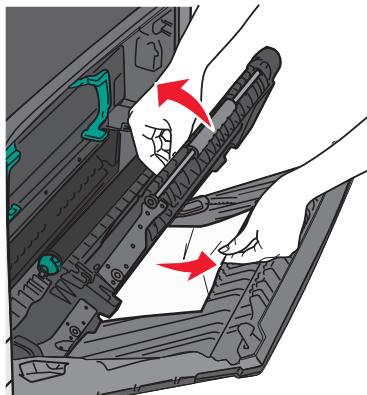
2 Touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

230 paper jam

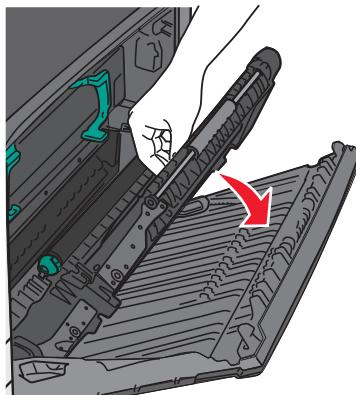
- 1 Open the side door.
- 2 Hold onto the handles of the duplexing unit, open the cover, and then remove any jammed paper.



CAUTION—HOT SURFACE: The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.



- 3 Close the cover on the duplexing unit.



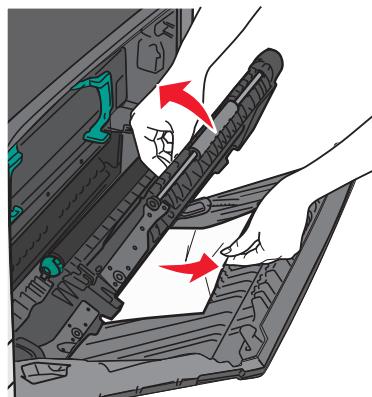
- 4 Close the side door.
- 5 Touch **Continue, jam cleared.**

231–239 paper jams

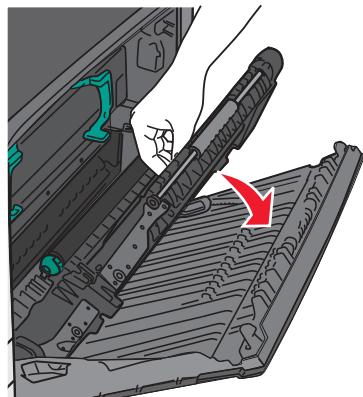
- 1 Open the side door.
- 2 Hold onto the handles of the duplexing unit, open the cover, and then remove any jammed paper.



CAUTION—HOT SURFACE: The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.



3 Close the cover of the duplexing unit.



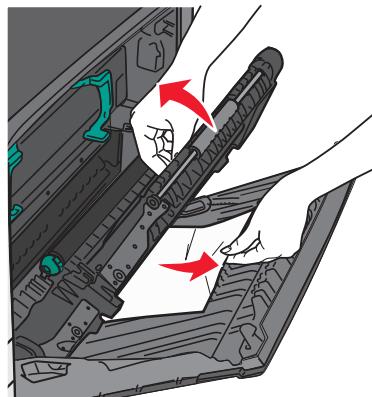
4 Close the side door.

5 Touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

24x paper jam

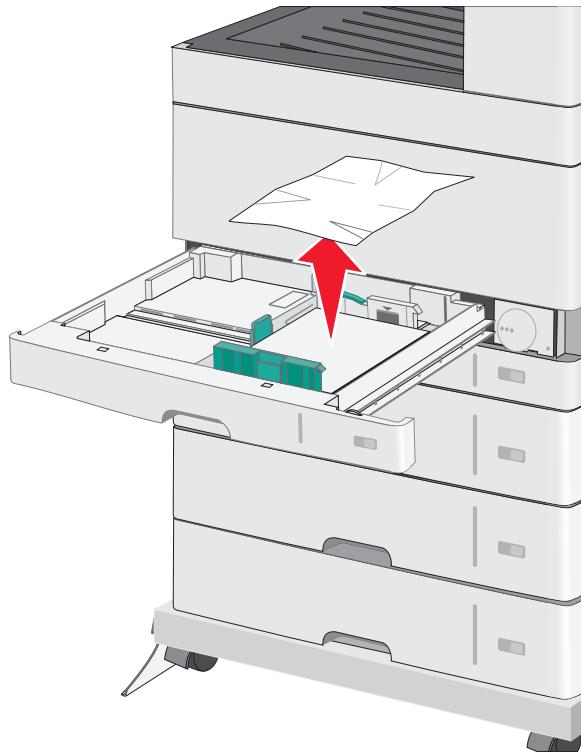
Paper jam in Tray 1

1 Check the side access door to trays and then pull the jammed pages out.



Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.

- 2 Open Tray 1, and then pull the jammed pages straight up and out.

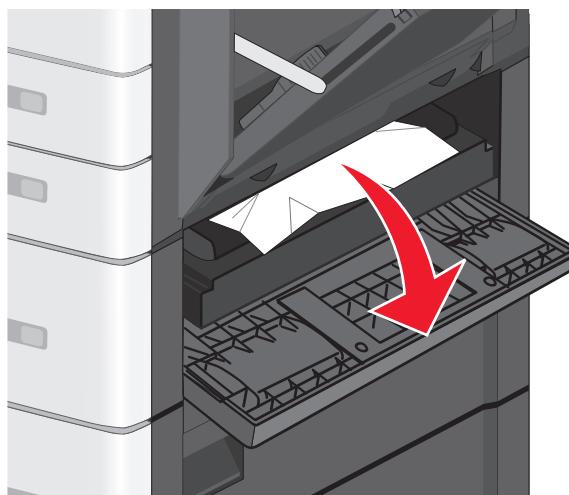


Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.

- 3 Close Tray 1.
- 4 Touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

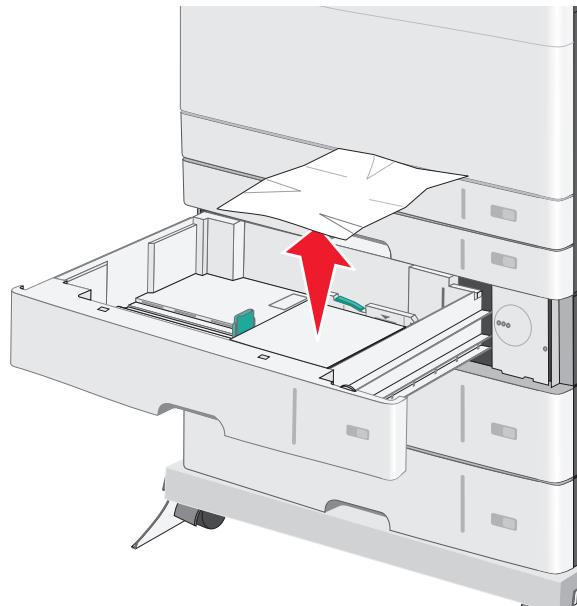
Paper jam in one of the optional trays

- 1 Check the side access door to trays and then pull the jammed pages out.



Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.

- 2 Open the specified tray, and then pull the jammed pages out.



Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.

- 3 Close the tray.
- 4 Touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

250 paper jam

- 1 Remove any jammed pages from the multipurpose feeder.



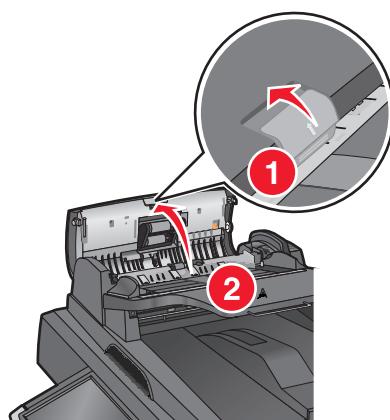
- 2 Load paper into the multipurpose feeder.

- 3 Touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

280–289 paper jams

- 1 Remove all original documents from the ADF.

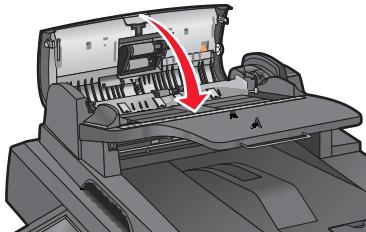
- 2 Open the ADF cover.



3 Grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.

4 Close the ADF cover.



5 Reload original documents back into the ADF, straighten the stack, and then adjust the paper guide.

6 From the printer control panel, touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

290–292 paper jams

290 paper jam

Close the ADF cover.

291 paper jam

Close the scanner glass cover.

292 paper jam

Try one or more of the following:

- Close the ADF cover.
- Close the scanner cover.
- Contact your system support system person.

451 paper jam

1 Open the scanner cover, and then remove any jammed paper.

2 Close the scanner cover.

3 Touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

Troubleshooting

Solving basic printer problems

If there are basic printer problems, or the printer is unresponsive, make sure:

- The power cord is plugged into the printer and a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- The electrical outlet is not turned off by any switch or breaker.
- The printer is not plugged into any surge protectors, uninterrupted power supplies, or extension cords.
- Other electronic equipment plugged into the outlet is working.
- The printer is turned on. Check the printer power switch.
- The printer cable is securely attached to the printer and the host computer, print server, option, or other network device.
- All options are properly installed.
- The printer driver settings are correct.

Once you have checked each of these possibilities, turn the printer off, wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer back on. This often fixes the problem.

Understanding printer messages

Adjusting color

Wait for the process to complete.

An error has occurred with the USB drive. Please remove and reinsert drive.

Try one or more of the following:

- Remove and reinsert the flash drive.
- If the error message remains, the flash memory may be defective and require replacement.

Change [paper source] to [custom type name]

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Use current [paper source]** to ignore the message and print from the selected tray.
- Load the correct paper size and type in the tray, verify the paper size and type settings are specified in the printer control panel Paper menu, and then touch **Paper changed, continue**.
- Touch **Cancel job** to cancel the print job.

Change [paper source] to [custom type name] load [orientation]

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Use current [paper source]** to ignore the message and print from the selected tray.
- Load the correct paper size and type in the tray, verify the paper size and type settings are specified in the printer control panel Paper menu, and then touch **Paper changed, continue**.
- Touch **Cancel job** to cancel the print job.

Change [paper source] to [custom string]

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Use current [paper source]** to ignore the message and print from the selected tray.
- Load the correct paper size and type in the tray, verify the paper size and type settings are specified in the printer control panel Paper menu, and then touch **Paper changed, continue**.
- Touch **Cancel job** to cancel the print job.

Change [paper source] to [custom string] load [orientation]

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Use current [paper source]** to ignore the message and print from the selected tray.
- Load the correct paper size and type in the tray, verify the paper size and type settings are specified in the printer control panel Paper menu, and then touch **Paper changed, continue**.
- Touch **Cancel job** to cancel the print job.

Change [paper source] to [paper size] [paper type]

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Use current [paper source]** to ignore the message and print from the selected tray.
- Load the correct paper size and type in the tray, verify the paper size and type settings are specified in the printer control panel Paper menu, and then touch **Paper changed, continue**.
- Touch **Cancel job** to cancel the print job.

Change [paper source] to [paper size] [paper type] load [orientation]

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Use current [paper source]** to ignore the message and print from the selected tray.
- Load the correct paper size and type in the tray, verify the paper size and type settings are specified in the printer control panel Paper menu, and then touch **Paper changed, continue**.
- Touch **Cancel job** to cancel the print job.

Close [tray] door

Close the specified tray door.

Close front or side door

Close the front or side door of the printer.

Disk corrupted

The printer attempted a hard disk recovery on a corrupted hard disk, and the hard disk cannot be repaired. The hard disk must be reformatted.

Touch **Format disk** to reformat the printer hard disk and clear the message.

Note: Formatting deletes all the files stored on the printer hard disk.

Disk near full. Securely clearing disk space.

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.
- Delete fonts, macros, and other data stored on the printer hard disk.
- Install a hard disk with higher capacity.

Disk problem

The printer hard disk must be reformatted.

Touch **Format disk** to reformat the printer hard disk and clear the message.

Note: Formatting deletes all the files stored on the printer hard disk.

Error reading USB drive. Remove USB.

An unsupported USB device has been inserted. Remove the USB device, and then install a supported one.

Insert Tray [x]

Insert the specified tray into the printer.

Install Tray [x]

Try one or more of the following:

- Install the specified tray:
 - 1 Turn the printer off.
 - 2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
 - 3 Install the specified tray.
 - 4 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
 - 5 Turn the printer back on.
- Cancel the print job.

Load [src] with [custom type name]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the specified paper in the tray or feeder.
- Touch **Paper loaded, continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

If the printer finds a tray that has the correct paper type and size, it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot find a tray with the correct paper type and size, it prints from the default paper source.

- Cancel the print job.

Load [src] with [custom string]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the specified paper in the tray or feeder.
- Touch **Paper loaded, continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

If the printer finds a tray that has the correct paper type and size, it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot find a tray with the correct paper type and size, it prints from the default paper source.

- Cancel the print job.

Load [src] with [size]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the specified paper in the tray or feeder.
- Touch **Paper loaded, continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

If the printer finds a tray that has the correct paper type and size, it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot find a tray with the correct paper type and size, it feeds from the default paper source.

- Cancel the print job.

Load [src] with [type] [size]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the specified paper in the tray or feeder.
- Touch **Paper loaded, continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

If the printer finds a tray that has the correct paper type and size, it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot find a tray with the correct paper type and size, it feeds from the default paper source.

- Cancel the print job.

Load Manual Feeder with [custom type name]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the specified paper in the manual feeder.
- Touch **Prompt each page, paper loaded** or **Do not prompt, paper loaded** to clear the message and continue printing.
- Touch **Automatically select paper** to use the paper loaded in the tray.
- Cancel the print job.

Load Manual Feeder with [custom string]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the specified paper in the manual feeder.
- Touch **Prompt each page, paper loaded** or **Do not prompt, paper loaded** to clear the message and continue printing.
- Touch **Automatically select paper** to use the paper loaded in the tray.
- Cancel the print job.

Load Manual Feeder with [paper size]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the specified paper in the manual feeder.
- Touch **Prompt each page, paper loaded** or **Do not prompt, paper loaded** to clear the message and continue printing.
- Touch **Automatically select paper** to use the paper loaded in the tray.
- Cancel the print job.

Load Manual Feeder with [paper type] [paper size]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the specified paper in the manual feeder.
- Touch **Prompt each page, paper loaded** or **Do not prompt, paper loaded** to clear the message and continue printing.
- Touch **Automatically select paper** to use the paper loaded in the tray.
- Cancel the print job.

Paper changes needed

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Use current supplies** to clear the message and continue printing.
- Cancel the current print job.

Remove paper from standard output bin

Remove the paper stack from the standard output bin.

Replace separator pad

Install a new separator pad.

Restore held jobs?

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Restore** to restore all held jobs stored on the printer hard disk.
- Touch **Do not restore** if you do not want any print jobs to be restored.

Some held jobs were not restored

Touch **Continue** to delete the specified job.

Note: Held jobs that are not restored stay on the hard disk and are inaccessible.

Supply needed to complete job

A supply needed to complete the job is missing. Touch **Cancel** to clear the message.

Tray [x] paper size unsupported

The paper size in the specified tray is unsupported. Replace it with a supported paper size.

Unsupported disk

An unsupported disk has been inserted. Remove the unsupported disk, and then install a supported one.

1565 Emulation error, load emulation option

The printer automatically clears the message in 30 seconds, and then disables the download emulator on the firmware card.

30.xx Missing [color] cartridge and/or [color] imaging unit

Try one or more of the following:

- Remove and reinstall the specified toner cartridge or imaging unit. For instructions on removing a toner cartridge or imaging unit, touch **More information**.
- Install a new toner cartridge or imaging unit, following the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

31.xx Missing or defective [color] cartridge

Try one or more of the following:

- 1 Remove and reinstall the specified print cartridge.
For instructions on removing a print cartridge, touch **More Information**.
- 2 Touch **Continue** to clear the message.

Note: If the message is not cleared, then replace the defective print cartridge.

32.xx [color] cartridge part number unsupported by device

Remove the unsupported toner cartridge, and then install a supported one.

34 Incorrect paper size, open [src]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the appropriate paper or specialty media in the proper tray.
- Confirm that the wheel on tray 1 is set to the paper size loaded in the tray. Make sure this size is the size you are trying to print.
- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and print using a different tray.
- Check length and width guides of the tray and make sure the paper is properly loaded in the tray.
- Make sure the Print Properties or Print dialog settings have the correct paper size and type.
- Check that the paper size is correctly set. For example, if the MP Feeder Size is set to Universal, make sure the paper is large enough for the data being printed.
- Cancel the print job.

35 Insufficient memory to support Resource Save feature

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to disable Resource Save and continue printing.
- To enable Resource Save after receiving this message, make sure the link buffers are set to Auto, and then exit the menus to activate the link buffer changes. When **Ready** appears, enable Resource Save.
- Install additional memory.

36 Printer service required

Touch **Continue** to clear the message or contact customer support.

37 Insufficient memory to collate job

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to print the portion of the job already stored and begin collating the rest of the print job.
- Cancel the current print job.

37 Insufficient memory for Flash Memory Defragment operation

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to stop the defragment operation and continue printing.
- Delete fonts, macros, and other data in printer memory.
- Install additional printer memory.

37 Insufficient memory, some Held Jobs were deleted

The printer deleted some held jobs in order to process current jobs.

Touch **Continue** to clear the message.

37 Insufficient memory, some held jobs will not be restored

The printer was unable to restore some or all of the confidential or held jobs on the printer hard disk.

Touch **Continue** to clear the message.

38 Memory full

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Cancel job** to clear the message.
- Install additional printer memory.

39 Complex page, some data may not have printed

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.
- Cancel the current print job.
- Install additional printer memory.

51 Defective flash detected

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.
- Cancel the current print job.

52 Not enough free space in flash memory for resources

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.
Downloaded fonts and macros not previously stored in flash memory are deleted.
- Delete fonts, macros, and other data stored in flash memory.
- Upgrade to a larger capacity flash memory card.

53 Unformatted flash detected

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to stop the defragment operation and continue printing.
- Format the flash memory. If the error message remains, the flash memory may be defective and require replacing.

54 Serial option [x] error

Try one or more of the following:

- Check that the serial cable is properly connected and is the correct one for the serial port.
- Check that the serial interface parameters (protocol, baud, parity, and data bits) are set correctly on the printer and host computer.

- Touch **Continue** to continue printing.
- Turn the printer power off and then back on to reset the printer.

54 Standard network software error

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to continue printing.
- Turn the printer off and then back on to reset the printer.
- Upgrade (flash) the network firmware in the printer or print server.

54 Network [x] software error

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to continue printing.
- Turn the printer off, wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer back on.
- Upgrade (flash) the network firmware in the printer.

55 Unsupported option in slot [x]

- 1 Turn the printer off.
- 2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
- 3 Remove the unsupported option card from the printer system board, and then replace it with a supported card.
- 4 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- 5 Turn the printer back on.

56 Parallel port [x] disabled

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message.
The printer discards any data received through the parallel port.
- Make sure the Parallel Buffer menu item is not set to Disabled.

56 Serial port [x] disabled

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message.
The printer discards any data received through the serial port.
- Make sure the Serial Buffer menu is not set to Disabled.

56 Standard parallel port disabled

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message.
The printer discards any data received through the parallel port.
- Make sure the Parallel Buffer menu item is not set to Disabled.

56 Standard USB port disabled

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message.
The printer discards any data received through the USB port.
- Make sure the USB Buffer menu item is not set to Disabled.

56 USB port [x] disabled

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message.
The printer discards any data received through the USB port.
- Make sure the USB Buffer menu is not set to Disabled.

57 Configuration change, some held jobs were not restored

Something has changed in the printer to invalidate the held jobs. Possible changes include:

- The printer firmware has been updated.
- Paper input options needed for the print job were removed.
- The print job was created using data from a device in the USB port and the device is no longer in the USB port.
- The printer hard disk contains print jobs that were stored while installed in a different printer model.

Touch **Continue** to clear the message.

58 Input config error

- 1 Turn the printer off.
- 2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
- 3 Check if all tray configurations are correct. Remove unnecessary trays if needed.
- 4 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- 5 Turn the printer back on.

58 Too many disks installed

- 1 Turn the printer off.
- 2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.

- 3 Remove the excess disks.
- 4 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- 5 Turn the printer back on.

58 Too many flash options installed

- 1 Turn the printer off.
- 2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
- 3 Remove the excess flash memory.
- 4 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded outlet.
- 5 Turn the printer back on.

58 Too many trays attached

- 1 Turn the printer off.
- 2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
- 3 Remove the additional trays.
- 4 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded outlet.
- 5 Turn the printer back on.

61 Remove defective disk

Try one or more of the following:

- Remove the defective printer hard disk.
- Install a different printer hard disk before performing any operations that require a printer hard disk.

62 Disk full

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue processing.
- Delete fonts, macros, and other data stored on the printer hard disk.
- Install a printer hard disk with larger capacity.

80.xx Fuser near life warning

- 1 Order a replacement fuser immediately.
- 2 When print quality is reduced, install the new fuser, following the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.
- 3 Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

80.xx Fuser life warning

- Order a replacement fuser immediately. When print quality is reduced, install the new fuser, following the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.
- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

80.xx Replace fuser

Replace the fuser using the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

80.xx Fuser missing

- 1 Replace the fuser, following the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.
- 2 Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

82.xx Replace waste toner bottle

- 1 Replace the waste toner bottle.

For instructions on replacing the waste toner bottle, from the printer control panel touch **More Information**.

- 2 Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

82.xx Waste toner bottle nearly full

Order a replacement waste toner bottle immediately.

- 1 Replace the waste toner bottle.
- For instructions on installing the waste toner bottle, from the printer control panel touch **More Information**.
- 2 Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

83.xx Transfer module life warning

- 1 Replace the transfer module, following the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.
- 2 Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

83.xx Transfer module missing

Insert the transfer module into the printer.

83.xx Replace transfer module

Replace the transfer module, following the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

84 Defective [color] imaging unit

The specified imaging unit is either missing or not functioning properly. Try one or more of the following:

- Remove the specified imaging unit, and then reinstall it.
- Remove the specified imaging unit, and then install a new one.

84.xx [color] imaging unit nearly low

- 1 Order a replacement imaging unit.
- 2 When print quality is reduced, install the new imaging unit, following the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.
- 3 Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

84.xx [color] imaging unit low

- 1 Order a replacement imaging unit immediately.
- 2 When print quality is reduced, install the new imaging unit, following the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.
- 3 Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

84.xx Replace [color] imaging unit and [color] cartridge

- 1 Replace the imaging unit and color cartridge, following the instruction sheets that came with the replacement parts.
- 2 Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

84 Unsupported [color] imaging unit

Replace the specified imaging unit to continue printing.

88.xx [color] cartridge nearly low

- 1 Order a replacement toner cartridge.
- 2 Remove the specified cartridge.
- 3 Firmly shake the cartridge side-to-side and front-to-back several times to redistribute the toner.
- 4 Reinsert the cartridge, and then touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

Note: Repeat this procedure multiple times until the print remains faded, and then replace the cartridge.

88.xx [color] cartridge low

- 1 Order a replacement toner cartridge immediately.
- 2 Remove the specified cartridge.

3 Firmly shake the cartridge side-to-side and front-to-back several times to redistribute the toner.

4 Reinsert the cartridge, and then touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

Note: Repeat this procedure multiple times until the print remains faded, and then replace the cartridge.

88.2x Replace [color] cartridge

The specified toner cartridge is empty.

1 Replace the specified toner cartridge.

2 Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

Solving printing problems

Multiple-language PDF files do not print

The PDF files may contain unavailable fonts.

1 Open the document you want to print in Adobe Acrobat.

2 Click the printer icon > **Advanced** > **Print as image** > **OK** > **OK**.

Printer control panel display is blank or displays only diamonds

The printer self test failed. Turn the printer off, wait about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer on.

If **Ready** does not appear, then turn the printer off and contact Customer Support.

Error message about reading USB drive appears

Make sure the flash drive is supported.

Print jobs do not print

Try one or more of the following:

MAKE SURE THERE IS NO PROBLEM WITH YOUR PRINTER

From the printer control panel, check the status. If necessary, follow the recovery instructions.

MAKE SURE THE PRINTER IS READY TO PRINT

Make sure **Ready** appears on the display before sending a print job.

CHECK IF A SUPPLY IS MISSING OR NEEDS REPLACEMENT

Remove and then reinstall or replace the supply.

CHECK IF THE STANDARD EXIT BIN IS FULL

Remove the paper stack from the standard exit bin.

CHECK IF THE PAPER TRAY IS EMPTY

Load paper in the tray.

MAKE SURE THE CORRECT PRINTER SOFTWARE IS INSTALLED

- Verify that you are using the correct printer software.
- If the printer is connected to your computer through a USB port, then make sure you are running a supported operating system and using a compatible printer software.

MAKE SURE THE INTERNAL PRINT SERVER IS WORKING PROPERLY

- Make sure the internal print server is properly installed and that the printer is connected to the network.
- Print a network setup page and check that the status shows **Connected**. If the status is **Not Connected**, then check the network cables, and then try printing the network setup page again. Contact your system support person to make sure the network is functioning correctly.

The printer software is available on the Lexmark Web site at <http://support.lexmark.com>.

MAKE SURE YOU ARE USING A RECOMMENDED USB, SERIAL, OR ETHERNET CABLE

For more information, visit the Lexmark Web site at <http://support.lexmark.com>.

MAKE SURE PRINTER CABLES ARE SECURELY CONNECTED

Check the cable connections to the printer and print server to make sure they are secure.

For more information, see the setup documentation that came with the printer.

Confidential and other held jobs do not print

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

PARTIAL JOB, NO JOB, OR BLANK PAGE PRINTS

The print job may contain a formatting error or invalid data.

- Delete the print job, and then print it again.
- For PDF documents, recreate the PDF and then print it again.

If you are printing from the Internet, then the printer may be reading multiple job titles as duplicates and deleting all jobs except the first one.

- For Windows users, open Print Properties. From the Print and Hold dialog, select the "Keep duplicate documents" check box under the User name text box before entering a PIN number.
- For Macintosh users, save each print job, naming each job differently, and then send the individual jobs to the printer.

MAKE SURE THE PRINTER HAS SUFFICIENT MEMORY

Free up additional printer memory by scrolling through the list of held jobs and deleting some of them.

Print job takes longer than expected

Try one or more of the following:

REDUCE THE COMPLEXITY OF THE PRINT JOB

Eliminate the number and size of fonts, the number and complexity of images, and the number of pages in the print job.

TURN OFF THE PAGE PROTECT SETTING

From the home screen, navigate to:

 > Settings > General Settings > Print Recovery > Page Protect > Off > 

CHANGE THE ENVIRONMENTAL SETTINGS

When using Eco-Mode or Quiet Mode settings, you may notice a reduction in performance.

Job prints from the wrong tray or on the wrong paper

CHECK THE PAPER TYPE AND PAPER SIZE SETTINGS

Make sure the paper type setting matches the paper loaded in the tray:

- 1 From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the paper type and paper size settings.
- 2 Before sending the job to print, specify the correct type setting:
 - For Windows users, specify the paper type from Print Properties.
 - For Macintosh users, specify the paper type from the Print dialog.

Incorrect characters print

- Make sure the printer is not in Hex Trace mode. If **Ready Hex** appears on the display, you must exit Hex Trace mode before you can print your job. Turn the printer off and back on to exit Hex Trace mode.
- Make sure the SmartSwitch settings are set to On in the Network and USB menus.

Tray linking does not work

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

LOAD THE SAME SIZE AND TYPE OF PAPER

- Load the same size and type of paper in each tray to be linked.
- Move the paper guides to the correct positions for the paper size loaded in each tray.

USE THE SAME PAPER SIZE AND PAPER TYPE SETTINGS

- Print a menu settings page and compare the settings for each tray.
- If necessary, adjust the settings from the Paper Size/Type menu.

Note: The standard 550-sheet tray and the multipurpose feeder do not automatically sense the paper size. You must set the size from the Paper Size/Type menu.

Large jobs do not collate

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

MAKE SURE COLLATE IS SET TO ON

From the Finishing menu or Print Properties, set Collate to On.

Note: Setting Collate to Off in the software overrides the setting in the Finishing menu.

REDUCE THE COMPLEXITY OF THE PRINT JOB

Reduce the complexity of the print job by eliminating the number and size of fonts, the number and complexity of images, and the number of pages in the job.

MAKE SURE THE PRINTER HAS ENOUGH MEMORY

Add printer memory or an optional hard disk.

Unexpected page breaks occur

INCREASE THE PRINT TIMEOUT VALUE

- 1 From the home screen, navigate to:



> Settings > General Settings > Timeouts

- 2 Touch the left or right arrow next to **Print Timeout** until the desired value appears.
- 3 Touch **Submit**.

Solving copy problems

Copier does not respond

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE DISPLAY FOR ERROR MESSAGES

Clear any error messages.

CHECK THE POWER

Make sure the printer is plugged in, the power is on, and **Ready** appears.

Scanner unit does not close

Make sure there are no obstructions:

- 1 Lift the scanner unit.
- 2 Remove any obstruction keeping the scanner unit open.
- 3 Lower the scanner unit.

Poor copy quality

These are some examples of poor copy quality:

- Blank pages
- Checkerboard pattern
- Distorted graphics or pictures
- Missing characters
- Faded print
- Dark print
- Skewed lines
- Smudges
- Streaks
- Unexpected characters
- White lines in print

Try one or more of the following:

CLEAR ANY ERROR MESSAGES

Check the display and clear any error messages.

REPLACE THE TONER OR PRINT CARTRIDGE

When the print remains faded, replace the toner or print cartridge.

CLEAN THE SCANNER GLASS

The scanner glass may be dirty. Clean the scanner glass with a clean, lint-free cloth dampened with water.

For more information, see "Cleaning the scanner glass" on page 233.

ADJUST THE TONER DARKNESS OF THE COPY

Adjust the toner darkness from the Copy menus.

MAKE SURE THE QUALITY OF THE ORIGINAL DOCUMENT IS SATISFACTORY

Check the quality of the original document.

PLACE THE ORIGINAL DOCUMENT PROPERLY

Make sure the document or photo is loaded facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.

MAKE SURE TO USE THE APPROPRIATE COPY SETTINGS

When patterns (moiré) appear in the output:

- On the Copy screen make sure the Content Type and Source settings are appropriate for the document being scanned.
- From the Copy screen, navigate to:
Advanced Options > Advanced Imaging > Sharpness > lower the Sharpness setting
- On the Copy screen, make sure no scaling is being selected.

When the text is light or disappearing:

- From the Copy screen, navigate to:
Content > Text >  > select the appropriate source for the original document being copied > 
- From the Copy screen, navigate to:
Advanced Options > Advanced Imaging > Sharpness > increase the current setting
- From the Copy screen, navigate to:
Advanced Options > Advanced Imaging > Background removal, and then reduce the current setting
- From the Copy screen, navigate to:
Advanced Options > Advanced Imaging > Contrast > increase the current setting
- From the Copy screen, navigate to:
Advanced Options > Advanced Imaging > Shadow detail > reduce the current setting

When the output appears washed out or overexposed:

- On the Copy screen make sure the Content Type and Source settings are appropriate for the document being scanned.
- From the Copy screen, adjust the Darkness setting.
- From the Copy screen, navigate to:
Advanced Options > Advanced Imaging > Shadow detail > reduce the current setting
- From the Copy screen, navigate to:
Advanced Options > Advanced Imaging > Background removal > reduce the current setting

Partial document or photo copies

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE DOCUMENT PLACEMENT

Make sure the document or photo is loaded facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.

CHECK THE PAPER SIZE SETTING

Make sure the paper size setting matches the paper loaded in the tray:

- 1 From the printer control panel, check the Paper Size setting from the Paper menu.
- 2 Before sending the job to print, specify the correct size setting:
 - For Windows users, specify the size from Print Properties.
 - For Macintosh users, specify the size from the Page Setup dialog.

Solving scanner problems

Checking an unresponsive scanner

If your scanner is not responding, then make sure:

- The printer is turned on.
- The printer cable is securely attached to the printer and the host computer, print server, option, or other network device.
- The power cord is plugged into the printer and a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- The electrical outlet is not turned off by any switch or breaker.
- The printer is not plugged into any surge protectors, uninterrupted power supplies, or extension cords.
- Other electrical equipment plugged into the outlet is working.

Once you have checked each of these possibilities, turn the printer off and then back on. This often fixes the problem with the scanner.

Scan was not successful

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE CABLE CONNECTIONS

Make sure the network or USB cable is securely connected to the computer and the printer.

AN ERROR MAY HAVE OCCURRED IN THE PROGRAM

Turn off and then restart the computer.

Scanning takes too long or freezes the computer

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

OTHER SOFTWARE PROGRAMS MAY BE INTERFERING WITH SCANNING

Close all programs not being used.

THE SCAN RESOLUTION MAY BE SET TOO HIGH

Select a lower scan resolution.

Poor scanned image quality

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE DISPLAY FOR ERROR MESSAGES

Clear any error messages.

THE SCANNER GLASS MAY BE DIRTY

Clean the scanner glass with a clean, lint-free cloth dampened with water. For more information, see “Cleaning the scanner glass” on page 233.

ADJUST THE SCAN RESOLUTION

Increase the resolution of the scan for a higher quality output.

CHECK THE QUALITY OF THE ORIGINAL DOCUMENT

Make sure the quality of the original document is satisfactory.

CHECK THE DOCUMENT PLACEMENT

Make sure the document or photo is loaded facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.

Partial document or photo scans

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE DOCUMENT PLACEMENT

Make sure the document or photo is loaded facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.

CHECK THE PAPER SIZE SETTING

Make sure the paper size setting matches the paper loaded in the tray:

- 1 From the printer control panel, check the Paper Size setting from the Paper menu.
- 2 Before sending the job to print, specify the correct size setting:
 - For Windows users, specify the size from Print Properties.
 - For Macintosh users, specify the size from the Page Setup dialog.

Cannot scan from a computer

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE DISPLAY FOR ERROR MESSAGES

Clear any error messages.

CHECK THE POWER

Make sure the printer is plugged in, the power is on, and **Ready** appears.

CHECK THE CABLE CONNECTIONS

Make sure the network or USB cable is securely connected to the computer and the printer.

Solving fax problems

Fax and e-mail functions are not set up

The indicator light blinks red until you set up fax and e-mail. To set up fax and e-mail, follow these steps:

Note: Before completing these instructions for a printer on a network, make sure the fax cables are connected.

1 From the home screen, navigate to:



> General Settings > Run initial setup > Yes > Submit

2 Turn the printer off, and then turn it back on.

3 From the printer control panel, touch your language.

4 Touch your country or region, and then touch **Continue**.

5 Select your time zone, and then touch **Continue**.

6 Touch **Fax** and **E-mail** to clear the icons, and then touch **Continue**.

Note: You can use these same steps to disable fax and e-mail.

Caller ID is not shown

Contact your telecommunications company to verify that your telephone line is subscribed to the caller ID service.

If your region supports multiple caller ID patterns, you may have to change the default setting. There are two settings available: FSK (pattern 1) and DTMF (pattern 2). The availability of these settings by way of the Fax menu depends on whether your country or region supports multiple caller ID patterns. Contact your telecommunications company to determine which pattern or switch setting to use.

Cannot send or receive a fax

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE DISPLAY FOR ERROR MESSAGES

Clear any error messages.

CHECK THE POWER

Make sure the printer is plugged in, the power is on, and **Ready** appears.

CHECK THE PRINTER CONNECTIONS

Make sure the cable connections for the following hardware are secure, if applicable:

- Telephone
- Handset
- Answering machine

CHECK THE TELEPHONE WALL JACK

- 1 Plug a telephone into the wall jack.
- 2 Listen for a dial tone.
- 3 If you do not hear a dial tone, then plug a different telephone into the wall jack.
- 4 If you still do not hear a dial tone, then plug a telephone into a different wall jack.
- 5 If you hear a dial tone, then connect the printer to that wall jack.

REVIEW THIS DIGITAL PHONE SERVICE CHECKLIST

The fax modem is an analog device. Certain devices can be connected to the printer so that digital telephone services can be used.

- If you are using an ISDN telephone service, then connect the printer to an analog telephone port (an R-interface port) on an ISDN terminal adapter. For more information and to request an R-interface port, contact your ISDN provider.
- If you are using DSL, then connect to a DSL filter or router that will support analog use. For more information, contact your DSL provider.
- If you are using a PBX telephone service, then make sure you are connecting to an analog connection on the PBX. If none exists, consider installing an analog telephone line for the fax machine.

CHECK FOR A DIAL TONE

- Place a test call to the telephone number to which you want to send a fax to make sure that it is working correctly.
- If the telephone line is being used by another device, then wait until the other device is finished before sending a fax.
- If you are using the On Hook Dial feature, then turn up the volume to verify a dial tone.

TEMPORARILY DISCONNECT OTHER EQUIPMENT

To ensure the printer is working correctly, connect it directly to the telephone line. Disconnect any answering machines, computers with modems, or telephone line splitters.

CHECK FOR JAMS

Clear any jams, and then make sure that **Ready** appears.

TEMPORARILY DISABLE CALL WAITING

Call Waiting can disrupt fax transmissions. Disable this feature before sending or receiving a fax. Call your telephone company to obtain the keypad sequence for temporarily disabling Call Waiting.

VOICE MAIL SERVICE MAY BE INTERFERING WITH THE FAX TRANSMISSION

Voice Mail offered through your local telephone company may disrupt fax transmissions. To enable both Voice Mail and the printer to answer calls, you may want to consider adding a second telephone line for the printer.

THE PRINTER MEMORY MAY BE FULL

- 1 Dial the fax number.
- 2 Scan the original document one page at a time.

Can send but not receive faxes

Try one or more of the following:

LOAD PAPER

If the tray is empty, then load paper in the tray or feeder.

CHECK THE RING COUNT DELAY SETTINGS

The ring count delay sets the number of times the phone rings before the printer answers. If you have extension phones on the same line as the printer, or subscribe to the telephone company's Distinctive Ring service, then keep the Ring Delay setting at 4.

- 1 Type the printer IP address in the address field of your Web browser.
If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then you can:
 - View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
 - Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
- 2 Click **Settings > Fax Settings > Analog Fax Setup**.
- 3 In the Rings to Answer field, enter the number of times you want the phone to ring before the printer answers.
- 4 Click **Submit**.

REPLACE THE TONER OR PRINT CARTRIDGE

Replace the toner or print cartridge.

Can receive but not send faxes

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

THE PRINTER IS NOT IN FAX MODE

On the home screen, touch **Fax** to put the printer in Fax mode.

THE DOCUMENT IS NOT LOADED PROPERLY

Load the original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

MAKE SURE THE SHORTCUT NUMBER IS SET UP PROPERLY

- Check to make sure the shortcut number has been programmed for the number that you want to dial.
- As an alternative, dial the telephone number manually.

Received fax has poor print quality

Try one or more of the following:

RESEND THE DOCUMENT

Ask the person who sent you the fax to:

- Check that the quality of the original document is satisfactory.
- Resend the fax. There may have been a problem with the quality of the telephone line connection.
- Increase the fax scan resolution, if possible.

REPLACE THE CARTRIDGE

When **88 Cartridge low** appears or when the prints appear faded, replace the cartridge.

MAKE SURE THE FAX TRANSMISSION SPEED IS NOT SET TOO HIGH

Decrease the incoming fax transmission speed:

- 1 Type the printer IP address in the address field of your Web browser.

Note: If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then print a network setup page and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

- 2 Click **Settings > Fax Settings > Analog Fax Setup**.

3 In the Max Speed box, click one of the following:

- 2400**
- 4800**
- 9600**
- 14400**
- 33600**

4 Click **Submit**.

Solving home screen applications problems

An application error has occurred

CHECK THE SYSTEM LOG FOR RELEVANT DETAILS

1 Type the printer IP address or host name in the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address or host name of the printer, then you can:

- View the information on the printer control panel home screen, or in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or menu settings page and locate the information in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings** or **Configuration**.

3 Click **Device Solutions** > **Solutions (eSF)** > **System** tab > **Log**.

4 From the Filter menu, select an application status.

5 From the Application menu, select an application, and then click **Submit**.

MAKE SURE THE FILE NAME YOU WANT TO SCAN TO IS NOT ALREADY IN USE

Verify that the file to which you want to scan is not open by another application or user.

To help prevent errors, make sure either “Append time stamp” or “Overwrite existing file” is selected in the destination configuration settings.

ADJUST THE SCAN SETTINGS

In the destination configuration settings, lower the scan settings. For example, lower the scan resolution, disable Color, or change the Content type to Text.

CONTACT CUSTOMER SUPPORT

If you still cannot isolate the problem, then contact customer support.

Solving option problems

Option does not operate correctly or quits after it is installed

Try one or more of the following:

RESET THE PRINTER

Turn the printer off, wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer on.

CHECK TO SEE IF THE OPTION IS CONNECTED TO THE PRINTER

- 1 Turn the printer off using the power switch.
- 2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet, and then from the printer.
- 3 Check the connection between the option and the printer.

MAKE SURE THE OPTION IS INSTALLED CORRECTLY

Print a menu settings page and check to see if the option is listed in the Installed Options list. If the option is not listed, then reinstall it. For more information, see the hardware setup documentation that came with the option, or go to www.lexmark.com to view the option instruction sheet.

MAKE SURE THE OPTION IS SELECTED

From the computer you are printing from, select the option.

For more information, see “Updating available options in the printer driver” on page 62.

Paper tray problems

Try one or more of the following:

MAKE SURE THE PAPER IS LOADED CORRECTLY

- 1 Open the paper tray.
- 2 Check for paper jams or misfeeds.
- 3 Make sure the paper guides are aligned against the edges of the paper.
- 4 Make sure the paper tray closes properly.

RESET THE PRINTER

Turn the printer off, wait about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer on.

MAKE SURE THE PAPER TRAY IS INSTALLED CORRECTLY

If the paper tray is listed on the menu settings page, but paper jams when it enters or exits the tray, then it may not be properly installed. Reinstall the paper tray. For more information, see the hardware setup documentation that came with the paper tray, or go to <http://support.lexmark.com> to view the paper tray instruction sheet.

Cannot detect flash memory card

Make sure the flash memory card is securely connected to the printer system board.

Cannot detect printer hard disk

Make sure the printer hard disk is securely connected to the printer system board.

Internal Solutions Port does not operate correctly

Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE INTERNAL SOLUTIONS PORT (ISP) CONNECTIONS

Make sure the ISP is securely connected to the printer system board.

CHECK THE CABLE

Make sure you are using the correct cable and that it is securely connected to the Internal Solutions (ISP) port.

MAKE SURE THE NETWORK SOFTWARE IS CONFIGURED CORRECTLY

For information on installing the network printing software, see the *Networking Guide* on the *Software and Documentation* CD.

Internal print server does not operate correctly

Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE PRINT SERVER CONNECTIONS

- Make sure the internal print server is attached securely to the printer system board.
- Make sure you are using the correct cable and that it is securely connected.

MAKE SURE THE NETWORK SOFTWARE IS CONFIGURED CORRECTLY

For more information on installing the network printing software, do the following:

- 1 Open the *Software and Documentation* CD.
- 2 Click **Additional**.
- 3 Under Publications on this CD, select **Networking Guide**.

Memory card

Make sure the memory card is securely connected to the printer system board.

USB/parallel interface card does not operate correctly

CHECK THE USB/PARALLEL INTERFACE CARD CONNECTION

Make sure the USB/parallel interface card is securely connected to the printer system board.

CHECK THE CABLE

Make sure you are using the correct cable and that it is securely connected.

Solving paper feed problems

Paper frequently jams

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE PAPER

Use recommended paper and specialty media. For more information, see the chapter about paper and specialty media guidelines.

MAKE SURE THERE IS NOT TOO MUCH PAPER IN THE PAPER TRAY

Make sure the stack of paper you load does not exceed the maximum stack height indicated in the tray or on the multipurpose feeder.

CHECK THE PAPER GUIDES

Move the guides in the tray to the correct positions for the paper size loaded.

THE PAPER MAY HAVE ABSORBED MOISTURE DUE TO HIGH HUMIDITY

- Load paper from a fresh package.
- Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.

Paper jam message remains after jam is cleared

CHECK THE PAPER PATH

The paper path is not clear. Clear jammed paper from the entire paper path, and then touch **Continue**.

Jammed pages are not reprinted

TURN ON JAM RECOVERY

- 1 From the home screen, navigate to:

 > **Settings** > **General Settings** > **Print Recovery**

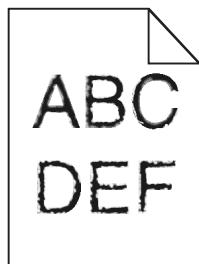
- 2 Touch the arrows next to **Jam Recovery** until **On** or **Auto** appears.

- 3 Touch **Submit**.

Solving print quality problems

If these suggestions do not correct the problem, then contact customer support. You may have a printer part that requires adjustment or replacement.

Characters have jagged or uneven edges



If you are using downloaded fonts, verify that the fonts are supported by the printer, the host computer, and the software program.

Clipped images

Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE GUIDES

Move the width and length guides in the tray to the correct positions for the paper size loaded.

CHECK THE PAPER SIZE SETTING

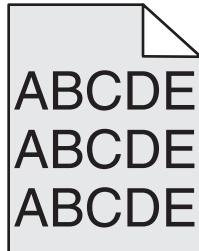
Make sure the paper size setting matches the paper loaded in the tray:

- 1 From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Size setting.
- 2 Before sending the job to print, specify the correct size setting:
 - For Windows users, specify the size from Print Properties.
 - For Macintosh users, specify the size from the Page Setup dialog.

Fine horizontal lines appear on color pages

You may notice fine, horizontal lines in photographs or pages with a high concentration of color. This can occur when the printer is in Quiet Mode. To fix this, set Quiet Mode to **Off (Image/Photo)**.

Gray background



CHECK THE TONER DARKNESS SETTING

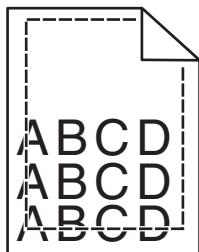
Select a lighter Toner Darkness setting:

- From the printer control panel Quality menu, change the setting.
- For Windows users, change the setting from Print Properties.
- For Macintosh users, change the setting from the Print dialog.

THE TONER CARTRIDGE MAY BE WORN OR DEFECTIVE

Replace the toner cartridge.

Incorrect margins



These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE PAPER GUIDES

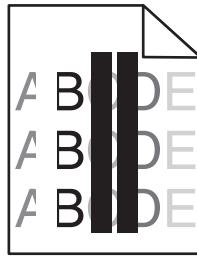
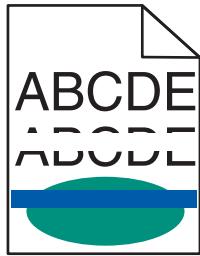
Move the guides in the tray to the correct positions for the paper size loaded.

CHECK THE PAPER SIZE SETTING

Make sure the paper size setting matches the paper loaded in the tray:

- 1 From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Size setting.
- 2 Before sending the job to print, specify the correct size setting:
 - For Windows users, specify the size from Print Properties.
 - For Macintosh users, specify the size from the Page Setup dialog.

Light colored line, white line, or incorrectly colored line appears on prints



Try one or more of the following:

MAKE SURE THERE IS NO DEFECTIVE TONER CARTRIDGE

Replace the defective toner cartridge.

MAKE SURE THE IMAGING UNIT IS NOT DEFECTIVE

Replace the defective imaging unit.

MAKE SURE THE TRANSFER MODULE IS NOT DEFECTIVE

Replace the transfer module.

CLEAN THE PRINthead LENSES

Remove and reinstall the imaging unit. The LED wipe at the end of the imaging unit will rub across the row of LEDs, thus cleaning the printhead lenses.

Paper curl

Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE PAPER TYPE AND WEIGHT SETTINGS

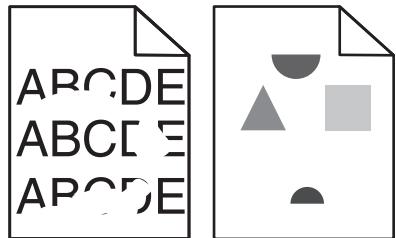
Make sure the paper type and weight settings match the paper loaded in the tray or feeder:

- 1 From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Type and Paper Weight settings.
- 2 Before sending the print job, specify the correct paper type setting:
 - For Windows users, specify the paper type from Print Properties.
 - For Macintosh users, specify the paper type from the Print dialog.

LOAD PAPER FROM A FRESH PACKAGE

Paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.

Print irregularities



Try one or more of the following:

LOAD PAPER FROM A FRESH PACKAGE

The paper may have absorbed moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.

CHECK THE PAPER TYPE AND WEIGHT SETTINGS

Make sure the paper type and weight settings match the paper loaded in the tray or feeder:

- 1 From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Type and Paper Weight settings.
- 2 Before sending the print job, specify the correct paper type setting:
 - For Windows users, specify the paper type from Print Properties.
 - For Macintosh users, specify the paper type from the Print dialog.

AVOID TEXTURED PAPER WITH ROUGH FINISHES

MAKE SURE THERE IS NO DEFECTIVE TONER CARTRIDGE

Replace the worn or defective toner cartridge.

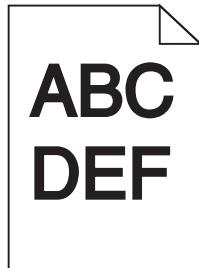
MAKE SURE THE TRANSFER MODULE IS NOT DEFECTIVE

Replace the defective transfer module. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

MAKE SURE THE FUSER IS NOT DEFECTIVE

Replace the defective fuser. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

Print is too dark



Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE DARKNESS, BRIGHTNESS, AND CONTRAST SETTINGS

The Toner Darkness setting may be too dark, the Brightness setting may be too dark, or the Contrast setting may be too high.

- Change these settings from the printer control panel Quality menu.
- For Windows users, change these settings from Print Properties.
- For Macintosh users:
 - 1 Choose **File > Print**.
 - 2 From the Orientation pictures drop-down menu, choose **Printer Features**.
 - 3 Choose a lower value for the Toner Darkness, Brightness, and Contrast settings.

LOAD PAPER FROM A FRESH PACKAGE

The paper may have absorbed moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.

AVOID TEXTURED PAPER WITH ROUGH FINISHES

CHECK THE PAPER TYPE SETTING

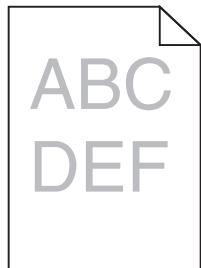
Make sure the Paper Type setting matches the paper loaded in the tray or feeder:

- From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Type setting.
- For Windows users, check this setting from Print Properties.
- For Macintosh users, check this setting from the Print dialog.

MAKE SURE THERE IS NO DEFECTIVE TONER CARTRIDGE

Replace the defective toner cartridge.

Print is too light



Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE DARKNESS, BRIGHTNESS, AND CONTRAST SETTINGS

The Toner Darkness setting may be too light, the Brightness setting may be too light, or the Contrast setting may be too low.

- Change these settings from the printer control panel Quality menu.
- For Windows users, change these settings from Print Properties
- For Macintosh users:
 - 1 Choose **File > Print**.
 - 2 From the Orientation pictures drop-down menu, choose **Printer Features**.
 - 3 Choose a higher value for the Toner Darkness, Brightness, and Contrast settings.

LOAD PAPER FROM A FRESH PACKAGE

The paper may have absorbed moisture from high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.

AVOID TEXTURED PAPER WITH ROUGH FINISHES

CHECK THE PAPER TYPE SETTING

Make sure the Paper Type setting matches the paper loaded in the tray or feeder:

- From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Type setting.
- For Windows users, check this setting from Print Properties.
- For Macintosh users, check this setting from the Print dialog.

MAKE SURE THE TONER CARTRIDGE IS NOT LOW ON TONER

When **88.xx [color] cartridge low** appears, make sure the toner is distributed evenly within the print cartridge.

- 1 Remove the toner cartridge.
- 2 Firmly shake the cartridge side-to-side and front-to-back several times to redistribute the toner.

3 Reinsert the toner cartridge.

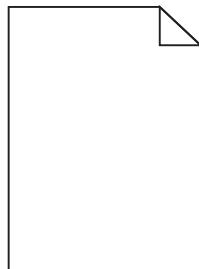
Note: If print quality does not improve, replace the print cartridge.

If the problem continues, the printer may need to be serviced. For more information, contact customer support.

MAKE SURE THERE IS NO DEFECTIVE TONER CARTRIDGE

Replace the defective toner cartridge.

Printer is printing blank pages



Try one or more of the following:

MAKE SURE THERE IS NO PACKING MATERIAL LEFT ON THE TONER OR PRINT CARTRIDGE

Remove the cartridge and make sure the packing material is properly removed. Reinstall the cartridge.

MAKE SURE THE TONER OR PRINT CARTRIDGE IS NOT LOW ON TONER

When 88.xx [color] cartridge low appears, make sure that toner is distributed evenly among all four cartridges:

1 Remove the cartridge.

Warning—Potential Damage: Be careful not to touch the photoconductor drum. Doing so may affect the print quality of future print jobs.

2 Firmly shake the cartridge side-to-side and front-to-back several times to redistribute the toner.

3 Reinsert the cartridge.

Note: If print quality does not improve, then replace the cartridge of the color that is not printing.

If the problem continues, then the printer may need to be serviced. For more information, contact customer support.

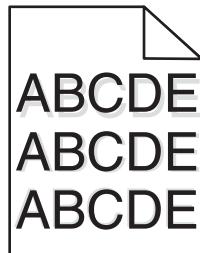
Repeating defects appear on a page

Cause	Solution
	A small icon showing two overlapping documents. The top document is pink with two small black marks (dots) on its right edge. The bottom document is grey with a horizontal line of black marks (dashes) across its middle.

If marks occur repeatedly in only one color and multiple times on a page:

Cause	Solution
The transfer module is defective.	Replace the transfer module if the defects occur every: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 38 mm (1.50 in.)
An imaging unit is defective.	Replace the imaging unit if the defects occur every: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 41.0 mm (1.61 in.) • 75.0 mm (2.95 in.)
If marks occur down the page repeatedly in all colors:	
The fuser is defective.	Replace the fuser if the defects occur every: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 141 mm (5.55 in.)

Shadow images appear on prints



CHECK THE PAPER TYPE AND WEIGHT SETTINGS

Make sure the paper type and weight settings match the paper loaded in the tray:

- 1 From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Type and Paper Weight settings.
- 2 Before sending the job to print, specify the correct type setting:
 - For Windows users, specify the type from Print Properties.
 - For Macintosh users, specify the type from the Print dialog.

MAKE SURE THE IMAGING UNIT IS NOT DEFECTIVE

Replace the imaging unit.

MAKE SURE THE TONER CARTRIDGE IS NOT LOW ON TONER

When **88.xx [color] cartridge low** appears, make sure the toner is distributed evenly within the toner cartridge.

- 1 Remove the toner cartridge.

Warning—Potential Damage: Be careful not to touch the photoconductor drum. Doing so may affect the print quality of future print jobs.

- 2 Firmly shake the cartridge side-to-side and front-to-back several times to redistribute the toner.
- 3 Reinsert the toner cartridge.

Note: If print quality does not improve, replace the toner cartridge.

If the problem continues, the printer may need to be serviced. For more information, contact Customer Support.

Skewed print

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE PAPER GUIDES

Move the length and width guides in the tray to the correct positions for the paper size loaded.

- Make sure the guides are not too far from the paper stack.
- Make sure the guides are not pressing too lightly against the paper stack.

CHECK THE PAPER

Make sure you are using paper that meets the printer specifications.

Solid color pages



Try one or more of the following:

MAKE SURE THE IMAGING UNIT IS INSTALLED CORRECTLY AND IS NOT DEFECTIVE

Remove and then reinstall the imaging unit. If the problem continues, the imaging unit may need to be replaced.

MAKE SURE THE TONER CARTRIDGES ARE INSTALLED CORRECTLY, ARE NOT DEFECTIVE AND NOT LOW ON TONER

- Remove and reinstall the toner cartridges.
- Make sure toner is distributed evenly within the toner cartridge:

1 Remove the toner cartridge.

Warning—Potential Damage: Be careful not to touch the photoconductor drum. Doing so may affect the print quality of future print jobs.

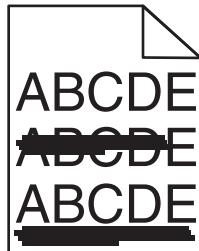
2 Firmly shake the cartridge side-to-side and front-to-back several times to redistribute the toner.

3 Reinsert the toner cartridge.

Note: If print quality does not improve, replace the toner cartridge.

- If the problem continues, the printer may need to be serviced. For more information, contact customer support.

Streaked horizontal lines appear on prints



Try one or more of the following:

SELECT ANOTHER TRAY OR FEEDER

- From the printer control panel Paper Menu, select Default Source.
- For Windows users, select the paper source from Print Properties.
- For Macintosh users, select the paper source from the Print dialog and pop-up menus.

MAKE SURE THERE IS NO WORN, DEFECTIVE, OR EMPTY TONER CARTRIDGE

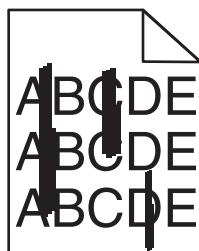
Replace the worn, defective, or empty toner cartridge.

CLEAR THE PAPER PATH AROUND THE TONER CARTRIDGE

 **CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

Clear any paper you see or clean any visible toner from the paper path. If the problem persists, then contact Customer Support.

Streaked vertical lines appear on prints



Try one or more of the following:

SELECT ANOTHER TRAY OR FEEDER

- From the printer control panel Paper menu, select Default Source
- For Windows users, select the paper source from Print Properties.
- For Macintosh users, select the paper source from the Print dialog and pop-up menus.

MAKE SURE THERE IS NO WORN, DEFECTIVE, OR EMPTY TONER CARTRIDGE

Replace the worn, defective, or empty toner cartridge.

CLEAR THE PAPER PATH AROUND THE TONER CARTRIDGE

Check the paper path around the toner cartridge.

 **CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

Clear any paper you see.

MAKE SURE THERE IS NO TONER IN THE PAPER PATH

Toner fog or background shading appears on the page

Cause	Solution
Toner cartridge may be defective or installed incorrectly.	Reinstall or replace the toner cartridge.
Transfer module may be worn or defective.	Replace the transfer module.
Imaging unit may be worn or defective.	Replace the imaging unit.
Fuser may be worn or defective.	Replace the fuser.
Toner may be in the paper path.	Call for service.
Printer may not have recalibrated recently.	Perform color adjust from the Quality menu.
Application may specify an off-white background.	Check the application.

Toner rubs off

Cause	Solution
Specialty media is being used.	Make sure the correct Paper Type is selected.
The Paper Weight setting in the Paper Menu is wrong for the type of paper being used.	Change the Paper Weight from Normal to Heavy. If necessary, change Paper Texture from Normal to Rough.
Fuser is worn or defective.	Replace the fuser.
Fuser is in envelope mode.	Open the side door. Make sure that the green lever on the left side of the fuser is not in envelope mode.

Toner specks

Cause	Solution
Toner cartridges may be worn or defective.	Replace the defective or worn cartridges.
Toner is in the paper path.	Call for service.
The imaging unit may be defective.	Replace the defective imaging unit.

Transparency print quality is poor

Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE TRANSPARENCIES

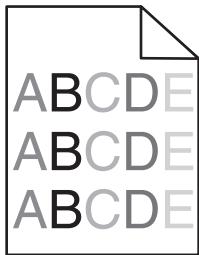
Use only transparencies that meet the printer specifications.

CHECK THE PAPER TYPE SETTING

Make sure the paper type setting is set to Transparency:

- 1 From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Type setting.
- 2 Before sending the job to print, specify the correct type setting:
 - For Windows users, specify the type from Print Properties.
 - For Macintosh users, specify the type from the Print dialog.

Uneven print density



Try one or more of the following:

MAKE SURE THERE IS NO DEFECTIVE OR WORN TONER CARTRIDGE

Replace the worn or defective toner cartridge.

MAKE SURE THE IMAGING UNIT IS NOT DEFECTIVE

Replace the defective imaging unit.

Solving color quality problems

FAQ about color printing

What is RGB color?

Red, green, and blue light can be added together in various amounts to produce a large range of colors observed in nature. For example, red and green can be combined to create yellow. Televisions and computer monitors create colors in this manner. RGB color is a method of describing colors by indicating the amount of red, green, or blue needed to produce a certain color.

What is CMYK color?

Cyan, magenta, yellow, and black (known as *CMYK color*) inks or toners can be printed in various amounts to produce a large range of colors observed in nature. For example, cyan and yellow can be combined to create green. Printing presses, inkjet printers, and color laser/LED printers create colors in this manner. CMYK color is a method of describing colors by indicating the amount of cyan, magenta, yellow, and black needed to reproduce a particular color.

How is color specified in a document to be printed?

Software applications typically specify document color using RGB or CMYK color combinations. Additionally, they commonly let you modify the color of each object in a document. For more information, see the software application Help section.

How does the printer know what color to print?

When you print a document, information describing the type and color of each object is sent to the printer. The color information is passed through color conversion tables that translate the color into the appropriate amounts of cyan, magenta, yellow, and black toner needed to produce the desired color. The object type information lets different color conversion tables be used for different types of objects. For example, it is possible to apply one type of color conversion table to text while applying a different color conversion table to photographic images.

Should I use PostScript or PCL emulation printer software? What settings should I use for the best color?

The PostScript driver is strongly recommended for best color quality. The default settings in the PostScript driver provide preferred color quality for the majority of printouts.

Why doesn't the printed color match the color that I see on the computer screen?

The color conversion tables used in Auto Color Correction mode generally approximate the colors of a standard computer monitor. However, because of technology differences that exist between printers and monitors, there are many colors that can also be affected by monitor variations and lighting conditions. For recommendations on how the printer color sample pages may be useful in solving certain color-matching problems, see the question, "How can I match a particular color (such as a color in a corporate logo)?"

The printed page appears tinted. Can I slightly adjust the color?

Sometimes you may consider printed pages to appear tinted (for example, everything printed seems to be too red). This can be caused by environmental conditions, paper type, lighting conditions, or user preference. In these instances, adjusting the Color Balance setting may create more preferable color. Color Balance lets you make subtle adjustments to the amount of toner being used in each color plane. Selecting positive (or negative) values for cyan, magenta, yellow, and black under the Color Balance menu will slightly increase (or decrease) the amount of toner used for the chosen color. For example, if you believe the overall printed page to be too red, then decreasing both magenta and yellow could potentially improve color.

My color transparencies seem dark when being projected. Is there anything I can do to improve the color?

This problem most commonly occurs when projecting transparencies with reflective overhead projectors. To obtain the highest projected color quality, transmissive overhead projectors are recommended. If a reflective projector must be used, then adjusting the Toner Darkness setting to 1, 2, or 3 will lighten the transparency.

Make sure to print on the recommended type of color transparencies. For more information about the paper and media specifications, see the *User's Guide* on the *Software and Documentation* CD.

What is manual color correction?

The color conversion tables applied to each object when using the default Auto Color Correction setting generate preferred color for the majority of documents. Occasionally, you may want to apply a different color table mapping. This customization is accomplished using the Manual Color menu and the Manual Color Correction setting.

Manual Color Correction applies to RGB and CMYK color conversion table mappings as defined in the Manual Color menu.

You can select any of the different color conversion tables for RGB or CMYK:

Color conversion table	Settings
RGB	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• sRGB Display• Display-True Black• sRGB Vivid• Vivid• Off
CMYK	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• US CMYK• Euro CMYK• Vivid CMYK• Off

Note: The Manual Color Correction setting is not useful if the software application does not specify colors with RGB or CMYK combinations. It is also not effective in situations where the software application or the computer operating system controls the adjustment of colors.

How can I match a particular color (such as a corporate logo)?

Occasionally, you may have a need for the printed color of a particular object to closely match a specific color. For example, you may need to match the color of a corporate logo. While instances can occur in which the printer cannot exactly reproduce the desired color, you should be able to identify adequate color matches for the majority of cases.

The Color Samples menu item can provide useful information in helping solve this particular type of color-matching problem. The nine Color Samples values correspond to color conversion tables in the printer. Selecting any of the Color Samples values generates a multiple-page printout consisting of hundreds of colored boxes. Either a CMYK or RGB combination is located on each box, depending on the table selected. The observed color of each box is obtained by passing the CMYK or RGB combination labeled on the box through the selected color conversion table.

You can examine the color samples pages and identify the box whose color is the closest to the desired color. The color combination labeled on the box can then be used for modifying the color of the object in a software application. For instructions, see the software application Help. Manual Color Correction may be necessary to utilize the selected color conversion table for the particular object.

Selecting which Color Samples pages to use for a particular color-matching problem depends on the Color Correction setting being used (Auto, Off, or Manual), the type of object being printed (text, graphics, or images), and how the color of the object is specified in the software application (RGB or CMYK combinations). When the printer Color Correction setting is set to Off, the color is based on the print job information; no color conversion is implemented.

Note: The Color Samples pages are not useful if the software application does not specify colors with RGB or CMYK combinations. Additionally, certain situations exist where the software application or the computer operating system adjusts the RGB or CMYK combinations specified in the application through color management. The resulting printed color may not be an exact match of the Color Samples pages.

The following table can help identify which Color Sample pages to use for color matching.

Color specification and object to be printed	Color Correction setting	Sample pages to use
RGB—Text	Auto	sRGB Vivid
	Manual	Manual Color RGB Text Setting
RGB—Graphic	Auto	sRGB Vivid
	Manual	Manual Color RGB Graphic Setting
RGB—Image	Auto	sRGB Display
	Manual	Manual Color RGB Image Setting
CMYK—Text	Auto	US CMYK or Euro CMYK
	Manual	Manual Color CMYK Text Setting
CMYK—Graphic	Auto	US CMYK
	Manual	Manual Color CMYK Graphic Setting
CMYK—Image	Auto	US CMYK
	Manual	Manual Color CMYK Image Setting

What are Detailed Color Samples and how do I access them?

These pages require the use of the Embedded Web Server. The Embedded Web Server is a series of resident pages stored in the network printer firmware. To access these pages, browse to the IP address of the network printer. Click **Configuration Menu**, and then click **Detailed Color Samples**.

For more information about using the Embedded Web Server, see the *User's Guide on the Software and Documentation CD*.

Detailed Color Samples are pages similar to the default pages of color samples accessible from the Quality menu using the printer control panel. The default color samples available using this method have an increment value of 10% for red, green, and blue. If you find a value on this page that is close, but would like to scan more colors in a nearby area, then you can use the Detailed Color Samples to select the desired color values and a more specific increment. This provides a way to print multiple pages of colored boxes that surround a specific color of interest.

There are nine conversion tables available with the following three options:

- **Print**—Prints the default pages
- **Detailed**—Lets you enter individual red, green, and blue values and a specific increment of color
- **Reset**—Lets you clear the existing information and enter new values

The process can be duplicated for Cyan (C), Magenta (M), Yellow (Y), and Black (K) color conversion tables, too. Collectively, these values are known as CMYK color. The default increment is 10% for Black and 20% each for Cyan, Magenta, and Yellow.

Embedded Web Server does not open

Try one or more of the following:

CHECK THE NETWORK CONNECTION

Make sure the printer and computer are turned on and connected to the same network.

CHECK THE ADDRESS ENTERED IN THE WEB BROWSER

- Depending on the network settings, you may need to type “**https://**” instead of “**http://**” before the printer IP address to access the Embedded Web Server. For more information, contact your system support person.
- Make sure printer IP address is correct.

TEMPORARILY DISABLE WEB PROXY SERVERS

Proxy servers may block or restrict you from accessing certain Web sites including the Embedded Web Server. For more information, contact your system support person.

Contacting customer support

When you call customer support, describe the problem you are experiencing, the message on the display, and the troubleshooting steps you have already taken to find a solution.

You need to know your printer model type and serial number. For more information, see the label on the inside top front cover of the printer. The serial number is also listed on the menu settings page.

In the U.S. or Canada, call 1-800-539-6275. For other countries or regions, visit the Lexmark Web site at <http://support.lexmark.com>.

Notices

Product information

Product name:

Lexmark X925, XS925

Machine type:

7541

Model(s):

032, 036, 096

Edition notice

November 2012

The following paragraph does not apply to any country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law:

LEXMARK INTERNATIONAL, INC., PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions; therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This publication could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in later editions. Improvements or changes in the products or the programs described may be made at any time.

References in this publication to products, programs, or services do not imply that the manufacturer intends to make these available in all countries in which it operates. Any reference to a product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any existing intellectual property right may be used instead. Evaluation and verification of operation in conjunction with other products, programs, or services, except those expressly designated by the manufacturer, are the user's responsibility.

For Lexmark technical support, visit <http://support.lexmark.com>.

For information on supplies and downloads, visit www.lexmark.com.

© 2012 Lexmark International, Inc.

All rights reserved.

GOVERNMENT END USERS

The Software Program and any related documentation are "Commercial Items," as that term is defined in 48 C.F.R. 2.101, "Computer Software" and "Commercial Computer Software Documentation," as such terms are used in 48 C.F.R. 12.212 or 48 C.F.R. 227.7202, as applicable. Consistent with 48 C.F.R. 12.212 or 48 C.F.R. 227.7202-1 through 227.7207-4, as applicable, the Commercial Computer Software and Commercial Software Documentation are licensed to the U.S. Government end users (a) only as Commercial Items and (b) with only those rights as are granted to all other end users pursuant to the terms and conditions herein.

Trademarks

Lexmark, Lexmark with diamond design, MarkNet, and MarkVision are trademarks of Lexmark International, Inc., registered in the United States and/or other countries.

PrintCrypton and ScanBack are trademarks of Lexmark International, Inc.

Mac and the Mac logo are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

PCL® is a registered trademark of the Hewlett-Packard Company. PCL is Hewlett-Packard Company's designation of a set of printer commands (language) and functions included in its printer products. This printer is intended to be compatible with the PCL language. This means the printer recognizes PCL commands used in various application programs, and that the printer emulates the functions corresponding to the commands.

All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

AirPrint and the AirPrint logo are trademarks of Apple, Inc.

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) compliance information statement

This product has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

The FCC Class A limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference, in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or television interference caused by using other than recommended cables or by unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment. Unauthorized changes or modifications could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

Note: To assure compliance with FCC regulations on electromagnetic interference for a Class A computing device, use a properly shielded and grounded cable such as Lexmark part number 1021231 for parallel attach or 1021294 for USB attach. Use of a substitute cable not properly shielded and grounded may result in a violation of FCC regulations.

Modular component notice

This product may contain the following modular component(s):

Lexmark regulatory type/model LEX-M01-003: FCC ID: IYLM01003; IC: 2376A-M01003

Lexmark regulatory type/model LEX-M05-001: FCC ID: IYLLEXM05001; IC: 2376A-M05001

Lexmark regulatory type/model LEX-M05-002: FCC ID: IYLLEXM05002; IC: 2376A-M05002

Licensing notices

All licensing notices associated with this product can be viewed from the root directory of the installation software CD.

Noise emission levels

The following measurements were made in accordance with ISO 7779 and reported in conformance with ISO 9296.

Note: Some modes may not apply to your product.

1-meter average sound pressure, dBA	
Printing	53 dBA
Ready	39 dBA

Values are subject to change. See www.lexmark.com for current values.

Waste from Electrical and Electronic Equipment (WEEE) directive



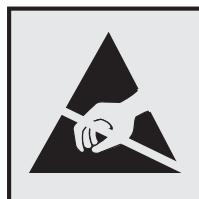
The WEEE logo signifies specific recycling programs and procedures for electronic products in countries of the European Union. We encourage the recycling of our products.

If you have further questions about recycling options, visit the Lexmark Web site at www.lexmark.com for your local sales office phone number.

Product disposal

Do not dispose of the printer or supplies in the same manner as normal household waste. Consult your local authorities for disposal and recycling options.

Static sensitivity notice



This symbol identifies static-sensitive parts. Do not touch in the areas near these symbols without first touching the metal frame of the printer.

ENERGY STAR

Any Lexmark product bearing the ENERGY STAR emblem on the product or on a start-up screen is certified to comply with Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) ENERGY STAR requirements as configured when shipped by Lexmark.



Temperature information

Ambient temperature	15.6 to 32.2°C (60 to 90°F) and 8% to 80% RH
Shipping and storage temperature	-40°C to 43.3°C (110° Fahrenheit)

Laser notice

The printer is certified in the U.S. to conform to the requirements of DHHS 21 CFR, Chapter I, Subchapter J for Class I (1) laser products, and elsewhere is certified as a Class I laser product conforming to the requirements of IEC 60825-1.

Class I laser products are not considered to be hazardous. The printer contains internally a Class IIIb (3b) laser that is nominally a 7 milliwatt gallium arsenide laser operating in the wavelength of 655-675 nanometers. The laser system and printer are designed so there is never any human access to laser radiation above a Class I level during normal operation, user maintenance, or prescribed service condition.

Power consumption

Product power consumption

The following table documents the power consumption characteristics of the product.

Note: Some modes may not apply to your product.

Mode	Description	Power consumption (Watts)
Printing	The product is generating hard-copy output from electronic inputs.	650 W
Copy	The product is generating hard-copy output from hard-copy original documents.	725 W
Scan	The product is scanning hard-copy documents.	190 W
Ready	The product is waiting for a print job.	130 W
Sleep Mode	The product is in a high-level energy-saving mode.	27 W
Hibernate	The product is in a low-level energy-saving mode.	6.1 W
Off	The product is plugged into a wall outlet, but the power switch is turned off.	.0 W

The power consumption levels listed in the previous table represent time-averaged measurements. Instantaneous power draws may be substantially higher than the average.

Values are subject to change. See www.lexmark.com for current values.

Sleep Mode

This product is designed with an energy-saving mode called *Sleep Mode*. The Sleep Mode saves energy by lowering power consumption during extended periods of inactivity. The Sleep Mode is automatically engaged after this product is not used for a specified period of time, called the *Sleep Mode Timeout*.

Factory default Sleep Mode Timeout for this product (in minutes):

5

By using the configuration menus, the Sleep Mode Timeout can be modified between 1 minute and 240 minutes. Setting the Sleep Mode Timeout to a low value reduces energy consumption, but may increase the response time of the product. Setting the Sleep Mode Timeout to a high value maintains a fast response, but uses more energy.

Off mode

If this product has an off mode which still consumes a small amount of power, then to completely stop product power consumption, disconnect the power supply cord from the wall outlet.

Total energy usage

It is sometimes helpful to calculate the total product energy usage. Since power consumption claims are provided in power units of Watts, the power consumption should be multiplied by the time the product spends in each mode in order to calculate energy usage. The total product energy usage is the sum of each mode's energy usage.

Industry Canada compliance statement

This Class A digital apparatus meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Standard ICES-003.

Avis de conformité aux normes de l'industrie du Canada

Cet appareil numérique de classe A est conforme aux exigences de la norme canadienne relative aux équipements pouvant causer des interférences NMB-003.

European Community (EC) directives conformity

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2004/108/EC and 2006/95/EC on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility and safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits.

The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The authorized representative is: Lexmark International Technology Hungária Kft., 8 Lechner Ödön fasor, Millennium Tower III, 1095 Budapest HUNGARY, A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Authorized Representative.

This product satisfies the Class A limits of EN 55022 and safety requirements of EN 60950.

Radio interference notice

Warning

This is a product that complies with the emission requirements of EN55022 Class A limits and immunity requirements of EN55024. This product is not intended to be used in residential/domestic environments.

This is a Class A product. In a domestic environment, this product may cause radio interference, in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

Notice to users of the US telephone network: FCC requirements

This equipment complies with Part 68 of the FCC rules and the requirements adopted by the Administrative Council for Terminal Attachments (ACTA). On the back of this equipment is a label that contains, among other information, a product identifier in the format US:AAAEQ##TXXXX. If requested, this number must be provided to your telephone company.

This equipment uses the RJ-11C Universal Service Order Code (USOC) jack.

A plug and jack used to connect this equipment to the premises' wiring and telephone network must comply with the applicable FCC Part 68 rules and requirements adopted by the ACTA. A compliant telephone cord and modular plug is provided with this product. It is designed to be connected to a compatible modular jack that is also compliant. See your setup documentation for more information.

The Ringer Equivalence Number (REN) is used to determine the number of devices that may be connected to a telephone line. Excessive RENs on a telephone line may result in the devices not ringing in response to an incoming call. In most but not all areas, the sum of RENs should not exceed five (5.0). To be certain of the number of devices that may be connected to a line, as determined by the total RENs, contact your local telephone company. For products approved after July 23, 2001, the REN for this product is part of the product identifier that has the format US:AAAEQ##TXXXX. The digits represented by ## are the REN without a decimal point (for example, 03 is a REN of 0.3). For earlier products, the REN is shown separately on the label.

If this equipment causes harm to the telephone network, the telephone company will notify you in advance that temporary discontinuance of service may be required. If advance notice is not practical, the telephone company will notify the customer as soon as possible. You will also be advised of your right to file a complaint with the FCC.

The telephone company may make changes in its facilities, equipment, operations or procedures that could affect the operation of this equipment. If this happens, the telephone company will provide advance notice in order for you to make necessary modifications to maintain uninterrupted service.

If you experience trouble with this equipment, for repair or warranty information, contact Lexmark International, Inc. at www.lexmark.com or your Lexmark representative. If the equipment is causing harm to the telephone network, the telephone company may request that you disconnect the equipment until the problem is resolved.

This equipment contains no user serviceable parts. For repair and warranty information, contact Lexmark International, Inc. See the previous paragraph for contact information.

Connection to party line service is subject to state tariffs. Contact the state public utility commission, public service commission, or corporation commission for information.

If your home has specially wired alarm equipment connected to the telephone line, ensure the installation of this equipment does not disable your alarm equipment. If you have questions about what will disable alarm equipment, consult your telephone company or a qualified installer.

Telephone companies report that electrical surges, typically lightning transients, are very destructive to customer terminal equipment connected to AC power sources. This has been identified as a major nationwide problem. It is recommended that the customer install an appropriate AC surge arrestor in the AC outlet to which this device is

connected. An appropriate AC surge arrestor is defined as one that is suitably rated, and certified by UL (Underwriter's Laboratories), another NRTL (Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory), or a recognized safety certification body in the country/region of use. This is to avoid damage to the equipment caused by local lightning strikes and other electrical surges.

The Telephone Consumer Protection Act of 1991 makes it unlawful for any person to use a computer or other electronic device, including fax machines, to send any message unless said message clearly contains in a margin at the top or bottom of each transmitted page or on the first page of the transmission, the date and time it is sent and an identification of the business or other entity, or other individual sending the message, and the telephone number of the sending machine or such business, other entity, or individual. (The telephone number provided may not be a 900 number or any other number for which charges exceed local or long-distance transmission charges.)

See your user documentation in order to program this information into your fax machine.

Notice to users of the Canadian telephone network

This product meets the applicable Industry Canada technical specifications. The Ringer Equivalence Number (REN) is an indication of the maximum number of terminals allowed to be connected to a telephone interface. The terminus of an interface may consist of any combination of devices, subject only to the requirement that the sum of the RENs of all the devices does not exceed five. The modem REN is located on the rear of the equipment on the product labeling.

Telephone companies report that electrical surges, typically lightning transients, are very destructive to customer terminal equipment connected to AC power sources. This has been identified as a major nationwide problem. It is recommended that the customer install an appropriate AC surge arrestor in the AC outlet to which this device is connected. An appropriate AC surge arrestor is defined as one that is suitably rated, and certified by UL (Underwriter's Laboratories), another NRTL (Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory), or a recognized safety certification body in the country/region of use. This is to avoid damage to the equipment caused by local lightning strikes and other electrical surges.

This equipment uses CA11A telephone jacks.

Avis réservé aux utilisateurs du réseau téléphonique du Canada

Ce produit est conforme aux spécifications techniques d'Industrie Canada. Le numéro REN (ringer equivalence number : numéro d'équivalence de sonnerie) fournit une indication du nombre maximum de terminaux pouvant être connectés à l'interface téléphonique. En bout de ligne, le nombre d'appareils qui peuvent être connectés n'est pas directement limité, mais la somme des REN de ces appareils ne doit pas dépasser cinq. Le numéro REN du modem est indiqué sur l'étiquette produit située à l'arrière de l'équipement.

Les compagnies de téléphone constatent que les surtensions électriques, en particulier celles dues à la foudre, entraînent d'importants dégâts sur les terminaux privés connectés à des sources d'alimentation CA. Il s'agit-là d'un problème majeur d'échelle nationale. En conséquence, il vous est recommandé de brancher un parasurtenseur dans la prise de courant à laquelle l'équipement est connecté. Utilisez un parasurtenseur répondant à des caractéristiques nominales satisfaisantes et certifié par le laboratoire d'assureurs UL (Underwriter's Laboratories), un autre laboratoire agréé de type NRTL (Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory) ou un organisme de certification agréé dans votre région ou pays. Ceci prévient tout endommagement de l'équipement causé par les orages et autres surtensions électriques.

Cet équipement utilise des prises de téléphone CA11A.

Notice to users of the New Zealand telephone network

The following are special conditions for the Facsimile User Instructions. The grant of a telepermit for any item of terminal equipment indicates only that Telecom has accepted that the item complies with minimum conditions for connection

to its network. It indicates no endorsement of the product by Telecom, nor does it provide any sort of warranty. Above all, it provides no assurance that any item will work correctly in all respects with another item of telepermitted equipment of a different make or model, nor does it imply that any product is compatible with all of Telecom's network services.

This equipment shall not be set up to make automatic calls to the Telecom's 111 Emergency Service.

This equipment may not provide for the effective hand-over of a call to another device connected to the same line.

This equipment should not be used under any circumstances that may constitute a nuisance to other Telecom customers.

Some parameters required for compliance with Telecom's telepermit requirements are dependent on the equipment associated with this device. The associated equipment shall be set to operate within the following limits for compliance to Telecom's specifications:

- There shall be no more than 10 call attempts to the same number within any 30 minute period for any single manual call initiation, and
- The equipment shall go on-hook for a period of not less than 30 seconds between the end of one attempt and the beginning of the next call attempt.
- The equipment shall be set to ensure that automatic calls to different numbers are spaced such that there is not less than 5 seconds between the end of one call attempt and the beginning of another.

Using this product in Switzerland

This product requires a Swiss billing tone filter (Lexmark part number 14B5109 or 80D1877) to be installed on any line which receives metering pulses in Switzerland. The Lexmark filter must be used, as metering pulses are present on all analog telephone lines in Switzerland.

Utilisation de ce produit en Suisse

Cet appareil nécessite l'utilisation d'un filtre de tonalité de facturation suisse (nº de référence Lexmark : 14B5109 ou 80D1877) devant être installé sur toute ligne recevant des impulsions de comptage en Suisse. Ce filtre doit être utilisé pour toute installation car ces impulsions existent sur toutes les lignes téléphoniques suisses.

Verwendung dieses Produkts in der Schweiz

Für dieses Produkt muss ein schweizerischer Billing Tone Filter zur Zählzeichenübertragung (Lexmark Teilenummer 14B5109 oder 80D1877) für jede Leitung installiert werden, über die in der Schweiz Zeitsteuertakte übertragen werden. Die Verwendung des Lexmark Filters ist obligatorisch, da in allen analogen Telefonleitungen in der Schweiz Zeitsteuertakte vorhanden sind.

Uso del prodotto in Svizzera

Questo prodotto richiede un filtro toni Billing svizzero, (codice Lexmark 14B5109 o 80D1877) da installare su tutte le linee che ricevono impulsi remoti in Svizzera. È necessario utilizzare il filtro Lexmark poiché gli impulsi remoti sono presenti su tutte le linee analogiche in Svizzera.

Notice to Users in the European Union

Products bearing the CE mark are in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2004/108/EC, 2006/95/EC, and 1999/5/EC on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility, safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits and on radio equipment and telecommunications terminal equipment.

Compliance is indicated by the CE marking.



The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The authorized representative is: Lexmark International Technology Hungária Kft., 8 Lechner Ödön fasor, Millennium Tower III, 1095 Budapest HUNGARY, A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Authorized Representative.

Refer to the table at the end of the Notices section for further compliance information.

Regulatory notices for wireless products

This section contains the following regulatory information pertaining to wireless products that contain transmitters, for example, but not limited to, wireless network cards or proximity card readers.

Exposure to radio frequency radiation

The radiated output power of this device is far below the radio frequency exposure limits of the FCC and other regulatory agencies. A minimum separation of 20 cm (8 inches) must be maintained between the antenna and any persons for this device to satisfy the RF exposure requirements of the FCC and other regulatory agencies.

Industry Canada (Canada)

This device complies with Industry Canada specification RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

This device has been designed to operate only with the antenna provided. Use of any other antenna is strictly prohibited per regulations of Industry Canada.

To prevent radio interference to the licensed service, this device is intended to be operated indoors and away from windows to provide maximum shielding. Equipment (or its transmit antenna) that is installed outdoors is subject to licensing.

The installer of this radio equipment must ensure that the antenna is located or pointed such that it does not emit RF fields in excess of Health Canada limits for the general population; consult Safety Code 6, obtainable from Health Canada's Web site www.hc-sc.gc.ca/rpb.

The term "IC:" before the certification/registration number only signifies that the Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

Industry Canada (Canada)

Cet appareil est conforme à la norme RSS-210 d'Industry Canada. Son fonctionnement est soumis aux deux conditions suivantes :

(1) cet appareil ne doit pas provoquer d'interférences et (2) il doit accepter toute interférence reçue, y compris celles risquant d'altérer son fonctionnement.

Cet appareil a été conçu pour fonctionner uniquement avec l'antenne fournie. L'utilisation de toute autre antenne est strictement interdite par la réglementation d'Industry Canada.

En application des réglementations d'Industry Canada, l'utilisation d'une antenne de gain supérieur est strictement interdite.

Pour empêcher toute interférence radio au service faisant l'objet d'une licence, cet appareil doit être utilisé à l'intérieur et loin des fenêtres afin de garantir une protection optimale.

Si le matériel (ou son antenne d'émission) est installé à l'extérieur, il doit faire l'objet d'une licence.

L'installateur de cet équipement radio doit veiller à ce que l'antenne soit implantée et dirigée de manière à n'émettre aucun champ HF dépassant les limites fixées pour l'ensemble de la population par Santé Canada. Reportez-vous au Code de sécurité 6 que vous pouvez consulter sur le site Web de Santé Canada www.hc-sc.gc.ca/rpb.

Le terme « IC » précédant le numéro de d'accréditation/inscription signifie simplement que le produit est conforme aux spécifications techniques d'Industry Canada.

Notice to users in the European Union

Products bearing the CE mark are in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2004/108/EC, 2006/95/EC, and 1999/5/EC on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility, safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits and on radio equipment and telecommunications terminal equipment.

Compliance is indicated by the CE marking.



The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The authorized representative is: Lexmark International Technology Hungária Kft., 8 Lechner Ödön fasor, Millennium Tower III, 1095 Budapest HUNGARY, A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Authorized Representative.

This product satisfies the Class A limits of EN 55022 and safety requirements of EN 60950.

Products equipped with 2.4GHz Wireless LAN option are in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2004/108/EC, 2006/95/EC, and 1999/5/EC on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility, safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits and on radio equipment and telecommunications terminal equipment.

Compliance is indicated by the CE marking.



Operation is allowed in all EU and EFTA countries, but is restricted to indoor use only.

The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The authorized representative is: Lexmark International Technology Hungária Kft., 8 Lechner Ödön fasor, Millennium Tower III, 1095 Budapest HUNGARY, A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Authorized Representative.

This product may be used in the countries indicated in the table below.

AT	BE	BG	CH	CY	CZ	DE	DK	EE
EL	ES	FI	FR	HR	HU	IE	IS	IT
LI	LT	LU	LV	MT	NL	NO	PL	PT
RO	SE	SI	SK	TR	UK			

Česky	Společnost Lexmark International, Inc. tímto prohlašuje, že výrobek tento výrobek je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Dansk	Lexmark International, Inc. erklærer herved, at dette produkt overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EØF.
Deutsch	Hiermit erklärt Lexmark International, Inc., dass sich das Gerät dieses Gerät in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Ελληνική	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Η LEXMARK INTERNATIONAL, INC. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ ΑΥΤΟ ΤΟ ΠΡΟΪΟΝ ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
English	Hereby, Lexmark International, Inc., declares that this type of equipment is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Español	Por medio de la presente, Lexmark International, Inc. declara que este producto cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Eesti	Käesolevaga kinnitab Lexmark International, Inc., et seade see toode vastab direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhинuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele muudele asjakohastele sätetele.
Suomi	Lexmark International, Inc. vakuuttaa täten, että tämä tuote on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja muiden sitä koskevien direktiivin ehtojen mukainen.
Français	Par la présente, Lexmark International, Inc. déclare que l'appareil ce produit est conforme aux exigences fondamentales et autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Magyar	Alulírott, Lexmark International, Inc. nyilatkozom, hogy a termék megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
Íslenska	Hér með lýsir Lexmark International, Inc. yfir því að þessi vara er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Italiano	Con la presente Lexmark International, Inc. dichiara che questo questo prodotto è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Latviski	Ar šo Lexmark International, Inc. deklarē, ka šis izstrādājums atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Lietuvių	Šiuo Lexmark International, Inc. deklaruoja, kad šis produktas atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB direktyvos nuostatas.

Malta	Bil-preżenti, Lexmark International, Inc., jiddikjara li dan il-prodott huwa konformi mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma dispożizzjonijiet oħrajn relevanti li jinsabu fid-Direttiva 1999/5/KE.
Nederlands	Hierbij verklaart Lexmark International, Inc. dat het toestel dit product in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Norsk	Lexmark International, Inc. erklærer herved at dette produktet er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Polski	Niniejszym Lexmark International, Inc. oświadcza, że niniejszy produkt jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Português	A Lexmark International Inc. declara que este este produto está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Diretiva 1999/5/CE.
Slovensky	Lexmark International, Inc. týmto vyhlasuje, že tento produkt spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia smernice 1999/5/ES.
Slovensko	Lexmark International, Inc. izjavlja, da je ta izdelek v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Svenska	Härmed intygar Lexmark International, Inc. att denna produkt står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

Statement of Limited Warranty

Lexmark X925, XS925

Lexmark International, Inc., Lexington, KY

This limited warranty applies to the United States and Canada. For customers outside the U.S., refer to the country-specific warranty information that came with your product.

This limited warranty applies to this product only if it was originally purchased for your use, and not for resale, from Lexmark or a Lexmark Remarketer, referred to in this statement as "Remarketer."

Limited warranty

Lexmark warrants that this product:

- Is manufactured from new parts, or new and serviceable used parts, which perform like new parts
- Is, during normal use, free from defects in material and workmanship

If this product does not function as warranted during the warranty period, contact a Remarketer or Lexmark for repair or replacement (at Lexmark's option).

If this product is a feature or option, this statement applies only when that feature or option is used with the product for which it was intended. To obtain warranty service, you may be required to present the feature or option with the product.

If you transfer this product to another user, warranty service under the terms of this statement is available to that user for the remainder of the warranty period. You should transfer proof of original purchase and this statement to that user.

Limited warranty service

The warranty period starts on the date of original purchase as shown on the purchase receipt and ends 12 months later provided that the warranty period for any supplies and for any maintenance items included with the printer shall end earlier if it, or its original contents, are substantially used up, depleted, or consumed.

To obtain warranty service you may be required to present proof of original purchase. You may be required to deliver your product to the Remarketer or Lexmark, or ship it prepaid and suitably packaged to a Lexmark designated location. You are responsible for loss of, or damage to, a product in transit to the Remarketer or the Lexmark designated location.

When warranty service involves the exchange of a product or part, the item replaced becomes the property of the Remarketer or Lexmark. The replacement may be a new or repaired item.

The replacement item assumes the remaining warranty period of the original product.

Replacement is not available to you if the product you present for exchange is defaced, altered, in need of a repair not included in warranty service, damaged beyond repair, or if the product is not free of all legal obligations, restrictions, liens, and encumbrances.

Before you present this product for warranty service, remove all print cartridges, programs, data, and removable storage media (unless directed otherwise by Lexmark).

For further explanation of your warranty alternatives and the nearest Lexmark authorized servicer in your area contact Lexmark on the World Wide Web at <http://support.lexmark.com>.

Remote technical support is provided for this product throughout its warranty period. For products no longer covered by a Lexmark warranty, technical support may not be available or only be available for a fee.

Extent of limited warranty

Lexmark does not warrant uninterrupted or error-free operation of any product or the durability or longevity of prints produced by any product.

Warranty service does not include repair of failures caused by:

- Modification or unauthorized attachments
- Accidents, misuse, abuse or use inconsistent with Lexmark user's guides, manuals, instructions or guidance
- Unsuitable physical or operating environment
- Maintenance by anyone other than Lexmark or a Lexmark authorized servicer
- Operation of a product beyond the limit of its duty cycle
- Use of printing media outside of Lexmark specifications
- Refurbishment, repair, refilling or remanufacture by a third party of products, supplies or parts
- Products, supplies, parts, materials (such as toners and inks), software, or interfaces not furnished by Lexmark

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NEITHER LEXMARK NOR ITS THIRD PARTY SUPPLIERS OR REMARKETERS MAKE ANY OTHER WARRANTY OR CONDITION OF ANY KIND, WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WITH RESPECT TO THIS PRODUCT, AND SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, AND SATISFACTORY QUALITY. ANY WARRANTIES THAT MAY NOT BE DISCLAIMED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW ARE LIMITED IN DURATION TO THE WARRANTY PERIOD. NO WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WILL APPLY AFTER THIS PERIOD. ALL INFORMATION, SPECIFICATIONS, PRICES, AND SERVICES ARE SUBJECT TO CHANGE AT ANY TIME WITHOUT NOTICE.

Limitation of liability

Your sole remedy under this limited warranty is set forth in this document. For any claim concerning performance or nonperformance of Lexmark or a Remarketer for this product under this limited warranty, you may recover actual damages up to the limit set forth in the following paragraph.

Lexmark's liability for actual damages from any cause whatsoever will be limited to the amount you paid for the product that caused the damages. This limitation of liability will not apply to claims by you for bodily injury or damage to real property or tangible personal property for which Lexmark is legally liable. **IN NO EVENT WILL LEXMARK BE LIABLE FOR ANY LOST PROFITS, LOST SAVINGS, INCIDENTAL DAMAGE, OR OTHER ECONOMIC OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES.** This is true even if you advise Lexmark or a Remarketer of the possibility of such damages. Lexmark is not liable for any claim by you based on a third party claim.

This limitation of remedies also applies to claims against any Suppliers and Remarketers of Lexmark. Lexmark's and its Suppliers' and Remarketers' limitations of remedies are not cumulative. Such Suppliers and Remarketers are intended beneficiaries of this limitation.

Additional rights

Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, or do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the limitations or exclusions contained above may not apply to you.

This limited warranty gives you specific legal rights. You may also have other rights that vary from state to state.

LEXMARK SOFTWARE LIMITED WARRANTY AND LICENSE AGREEMENT

PLEASE READ CAREFULLY BEFORE USING THIS PRODUCT: BY USING THIS PRODUCT, YOU AGREE TO BE BOUND BY ALL THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS SOFTWARE LIMITED WARRANTY AND LICENSE AGREEMENT. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE WITH THE TERMS OF THIS SOFTWARE LIMITED WARRANTY AND LICENSE AGREEMENT, PROMPTLY RETURN THE PRODUCT UNUSED AND REQUEST A REFUND OF THE AMOUNT YOU PAID. IF YOU ARE INSTALLING THIS PRODUCT FOR USE BY OTHER PARTIES, YOU AGREE TO INFORM THE USERS THAT USE OF THE PRODUCT INDICATES ACCEPTANCE OF THESE TERMS.

LEXMARK SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT

This License Agreement ("Software License Agreement") is a legal agreement between you (either an individual or a single entity) and Lexmark International, Inc. ("Lexmark") that, to the extent your Lexmark product or Software Program is not otherwise subject to a written software license agreement between you and Lexmark or its suppliers, governs your use of any Software Program installed on or provided by Lexmark for use in connection with your Lexmark product. The term "Software Program" includes machine-readable instructions, audio/visual content (such as images and recordings), and associated media, printed materials and electronic documentation, whether incorporated into, distributed with or for use with your Lexmark product.

1 STATEMENT OF SOFTWARE LIMITED WARRANTY. Lexmark warrants that the media (e.g., diskette or compact disk) on which the Software Program (if any) is furnished is free from defects in materials and workmanship under normal use during the warranty period. The warranty period is ninety (90) days and commences on the date the Software Program is delivered to the original end-user. This limited warranty applies only to Software Program media purchased new from Lexmark or an Authorized Lexmark Reseller or Distributor. Lexmark will replace the Software Program should it be determined that the media does not conform to this limited warranty.

2 DISCLAIMER AND LIMITATION OF WARRANTIES. EXCEPT AS PROVIDED IN THIS SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT AND TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, LEXMARK AND ITS SUPPLIERS PROVIDE THE SOFTWARE PROGRAM "AS IS" AND HEREBY DISCLAIM ALL OTHER WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, TITLE, NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR

A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, AND ABSENCE OF VIRUSES, ALL WITH REGARD TO THE SOFTWARE PROGRAM. TO THE EXTENT LEXMARK CANNOT BY LAW DISCLAIM ANY COMPONENT OF THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, LEXMARK LIMITS THE DURATION OF SUCH WARRANTIES TO THE 90-DAY TERM OF THE EXPRESS SOFTWARE LIMITED WARRANTY.

This Agreement is to be read in conjunction with certain statutory provisions, as that may be in force from time to time, that imply warranties or conditions or impose obligations on Lexmark that cannot be excluded or modified. If any such provisions apply, then to the extent Lexmark is able, Lexmark hereby limits its liability for breach of those provisions to one of the following: providing you a replacement copy of the Software Program or reimbursement of the price paid for the Software Program.

The Software Program may include internet links to other software applications and/or internet web pages hosted and operated by third parties unaffiliated with Lexmark. You acknowledge and agree that Lexmark is not responsible in any way for the hosting, performance, operation, maintenance, or content of, such software applications and/or internet web pages.

3 LIMITATION OF REMEDY. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ANY AND ALL LIABILITY OF LEXMARK UNDER THIS SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT IS EXPRESSLY LIMITED TO THE GREATER OF THE PRICE PAID FOR THE SOFTWARE PROGRAM AND FIVE U.S. DOLLARS (OR THE EQUIVALENT IN LOCAL CURRENCY). YOUR SOLE REMEDY AGAINST LEXMARK IN ANY DISPUTE UNDER THIS SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT SHALL BE TO SEEK TO RECOVER ONE OF THESE AMOUNTS, UPON PAYMENT OF WHICH LEXMARK SHALL BE RELEASED AND DISCHARGED OF ALL FURTHER OBLIGATIONS AND LIABILITY TO YOU.

IN NO EVENT WILL LEXMARK, ITS SUPPLIERS, SUBSIDIARIES, OR RESELLERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, INDIRECT, EXEMPLARY, PUNITIVE, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOST PROFITS OR REVENUES, LOST SAVINGS, INTERRUPTION OF USE OR ANY LOSS OF, INACCURACY IN, OR DAMAGE TO, DATA OR RECORDS, FOR CLAIMS OF THIRD PARTIES, OR DAMAGE TO REAL OR TANGIBLE PROPERTY, FOR LOSS OF PRIVACY ARISING OUT OR IN ANY WAY RELATED TO THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE SOFTWARE PROGRAM, OR OTHERWISE IN CONNECTION WITH ANY PROVISION OF THIS SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT), REGARDLESS OF THE NATURE OF THE CLAIM, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO BREACH OF WARRANTY OR CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR STRICT LIABILITY), AND EVEN IF LEXMARK, OR ITS SUPPLIERS, AFFILIATES, OR REMARKETERS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES, OR FOR ANY CLAIM BY YOU BASED ON A THIRD-PARTY CLAIM, EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT THIS EXCLUSION OF DAMAGES IS DETERMINED LEGALLY INVALID. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE-STATED REMEDIES FAIL OF THEIR ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

4 U.S.A. STATE LAWS. This Software Limited Warranty gives you specific legal rights. You may also have other rights that vary from state to state. Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts or the exclusion of limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitations may not apply to you.

5 LICENSE GRANT. Lexmark grants you the following rights provided you comply with all terms and conditions of this License Agreement:

- a Use.** You may Use one (1) copy of the Software Program. The term "Use" means storing, loading, installing, executing, or displaying the Software Program. If Lexmark has licensed the Software Program to you for concurrent use, you must limit the number of authorized users to the number specified in your agreement with Lexmark. You may not separate the components of the Software Program for use on more than one computer. You agree that you will not Use the Software Program, in whole or in part, in any manner that has the effect of overriding, modifying, eliminating, obscuring, altering or de-emphasizing the visual appearance of any trademark, trade name, trade dress or intellectual property notice that appears on any computer display screens normally generated by, or as a result of, the Software Program.
- b Copying.** You may make one (1) copy of the Software Program solely for purposes of backup, archiving, or installation, provided the copy contains all of the original Software Program's proprietary notices. You may not copy the Software Program to any public or distributed network.

- c Reservation of Rights.** The Software Program, including all fonts, is copyrighted and owned by Lexmark International, Inc. and/or its suppliers. Lexmark reserves all rights not expressly granted to you in this License Agreement.
 - d Freeware.** Notwithstanding the terms and conditions of this License Agreement, all or any portion of the Software Program that constitutes software provided under public license by third parties ("Freeware") is licensed to you subject to the terms and conditions of the software license agreement accompanying such Freeware, whether in the form of a discrete agreement, shrink-wrap license, or electronic license terms at the time of download. Use of the Freeware by you shall be governed entirely by the terms and conditions of such license.
- 6 TRANSFER.** You may transfer the Software Program to another end-user. Any transfer must include all software components, media, printed materials, and this License Agreement and you may not retain copies of the Software Program or components thereof. The transfer may not be an indirect transfer, such as a consignment. Prior to the transfer, the end-user receiving the transferred Software Program must agree to all these License Agreement terms. Upon transfer of the Software Program, your license is automatically terminated. You may not rent, sublicense, or assign the Software Program except to the extent provided in this License Agreement, and any attempt to do so shall be void.
- 7 UPGRADES.** To Use a Software Program identified as an upgrade, you must first be licensed to the original Software Program identified by Lexmark as eligible for the upgrade. After upgrading, you may no longer use the original Software Program that formed the basis for your upgrade eligibility.
- 8 LIMITATION ON REVERSE ENGINEERING.** You may not alter, decrypt, reverse engineer, reverse assemble, reverse compile or otherwise translate the Software Program, except as and to the extent expressly permitted to do so by applicable law for the purposes of inter-operability, error correction, and security testing. If you have such statutory rights, you will notify Lexmark in writing of any intended reverse engineering, reverse assembly, or reverse compilation. You may not decrypt the Software Program unless necessary for the legitimate Use of the Software Program.
- 9 ADDITIONAL SOFTWARE.** This License Agreement applies to updates or supplements to the original Software Program provided by Lexmark unless Lexmark provides other terms along with the update or supplement.
- 10 TERM.** This License Agreement is effective unless terminated or rejected. You may reject or terminate this license at any time by destroying all copies of the Software Program, together with all modifications, documentation, and merged portions in any form, or as otherwise described herein. Lexmark may terminate your license upon notice if you fail to comply with any of the terms of this License Agreement. Upon such termination, you agree to destroy all copies of the Software Program together with all modifications, documentation, and merged portions in any form.
- 11 TAXES.** You agree that you are responsible for payment of any taxes including, without limitation, any goods and services and personal property taxes, resulting from this Agreement or your Use of the Software Program.
- 12 LIMITATION ON ACTIONS.** No action, regardless of form, arising out of this Agreement may be brought by either party more than two years after the cause of action has arisen, except as provided under applicable law.
- 13 APPLICABLE LAW.** This Agreement is governed by the laws of the Commonwealth of Kentucky, United States of America. No choice of law rules in any jurisdiction shall apply. The UN Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.
- 14 UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT RESTRICTED RIGHTS.** The Software Program has been developed entirely at private expense. Rights of the United States Government to use the Software Program is as set forth in this Agreement and as restricted in DFARS 252.227-7014 and in similar FAR provisions (or any equivalent agency regulation or contract clause).
- 15 CONSENT TO USE OF DATA.** You agree that Lexmark, its affiliates, and agents may collect and use information you provide in relation to support services performed with respect to the Software Program and requested by you. Lexmark agrees not to use this information in a form that personally identifies you except to the extent necessary to provide such services.

- 16 EXPORT RESTRICTIONS.** You may not (a) acquire, ship, transfer, or reexport, directly or indirectly, the Software Program or any direct product therefrom, in violation of any applicable export laws or (b) permit the Software Program to be used for any purpose prohibited by such export laws, including, without limitation, nuclear, chemical, or biological weapons proliferation.
- 17 AGREEMENT TO CONTRACT ELECTRONICALLY.** You and Lexmark agree to form this License Agreement electronically. This means that when you click the "Agree" or "Yes" button on this page or use this product, you acknowledge your agreement to these License Agreement terms and conditions and that you are doing so with the intent to "sign" a contract with Lexmark.
- 18 CAPACITY AND AUTHORITY TO CONTRACT.** You represent that you are of the legal age of majority in the place you sign this License Agreement and, if applicable, you are duly authorized by your employer or principal to enter into this contract.
- 19 ENTIRE AGREEMENT.** This License Agreement (including any addendum or amendment to this License Agreement that is included with the Software Program) is the entire agreement between you and Lexmark relating to the Software Program. Except as otherwise provided for herein, these terms and conditions supersede all prior or contemporaneous oral or written communications, proposals, and representations with respect to the Software Program or any other subject matter covered by this License Agreement (except to the extent such extraneous terms do not conflict with the terms of this License Agreement, any other written agreement signed by you and Lexmark relating to your Use of the Software Program). To the extent any Lexmark policies or programs for support services conflict with the terms of this License Agreement, the terms of this License Agreement shall control.

MICROSOFT CORPORATION NOTICES

- 1 This product may incorporate intellectual property owned by Microsoft Corporation. The terms and conditions upon which Microsoft is licensing such intellectual property may be found at <http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=52369>.
- 2 This product is based on Microsoft Print Schema technology. You may find the terms and conditions upon which Microsoft is licensing such intellectual property at <http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=83288>.

ADOBE SYSTEMS INCORPORATED NOTICE

Contains Flash®, Flash® Lite™ and/or Reader® technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated

This Product contains Adobe® Flash® player software under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated, Copyright © 1995-2007 Adobe Macromedia Software LLC. All rights reserved. Adobe, Reader and Flash are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Patent acknowledgment

The use of this product or service is subject to the reasonable, non-discriminatory terms in the Intellectual Property Rights (IPR) Disclosure of Certicom Corp. at the IETF for Elliptic Curve Cryptography (ECC) Cipher Suites for Transport Layer Security (TLS) implemented in the product or service.

The use of this product or service is subject to the reasonable, non-discriminatory terms in the Intellectual Property Rights (IPR) Disclosure of Certicom Corp. at the IETF for TLS Elliptic Curve Cipher Suites with SHA-256/382 and AES Galois Counter Mode (GCM) implemented in the product or service.

The use of this product or service is subject to the reasonable, non-discriminatory terms in the Intellectual Property Rights (IPR) Disclosure of Certicom Corp. at the IETF for TLS Suite B Profile for Transport Layer Security (TLS) implemented in the product or service.

The use of this product or service is subject to the reasonable, non-discriminatory terms in the Intellectual Property Rights (IPR) Disclosure of Certicom Corp. at the IETF for Addition of the Camellia Cipher Suites to Transport Layer Security (TLS) implemented in the product or service.

The use of certain patents in this product or service is subject to the reasonable, non-discriminatory terms in the Intellectual Property Rights (IPR) Disclosure of Certicom Corp. at the IETF for AES-CCM ECC Cipher Suites for TLS implemented in the product or service.

The use of this product or service is subject to the reasonable, non-discriminatory terms in the Intellectual Property Rights (IPR) Disclosure of Certicom Corp. at the IETF for IKE and IKEv2 Authentication Using the Elliptic Curve Digital Signature Algorithm (ECDSA) implemented in the product or service.

The use of this product or service is subject to the reasonable, non-discriminatory terms in the Intellectual Property Rights (IPR) Disclosure of Certicom Corp. at the IETF for Suite B Cryptographic Suites for IPsec implemented in the product or service.

The use of this product or service is subject to the reasonable, non-discriminatory terms in the Intellectual Property Rights (IPR) Disclosure of Certicom Corp. at the IETF for Algorithms for Internet Key Exchange version 1 (IKEv1) implemented in the product or service.

Index

Numerics

1565 Emulation error, load emulation option 268
200 paper jam 254
201 paper jam 255
203 paper jam 256
230 paper jam 257
231–239 paper jams 257
24x paper jam 258
250 paper jam 261
280–289 paper jam 261
290–292 paper jams 262
30.xx Missing [color] cartridge and/or [color] imaging unit 268
31.xx Missing or Defective [color] cartridge 268
32.xx [color] cartridge part number unsupported by device 268
34 Incorrect paper size, open [src] 269
35 Insufficient memory to support Resource Save feature 269
36 Printer service required 269
37 Insufficient memory for Flash Memory Defragment operation 269
37 Insufficient memory to collate job 269
37 Insufficient memory, some Held Jobs were deleted 269
37 Insufficient memory, some held jobs will not be restored 270
38 Memory full 270
39 Complex page, some data may not have printed 270
451 paper jam 262
51 Defective flash detected 270
52 Not enough free space in flash memory for resources 270
53 Unformatted flash detected 270
54 Network [x] software error 271
54 Serial option [x] error 270
54 Standard network software error 271
55 Unsupported option in slot [x] 271

550-sheet tray (standard or optional)
loading 82
550-sheet tray and printer stand
installing 47
550-sheet tray, optional
installing 53
56 Parallel port [x] disabled 271
56 Serial port [x] disabled 271
56 Standard parallel port
disabled 272
56 Standard USB port disabled 272
56 USB port [x] disabled 272
57 Configuration change, some held jobs were not restored 272
58 Input config error 272
58 Too many disks installed 272
58 Too many flash options
installed 273
58 Too many trays attached 273
61 Remove defective disk 273
62 Disk full 273
80.xx Fuser life warning 274
80.xx Fuser missing 274
80.xx Fuser near life warning 273
80.xx Replace fuser 274
82.xx Replace waste toner
bottle 274
82.xx Waste toner bottle nearly
full 274
83.xx Replace transfer module 274
83.xx Transfer module life
warning 274
83.xx Transfer module missing 274
84 Defective [color] imaging
unit 275
84 unsupported [color] imaging
unit 275
84.xx [color] imaging unit low 275
84.xx [color] imaging unit nearly
low 275
84.xx Replace [color] imaging unit
and [color] cartridge 275
88.2x Replace [color] cartridge 276
88.xx [color] cartridge low 275
88.xx [color] cartridge nearly
low 275

A

accessing the Embedded Web Server 30
accessing the system board 36
Active NIC menu 160
adding a date and time stamp 112
ADF
copying using 105
ADF parts
cleaning 234
ADF pick roll
ordering 241
ADF separator roll
ordering 241
Adjusting color 263
adjusting copy quality 109
adjusting Sleep Mode 77
adjusting toner darkness 96
advanced options, touch-screen
copy 115
fax 134
FTP 141
AppleTalk menu 165
assigning a custom paper type
name 89
attaching cables 60
Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)
using 22
available internal options 35
avoiding jams 92
avoiding paper jams 252

B

black-and-white printing 96
blank pages 298
blocking junk faxes 132
buttons, printer control panel 23
buttons, touch screen
using 26

C

cables
Ethernet 60
USB 60
calling customer support 307
canceling
print job, from computer 104

- canceling a print job
from a computer 104
from the printer control panel 103
canceling an e-mail 120
cannot open Embedded Web Server 306
card stock
loading in multipurpose feeder 86
tips 101
Change [paper source] to [custom string] 264
Change [paper source] to [custom string] load [orientation] 264
Change [paper source] to [custom type name] 263
Change [paper source] to [custom type name] load [orientation] 264
Change [paper source] to [paper size] [paper type] 264
Change [paper source] to [paper size] [paper type] load [orientation] 264
checking an unresponsive printer 263
checking an unresponsive scanner 282
checking printer status
on Embedded Web Server 249
checking printer status using the Embedded Web Server 249
checking status of supplies 239
checking the status of supplies 239
checking the virtual display
using the Embedded Web Server 249
checking virtual display
using the Embedded Web Server 249
choosing a fax connection 124
cleaning
ADF parts 234
exterior of the printer 233
scanner glass 233
cleaning the printhead lenses 235
Close [tray] door 264
Close front or side door 265
collating copies 110
confidential print jobs 101
printing from a Macintosh computer 102
printing from Windows 102
Confidential Print menu 174
configuration information
wireless network 63
configurations
printer 19
Configure MP menu 153
configuring e-mail settings 116
configuring port settings 71
connecting printer to distinctive ring service 126
connecting the printer to regional adapters 126
conservation settings
brightness, adjusting 78
Eco-Mode 76
Quiet Mode 76
Sleep Mode 77, 78
standard exit bin lighting 79
conserving supplies 75
contacting customer support 307
control panel, printer 23
copy quality
adjusting 109
copy screen
advanced options 115
options 113, 114, 115, 140
Copy Settings menu 187
copy troubleshooting
copier does not respond 279
partial document or photo copies 281
poor copy quality 280
poor scanned image quality 283
scanner unit does not close 280
copying
adding a date and time stamp 112
adding an overlay message 112
adjusting quality 109
canceling a copy job 112, 113
collating copies 110
custom job (job build) 111
different paper sizes 108
enlarging 109
multiple pages on one sheet 111
on both sides of the paper (duplexing) 108
on letterhead 106
on transparencies 106
photos 106
placing separator sheets between copies 110
quick copy 105
reducing 109
selecting a tray 107
to a different size 107
using the ADF 105
using the scanner glass (flatbed) 106
copying different paper sizes 108
copying multiple pages on one sheet 111
copying on both sides of the paper (duplexing) 108
copying on letterhead 106
copying on transparencies 106
copying photos 106
corrupted printer hard disk 265
creating a fax destination shortcut using the Embedded Web Server 128
creating an FTP shortcut using the Embedded Web Server 137
creating profiles
using the ScanBack Utility 143
custom name
configuring 89
Custom Names menu 157
custom paper type name
creating 89
Custom Scan Sizes menu 157
Custom Type [x]
changing name 89
changing paper type 89
Custom Types menu 157

D

- date and time, fax
setting 127
daylight savings time, faxing 128
Default Source menu 149
different paper sizes, copying 108
directory list
printing 103
disk wiping 231
Disk Wiping menu 175
display troubleshooting
display is blank 276
display shows only diamonds 276
display, printer control panel 23
adjusting brightness 78
disposing of printer hard disk 230
distinctive ring service, fax
connecting to 126

documents, printing
from Macintosh 96
from Windows 96
duplexing 108

E

Eco-Mode setting 76
Edit Security Setups menu 172
Embedded Web Server
accessing 30, 249
administrator settings 249
checking printer status 249
checking supplies 239
creating a fax destination
shortcut 128
creating an FTP shortcut 137
creating e-mail shortcuts 117
functions 249
initial fax setup 123
networking settings 249
problem accessing 306
setting up e-mail alerts 250
using 249
Embedded Web Server
Administrator's Guide
where to find 249
emission
notices 309, 310, 312, 313, 316, 317
encrypting the printer hard disk 232
enlarging a copy 109
envelopes
loading in multipurpose feeder 86
tips on using 100
environmental settings
brightness, adjusting 78
conserving supplies 75
Eco-Mode 76
Hibernate Mode 78
Quiet Mode 76
Sleep Mode 77
standard exit bin lighting 79
erasing hard disk memory 231
erasing non-volatile memory 231
erasing volatile memory 230
Ethernet network setup
using Macintosh 68
using Windows 68
Ethernet networking
Macintosh 68
Windows 68

Ethernet port 60
exporting a configuration
using the Embedded Web Server 31
exporting a configuration using the Embedded Web Server 31
exterior of the printer
cleaning 233
e-mail
canceling 120
e-mail alert
different paper is needed 250
notice of low supply level 250
notice of paper jam 250
e-mail function
setting up 116
e-mail screen
advanced options 122
options 120, 121, 122
E-mail Settings menu 200
e-mail shortcuts, creating
using the Embedded Web Server 117
e-mail, sending
using a shortcut number 118
using the address book 118
using the touch screen 118
e-mailing
adding message line 119
adding subject line 119
changing output file type 119
configuring e-mail settings 116
creating shortcuts using the Embedded Web Server 117
creating shortcuts using the touch screen 117
setting up e-mail function 116
using a shortcut number 118
using the address book 118
using the touch screen 118

F

factory defaults
restoring 251
FAQ about color printing 303
fax and e-mail functions
setting up 284
fax and e-mail functions are not set up 284
fax connection
connecting the printer to the wall jack 124

connecting to a DSL line 125
connecting to a PBX or ISDN 125
fax connections
regional adapters 126
fax log
viewing 132
Fax Mode (Analog Fax Setup) menu 191
Fax Mode (Fax Server Setup) menu 199
fax screen
advanced options 134
options 133, 134
fax troubleshooting
caller ID is not shown 284
can receive but not send faxes 287
can send but not receive faxes 286
cannot send or receive a fax 285
received fax has poor print quality 287
faxing
blocking junk faxes 132
canceling a fax job 132, 133
changing resolution 131
choosing a fax connection 124
configuring the printer to observe daylight saving time 128
creating shortcuts using the Embedded Web Server 128
creating shortcuts using the touch screen 129
distinctive ring service 126
fax setup 123
forwarding faxes 135
holding faxes 135
making a fax lighter or darker 131
sending a fax 129
sending a fax at a scheduled time 131
sending using the touch screen 129
setting the date and time 127
setting the fax number or station number 127
setting the outgoing fax name or station name 127
viewing a fax log 132
FCC notices 309, 313, 316
features
Scan Center 143

finding more information about the printer 17
finding printer IP address 30
Finishing menu 218
firmware card
 installing 39
flash drive
 printing from 97
Flash Drive menu 210
flash drives
 supported file types 98
flash memory card
 installing 39
 troubleshooting 290
font sample list
 printing 102
Forms and Favorites
 setting up 32
forwarding faxes 135
FTP
 scanning using address book 139
FTP address
 creating shortcuts using the touch screen 138
FTP screen
 advanced options 141
 options 139, 140, 141
FTP Settings menu 206
fuser
 ordering 240

G

General Settings menu 178
Green settings
 Eco-Mode 76
 Quiet Mode 76
green settings
 Hibernate Mode 78

H

held jobs 101
 printing from a Macintosh computer 102
 printing from Windows 102
Help menu 228
Hibernate Mode
 using 78
hiding icons on the home screen 30
holding faxes 135
home screen
 hiding icons 30

 showing icons 30
home screen buttons and icons
 description 25
HTML menu 227

I

Image menu 228
imaging unit
 replacing 241
imaging units
 ordering 240
importing a configuration
 using the Embedded Web Server 31
importing a configuration using the Embedded Web Server 31
initial fax setup 123
 using the Embedded Web Server 123
Install Tray [x] 265
installing a memory card 37
installing an Internal Solutions Port 40
installing on a wireless network
 using Windows 64
installing options
 550-sheet tray and printer stand 47
 order of installation 46
installing printer
 on wireless network 64
installing printer hard disk 44
installing printer on a network
 Ethernet networking 68
installing printer on a wireless network
 using Macintosh 66
installing printer software
 adding options 62
installing printer software (Windows) 61
installing trays
 550-sheet tray 53
internal print server
 troubleshooting 290
Internal Solutions Port
 changing port settings 71
 installing 40
 troubleshooting 290
IP address, printer
 finding 30
IPv6 menu 163

J

jams
 avoiding 252
 locating jam areas 252
 locations 252
 numbers 252
jams, clearing
 200 paper jam 254
 201 paper jam 255
 203 paper jam 256
 230 paper jam 257
 231–239 paper jams 257
 24x paper jam 258
 250 paper jam 261
 280–289 paper jam 261
 28x 234
 290–292 paper jams 262
 451 paper jam 262
Job Accounting menu 216

L

labels, paper
 tips 100
letterhead
 copying on 106
 loading, multipurpose feeder 99
 loading, trays 99
light colored line, white line, or incorrectly colored line appears on prints 294
light, indicator 23
linking trays 88
Load Manual Feeder with [custom string] 267
Load Manual Feeder with [custom type name] 266
Load Manual Feeder with [paper size] 267
Load Manual Feeder with [paper type] [paper size] 267
loading
 550-sheet tray (standard or optional) 82
 multipurpose feeder 86
loading card stock
 in multipurpose feeder 86
loading envelopes
 in multipurpose feeder 86
loading letterhead
 paper orientation 99
loading the multipurpose feeder 86

loading the standard tray 82
loading transparencies
in multipurpose feeder 86

M

making copies using paper from selected tray 107
max speed
using 103
max yield
using 103
memory
types installed on printer 230
memory card
installing 37
troubleshooting 291
menu settings page
printing 61
menus
Active NIC 160
AppleTalk 165
Confidential Print 174
Configure MP 153
Copy Settings 187
Custom Names 157
Custom Scan Sizes 157
Custom Types 157
Default Source 149
diagram of 146
Disk Wiping 175
Edit Security Setups 172
E-mail Settings 200
Fax Mode (Analog Fax Setup) 191
Fax Mode (Fax Server Setup) 199
Finishing 218
Flash Drive 210
FTP Settings 206
General Settings 178
Help 228
HTML 227
Image 228
IPv6 163
Job Accounting 216
Miscellaneous 173
Network [x] 160
Network Card 162
Network Reports 162
Paper Loading 155
Paper Size/Type 150
Paper Weight 153
Parallel [x] 167
PCL Emul 224

PDF 223
PostScript 224
Quality 219
Reports 158
Security Audit Log 176
Serial [x] 169
Set Date/Time 177
Settings 215
SMTP Setup menu 171
Standard Network 160
Standard USB 165
Substitute Size 153
Supplies 147
TCP/IP 162
Universal Setup 158
Utilities 222
Wireless 164
XPS 223
menus diagram 146
Miscellaneous menu 173
mobile device
printing from 97
moving the printer 247, 248
moving your printer 18
multipurpose feeder
loading 86
My MFP
setting up 33

N

Network [x] menu 160
Network Card menu 162
Network Reports menu 162
network setup page
printing 61
Networking Guide
where to find 249
noise emission levels 310
non-volatile memory 230
erasing 231
notices 309, 310, 311, 312, 313, 314, 315, 316, 317, 318

O

optional 550-sheet tray
installing 53
options
firmware card 39
firmware cards 35
flash memory card 39

Internal Solutions Port,
installing 40
list 35
memory card, installing 37
memory cards 35
printer hard disk, installing 44
updating in printer driver 62
options, touch-screen
copy 113, 114, 115, 140
e-mail 120, 121, 122
fax 133, 134
FTP 139, 140, 141
scan 144
scan to computer 144, 145
ordering
toner cartridges 239
ordering a fuser 240
ordering a transfer module 240
ordering a waste toner bottle 240
ordering imaging units 240
output file type
changing 119

P

paper
characteristics 90
different sizes, copying 108
letterhead 91
preprinted forms 91
recycled 91
saving 111
selecting 91
storing 90, 92
unacceptable 91
Universal size setting 81
using recycled 75
Paper changes needed 267
paper characteristics 90
paper feed troubleshooting
message remains after jam is cleared 291
paper jams
avoiding 252
paper jams, clearing
231-239 paper jams 257
24x paper jam 258
250 paper jam 261
280-289 paper jam 261
28x 234
290-292 paper jams 262
451 paper jam 262
Paper Loading menu 155

- paper size
 setting 81
Paper Size/Type menu 150
paper sizes
 supported 93
paper type
 setting 81
paper types
 duplex support 95
 supported by printer 95
 where to load 95
Paper Weight menu 153
Parallel [x] menu 167
PCL Emul menu 224
PDF menu 223
photos
 copying 106
placing separator sheets between
copies 110
port settings
 configuring 71
PostScript menu 224
print job
 canceling, from computer 104
print quality
 cleaning the ADF parts 234
 cleaning the printhead lenses 235
 cleaning the scanner glass 233
print quality troubleshooting
 blank pages 298
 characters have jagged edges 292
 clipped images 292
 fine horizontal lines 293
 gray background 293
 light colored line, white line, or
 incorrectly colored line appears
 on prints 294
 poor transparency quality 303
print irregularities 295
print is too dark 296
print is too light 297
repeating defects appear on a
 page 298
shadow images appear on
 prints 299
skewed print 300
solid color pages 300
streaked horizontal lines appear
 on prints 301
streaked vertical lines on
 prints 301
- toner fog or background shading
 on the page 302
toner rubs off 302
toner specks 302
uneven print density 303
print troubleshooting
 error reading flash drive 276
 held jobs do not print 277
 incorrect characters print 278
 incorrect margins 293
 jammed pages are not
 reprinted 292
 job prints from wrong tray 278
 job prints on wrong paper 278
 jobs do not print 276
 Large jobs do not collate 279
 multiple-language PDF files do not
 print 276
 paper curl 295
 paper frequently jams 291
 print job takes longer than
 expected 278
 tray linking does not work 278
 unexpected page breaks
 occur 279
- printer
 configurations 19
 minimum clearances 18
 models 19
 moving 18, 247, 248
 selecting a location 18
 shipping 248
printer control panel 23
 adjusting brightness 78
 factory defaults, restoring 251
printer hard disk
 disposing of 230
 encrypting 232
 installing 44
 removing 45
 troubleshooting 290
 wiping 231
printer hard disk encryption 232
printer hard disk memory
 erasing 231
printer information
 where to find 17
printer IP address
 finding 30
printer messages
 1565 Emulation error, load
 emulation option 268
- 30.xx Missing [color] cartridge
 and/or [color] imaging unit 268
31.xx Missing or Defective [color]
 cartridge 268
32.xx [color] cartridge part
 number unsupported by
 device 268
34 Incorrect paper size, open
 [src] 269
35 Insufficient memory to support
 Resource Save feature 269
36 Printer service required 269
37 Insufficient memory for Flash
 Memory Defragment
 operation 269
37 Insufficient memory to collate
 job 269
37 Insufficient memory, some
 Held Jobs were deleted 269
37 Insufficient memory, some held
 jobs will not be restored 270
38 Memory full 270
39 Complex page, some data may
 not have printed 270
51 Defective flash detected 270
52 Not enough free space in flash
 memory for resources 270
53 Unformatted flash
 detected 270
54 Network [x] software error 271
54 Serial option [x] error 270
54 Standard network software
 error 271
55 Unsupported option in slot
 [x] 271
56 Parallel port [x] disabled 271
56 Serial port [x] disabled 271
56 Standard parallel port
 disabled 272
56 Standard USB port
 disabled 272
56 USB port [x] disabled 272
57 Configuration change, some
 held jobs were not restored 272
58 Input config error 272
58 Too many disks installed 272
58 Too many flash options
 installed 273
58 Too many trays attached 273
61 Remove defective disk 273
62 Disk full 273
80.xx Fuser life warning 274

80.xx Fuser missing 274
80.xx Fuser near life warning 273
80.xx Replace fuser 274
82.xx Replace waste toner bottle 274
82.xx Waste toner bottle nearly full 274
83.xx Replace transfer module 274
83.xx Transfer module life warning 274
83.xx Transfer module missing 274
84 Defective [color] imaging unit 275
84 unsupported [color] imaging unit 275
84.xx [color] imaging unit low 275
84.xx [color] imaging unit nearly low 275
84.xx Replace [color] imaging unit and [color] cartridge 275
88.2x Replace [color] cartridge 276
88.xx [color] cartridge low 275
88.xx [color] cartridge nearly low 275
Adjusting color 263
an error has occurred with the USB drive 263
Change [paper source] to [custom string] 264
Change [paper source] to [custom string] load [orientation] 264
Change [paper source] to [custom type name] 263
Change [paper source] to [custom type name] load [orientation] 264
Change [paper source] to [paper size] [paper type] 264
Change [paper source] to [paper size] [paper type] load [orientation] 264
Close [tray] door 264
Close front or side door 265
Disk corrupted 265
Disk near full. Securely clearing disk space. 265
Disk problem 265
Insert Tray [x] 265
Install Tray [x] 265

Load [src] with [custom string] 266
Load [src] with [custom type name] 266
Load [src] with [size] 266
Load [src] with [type] [size] 266
Load Manual Feeder with [custom string] 267
Load Manual Feeder with [custom type name] 266
Load Manual Feeder with [paper size] 267
Load Manual Feeder with [paper type] [paper size] 267
Paper changes needed 267
Remove paper from standard output bin 267
Replace separator pad 267
Restore held jobs? 267
Some held jobs were not restored 268
Supply needed to complete job 268
Tray [x] paper size unsupported 268
Unsupported disk 268
Unsupported USB device, please remove 265
printer options troubleshooting
cannot detect flash memory card 290
cannot detect printer hard disk 290
internal print server 290
Internal Solutions Port 290
memory card 291
option does not work 289
paper tray problems 289
USB/parallel interface card 291
printer problems, solving basic 263
printer software, installing (Windows) 61
printhead lenses cleaning 235
printing
black-and-white 96
canceling, from the printer control panel 103
directory list 103
font sample list 102
from a mobile device 97
from flash drive 97

from Macintosh 96
from Windows 96
max speed and max yield 103
menu settings page 61
network setup page 61
printing a directory list 103
printing a document 96
printing a font sample list 102
printing a menu settings page 61
printing a network setup page 61
printing confidential and other held jobs
from a Macintosh computer 102
from Windows 102
printing from a flash drive 97
printing from a mobile device 97
printing in black and white 96
publications
where to find 17

Q

Quality menu 219
Quiet Mode
print quality troubleshooting 293

R

recycled paper
using 75, 91
recycling
Lexmark packaging 80
Lexmark products 79
toner cartridges 80
reducing a copy 109
reducing printer noise 76
Remote Operator Panel
setting up 33
Remove paper from standard output bin 267
removing printer hard disk 45
repeat print jobs 101
printing from a Macintosh computer 102
printing from Windows 102
Replace separator pad 267
replacing a toner cartridge 244
replacing an imaging unit 241
replacing supplies
imaging unit 241
toner cartridge 244
waste toner bottle 246

replacing the waste toner bottle 246
reports viewing 250
Reports menu 158
reserve print jobs 101
printing from a Macintosh computer 102
printing from Windows 102
resolution, fax changing 131
Restore held jobs? 267
restoring factory default settings 251

S

safety information 15, 16
saving paper 111
Scan Center features 143
scan screen options 144
scan to computer advanced options, setting 145 options 144, 145 original size 144 paper orientation, setting 145
Scan to Network setting up 32
scan troubleshooting cannot scan from a computer 284 partial document or photo scans 283
scan was not successful 282
scanner unit does not close 280 scanning takes too long or freezes the computer 282
ScanBack Utility using 143
scanner functions 21
scanner glass cleaning 233 using 22
scanner glass (flatbed) copying using 106
scanning from a flash drive 143 quick copy 105 to a computer 142 to an FTP address 138 to an FTP, using address book 139

using the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) 22
using the scanner glass 22
scanning to a computer 142
scanning to a flash drive 143
scanning to an FTP address creating shortcuts using the computer 137
using shortcut numbers 138
using the address book 139
using the touch screen 138
Security Audit Log menu 176
selecting paper 91
sending a fax 129
sending a fax using shortcuts 130
sending a fax using the touch screen 129
sending fax using shortcuts 130
using the address book 130
sending fax at a scheduled time 131
sending fax using the address book 130
Serial [x] menu 169
serial printing setting up 72
Set Date/Time menu 177
setting TCP/IP address 162
setting the fax number or station number 127
setting the outgoing fax name or station name 127
setting the paper size 81
setting the paper type 81
setting the Universal paper size 81
setting up e-mail alerts using the Embedded Web Server 250
setting up fax and e-mail functions 284
setting up serial printing 72
setting up the printer on an Ethernet network (Macintosh only) 68
on an Ethernet network (Windows only) 68
Settings menu 215
shadow images appear on prints 299
shipping the printer 248

shortcuts, creating e-mail 117
fax destination 128, 129
FTP address 138
FTP destination 137
showing icons on the home screen 30
Sleep Mode adjusting 77
SMTP Setup menu 171
Some held jobs were not restored 268
standard exit bin lighting, setting 79
Standard Network menu 160
standard tray loading 82
Standard USB menu 165
statement of volatility 230
status of supplies checking 239
storing paper 92 supplies 238
storing print jobs 101 streaked horizontal lines appear on prints 301
subject and message information adding to e-mail 119
Substitute Size menu 153
supplies checking status 239
checking, from printer control panel 239
checking, using the Embedded Web Server 239
conserving 75
storing 238
using recycled paper 75
Supplies menu 147
supplies, ordering ADF pick roll 241
ADF separator roll 241
fuser 240
imaging units 240
toner cartridges 239
transfer module 240
waste toner bottle 240
Supply needed to complete job 268
supported flash drives 98
supported paper sizes 93

- system board
accessing 36
- system board cover
reattaching 36
- T**
- TCP/IP menu 162
- telecommunication notices 313, 314, 315, 316
- tips
card stock 101
labels, paper 100
on using envelopes 100
on using letterhead 99
on using transparencies 99
- tips on using envelopes 100
- tips on using letterhead 99
- toner cartridge
replacing 244
- toner cartridges
ordering 239
recycling 80
- toner darkness
adjusting 96
- toner fog or background shading appears on the page 302
- touch screen
buttons 26
- transfer module
ordering 240
- transparencies
copying on 106
loading 99
loading in multipurpose feeder 86
tips on using 99
using 99
- Tray [x] paper size
unsupported 268
- tray linking
assigning a custom paper type name 89
- tray unlinking
assigning a custom paper type name 89
- trays
linking 88
unlinking 88
- troubleshooting
an application error has occurred 288
- cannot open Embedded Web Server 306
- checking an unresponsive printer 263
- checking an unresponsive scanner 282
- contacting customer support 307
- FAQ about color printing 303
- fax and e-mail functions are not set up 284
- Scan to Network 288
- solving basic printer problems 263
- troubleshooting, copy
copier does not respond 279
partial document or photo copies 281
poor copy quality 280
poor scanned image quality 283
scanner unit does not close 280
- troubleshooting, display
display is blank 276
display shows only diamonds 276
- troubleshooting, fax
caller ID is not shown 284
can receive but not send faxes 287
can send but not receive faxes 286
cannot send or receive a fax 285
received fax has poor print quality 287
- troubleshooting, paper feed
message remains after jam is cleared 291
- troubleshooting, print
error reading flash drive 276
held jobs do not print 277
incorrect characters print 278
incorrect margins 293
jammed pages are not reprinted 292
job prints from wrong tray 278
job prints on wrong paper 278
jobs do not print 276
Large jobs do not collate 279
multiple-language PDF files do not print 276
paper curl 295
paper frequently jams 291
print job takes longer than expected 278
tray linking does not work 278
- unexpected page breaks occur 279
- troubleshooting, print quality
blank pages 298
characters have jagged edges 292
clipped images 292
fine horizontal lines 293
gray background 293
light colored line, white line, or incorrectly colored line appears on prints 294
poor transparency quality 303
print irregularities 295
print is too dark 296
print is too light 297
repeating defects appear on a page 298
shadow images appear on prints 299
skewed print 300
solid color pages 300
streaked horizontal lines appear on prints 301
streaked vertical lines on prints 301
- toner fog or background shading on the page 302
- toner rubs off 302
- toner specks 302
- uneven print density 303
- troubleshooting, printer options
cannot detect flash memory card 290
- cannot detect printer hard disk 290
- internal print server 290
- Internal Solutions Port 290
- memory card 291
- option does not work 289
- paper tray problems 289
- USB/parallel interface card 291
- troubleshooting, scan
cannot scan from a computer 284
partial document or photo scans 283
- scan was not successful 282
- scanner unit does not close 280
- scanning takes too long or freezes the computer 282

U

understanding the home screen
buttons and icons 25
uneven print density 303
Universal Paper Size
 setting 81
Universal Setup menu 158
unlinking trays 88
Unsupported USB device, please
remove 265
updating options in printer
driver 62
USB port 60
USB/parallel interface card
 troubleshooting 291
using Eco-Mode 76
using Hibernate Mode 78
using max speed and max yield 103
using Quiet Mode 76
using recycled paper 75
using shortcuts
 sending fax 130
using the address book 118
 sending fax 130
using the Embedded Web
Server 249
using the ScanBack Utility 143
using the touch-screen buttons 26
Utilities menu 222

Wireless menu 164

wireless network
 configuration information 63
 installation, using Macintosh 66
 installation, using Windows 64
wireless network setup
 in Windows 64
wireless printer setup
 in Macintosh 66
WS-Scan
 about 33

X

XPS menu 223

V

verify print jobs 101
printing from a Macintosh
 computer 102
printing from Windows 102
viewing
 reports 250
viewing a fax log 132
virtual display
 checking, using Embedded Web
 Server 249
volatile memory 230
 erasing 230
volatility
 statement of 230

W

waste toner bottle
 ordering 240
 replacing 246
wiping the printer hard disk 231